This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

BRANNER
GEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

Gift of

Carl H. Beal Estate

Carl H Beal

MAR
15
DOCUMENTS

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF CANADA
G. M. DAWSON, C.M.G., LL.D., F.R.S., DIRECTOR

REPORT

ON AN EXPLORATION IN THE

YUKON DISTRICT, N.W.T.

AND

ADJACENT NORTHERN PORTION OF

BRITISH COLUMBIA

1887

BY

GEORGE M. DAWSON

With Extracts relating to the Yukon District from Report on an Exploration in the Yukon and Mackenzie Basins, 1887-88

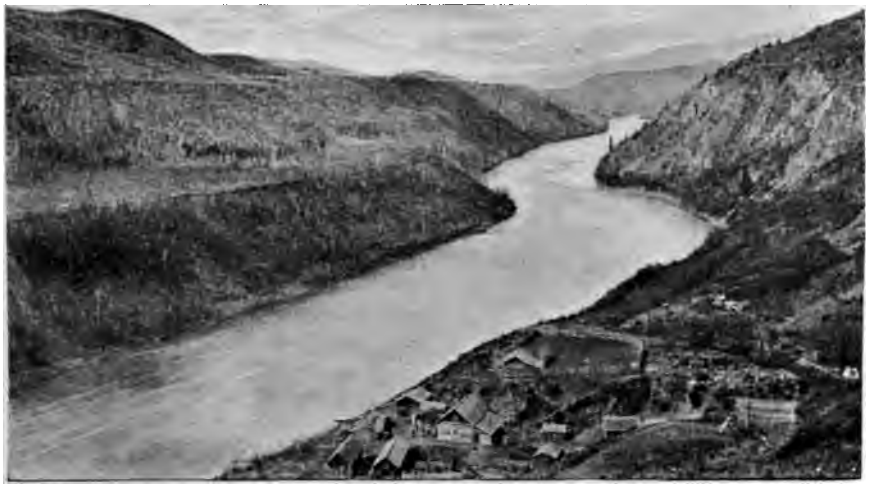
BY

R. G. McCONNELL

OTTAWA
PRINTED BY S. E. DAWSON, PRINTER TO THE QUEEN'S MOST
EXCELLENT MAJESTY
1898

No. 629

Price Thirty cents.



G. M. D.—Photo., May 29, 1887.

STIKINE RIVER, LOOKING DOWN FROM TELEGRAPH CREEK.
Showing the two principal terraces.

G. M. D.—Photo., July 8, 1887.

FRANCES LAKE, LOOKING WEST, FOUR MILES FROM OUTLET.

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF CANADA
G. M. DAWSON, C.M.G., LL.D., F.R.S., DIRECTOR

REPORT

ON AN EXPLORATION IN THE

YUKON DISTRICT, N.W.T.

AND

ADJACENT NORTHERN PORTION OF

BRITISH COLUMBIA

1887

BY

GEORGE M. DAWSON

With Extracts relating to the Yukon District from Report on an Exploration in the Yukon and Mackenzie Basins, 1887-88

BY

R. G. McCONNELL

OTTAWA
PRINTED BY S. E. DAWSON, PRINTER TO THE QUEEN'S MOST
EXCELLENT MAJESTY
1898

No. 629

557.11
D27

779022

Note.—The bearings throughout this report are given with reference to the true meridian, unless otherwise specially noted.

PREFACE TO REPRINT.

As a result of the late remarkable discoveries of gold in the Klondike region, much general attention has been awakened in the entire Yukon District of Canada, and so great a demand has arisen for the reports and maps of the Yukon Expedition of 1887-88, that the supply of these is now practically exhausted.

In order to meet the inquiries for these reports and maps which still continue and appear likely to increase in number, it has been decided to reprint the writer's report of 1887, together with the parts of Mr. R. G. McConnell's report of 1888 that relate to the Yukon district.

The present publication thus includes in a convenient form all the information directly obtained by the Geological Survey of Canada, comprising practically all the geological data available for the Yukon district; constituting a basis of fact upon which further investigation may proceed, and one likely to be of use to the prospector and miner by placing him in possession of the main structural features of the country.

The "Report on the Yukon District and adjacent Northern Portion of British Columbia," is reprinted without change, but the appendices have been omitted. The titles of these appendices are as follows :—

I. Notes on the distribution of trees and of certain shrubs.

II. Notes on the Indian tribes.

III. List of plants collected.

IV. Zoology.

V. Notes on the lithological character of some of the rocks collected.

VI. Meteorological observations.

VII. Summary of astronomical observations.

All that part of Mr. McConnell's report which relates to the Liard River below Fort Liard, near the eastern boundary of British Columbia, together with that dealing with the Mackenzie valley proper, are not reproduced; but that relating to the Porcupine and Yukon Rivers is here reprinted.

Although no work later than that of 1887 and 1888 has been done by the Geological Survey in the Yukon District, much additional information respecting certain parts of the region has since been obtained, particularly as the result of surveys and examinations by Mr. W. Ogilvie, D.L.S. This has been published by the Department of the Interior, and a further publication of the same kind is soon to appear. Some later geological notes on a part of the region are also given in a paper by Mr. C. W. Hayes, entitled "An Expedition Through the Yukon District," published in the National Geographic Magazine, Washington, May 15, 1892.

The map, in three sheets, which will accompany the present reprint, although in great part reproduced from the original engraving, has been brought up to date by the addition of the latest available surveys of the region which it includes, according to authorities noted on the map itself. It will thus present a more complete geographical view of the region than that which was possible at the time the reports here reprinted were written.

G. M. D.

January, 1898.

INDEX.

PAGE.
Abies subalpina 114
Aga-zi-za River, Frances River 103
Agriculture in Yukon district 20
  on Stikine River 20, 58
    Dease Lake 75
    Dease River 86, 90
    Liard River 195
Agricultural resources, Fort Liard 207
Alaska coast, glaciation 37
Anvil Mountain, Dease River 86
Argillites, Wrangel 30
  Stikine River 53
Asbestos, Stewart River 24
  note on occurrence in Yukon district 244
Atlin Lake 169
Basalt in Yukon district 35
  on Stikine River 54
    Tahltan River 62, 69
    Upper Liard River 99
    Pelly River 120, 130
    Porcupine River 223
    Lewes River 144
    Yukon River 229-230
  Miles Cañon, Lewes River 161
Beady Mountain, Dease Lake 75
Beaver River, Liard River 204
Bed-rock Bar, Liard River 191
Bell River, Porcupine River 211, 214
Bennett Lake, Lewes River 166, 171
Big Salmon River, Lewes River 15, 150, 151
Black River, Liard River, gold on 79, 206
Blake, P.W., quoted 50
Blue Fish River, Porcupine River 218
Blue River, Dease River 89
Boswell, T., Teslintoo River 154
Botany. *See* Plants, Trees.
Boulder clay. *See* Glacial deposits.
Boulders, Frances Lake 105
British Columbia, geological features of, continued in Yukon district 29, 31
Cambro-Silurian 31, 92
Campbell, Robt., explorations by 10, 79, 135
Campbell Mountains, Frances River 105
Cañon, Great, Stikine River 44
  Grand, Liard River 199-200
  Little, Stikine River 47
  Kloochman, Stikine River 47
  Lower, Upper Liard River 96
  Middle, Frances River 101
  False do 103
  Upper do 104
  Hoole, Pelly River 118, 120
  Granite do 129
  Miles, Lewes River 160
Canvas boat, used on Liard River 199
Carboniferous rocks 31
  McDame Creek 91
  Frances River 102
  Lewes River 170

PAGE.
Cassiar Bar, Lewes River, gold 152, 181
  Gold district 23, 76-84, 182
  Range 11, 84
    eastern slope of 88, 100
    seen from Liard 190
Cassiar trail 62-71
Chilkat Pass 18
Chilkoot Indians destroy Fort Selkirk 138
Chilkoot on Taiya Pass 174
Clearwater River, Stikine River 48
Climate, Yukon district 18, 27
  Stikine River 56
  Dease Lake 73
  Dease River 89
  E. of Cassiar Range 88
  Lewes River 173
  soil frozen 89, 119, 123, 183
Coal on Lewes River (analysis) 147
  in Yukon district 244
  seam reported near Yukon River 232
Coal River, Liard River 194
Coast Ranges, B.C. 8, 29, 46
  eastern edge of 170
Conglomerate, Lewes River 145, 149
Copper, native, Thibert Creek 80
  ore in Yukon district 244
Cordillera metalliferous belt 24
Cottonwood Creek, Dease River 86, 90
Cranberry Rapids, Liard River 191-192
Cretaceous rocks on Bell River, Porcupine River 214
  Lake Labarge, fossils 158
  Lewes River, fossils 145
  Lower Liard 203
  Mackenzie River 239
  Peel River Portage 213
  Porcupine River 216-218, 231
  Stikine River 55
  Yukon River 231, 240
Crystalline schists on Yukon 238
D'Abbadie or Big Salmon River, Lewes River 150
Dall, W. H., referred to 12, 19
Dawson, Sir J. Wm., determination of fossils, by 124, 145, 148
Dease Creek, Dease Lake 76
  gold mining on 74, 78
Dease Lake 73, 84
  gold on 74
  ancient outlet of 67
Dease River 81, 84-90
  geology of 90-94
Defot Creek, Cañon Creek, Dease River 78
Devil's Portage, Liard River 198
Devonian rocks on Porcupine River 226
Dip of rocks on Pelly-Yukon 239
Eagle River, Dease River 86
Economic minerals 23-25, 242-244
Fauna. *See* Zoology 22

PAGE.

- Finlayson Lake ... 113, 115
- Finlayson River ... 110, 114
- Fishes, Yukon district ... 22
  - Lewes River ... 162
- Flora. *See* Plants, Trees.
- Fort Halkett, Liard River ... 195
- Fort Liard ... 207
- Fort Nelson, Liard River ... 205
- Fort Reliance, copper ore at ... 244
- Fort Selkirk, rocks at ... 238
- Fort Yukon ... 226, 227
- Forty-mile Creek ... 181-182, 232-234, 243, 244
- Fossils, Post-Tertiary ... 39
  - Cretaceous, Lewes River ... 145
    - Lake Labarge ... 158
  - Triassic, Hell Gate, Liard River ... 202
    - Stikine River ... 54
  - Carboniferous ... 31
  - Ordovician, Dease River ... 93
  - plants, Pelly River ... 124
    - Lewes River ... 148
  - woods, Lewes River ... 145
- Frances, Fort, Frances Lake ... 136
- Frances Lake ... 106-112
  - gold on ... 111
- Frances River ... 98-106
  - Lignite on ... 101
- French Creek, Dease River ... 89
- Furs, Yukon district ... 25
- Galena, argentiferous, McDame Creek ... 80
  - on Forty-Mile Creek ... 233
- Garnets, Rothsay Point ... 52
- Geographical results of Yukon Expedition ... 6
- Geology, general, of, Yukon district ... 28-40, 238-244
- Glacial drift ... 10, 38
  - Cassiar Trail ... 71
  - Dease River ... 94
  - Finlayson River ... 117
  - Pelly River ... 119, 124, 129, 131
  - Lewes River ... 148, 153
  - action in Yukon basin ... 241-242
  - Striæ, Pelly River ... 129
    - Lewes River ... 153, 171
- Glaciation, Lake Labarge ... 158
  - Lake Marsh ... 163
- Glaciers of Stikine valley ... 49
  - recession of ... 50
- Glenlyon Mountains ... 125, 127
- Glenlyon River, Pelly River ... 125
- Glenora, Stikine River ... 49, 58
- Gold districts, Yukon and Cassiar ... 23
  - in Yukon district, references to ... 242-244
  - granite, connection of ... 32
  - and glacial drift, connection of ... 40
  - on Dease River ... 74
  - on Liard at McCullough's Bar ... 195, 242
  - at mouth of Nelson River ... 205
  - on Upper Liard River ... 99
    - Forty-mile Creek ... 232-233
    - Stewart River ... 236
    - Stikine River ... 60, 77
  - Mining, Cassiar district ... 76
    - on Upper Liard River ... 99
      - Frances Lake ... 111
      - Pelly River ... 133
      - Big Salmon River ... 151
      - Lewes River ... 152, 178
- Grand Cañon, Liard River ... 199-200

PAGE.

- Granite, Coast Ranges ... 29
  - Stikine River ... 52
  - Cassiar Ranges ... 90
  - Upper Frances River ... 104, 111
  - Glenlyon Range ... 127
  - Granite Cañon, Upper Pelly River ... 129
  - Lewes River ... 144, 171
  - Chilkoot Pass ... 176
- Granitic intrusions, Yukon district ... 235
- Granitic axes, Yukon district ... 9, 32
- Graptolites, Dease River ... 92
- Great Glacier, Stikine River ... 50
- Highland River ... 188
- Hell Gate, Liard River ... 201
- Hoffmann, G.C., analysis of coal by ... 148
- Holt, George, discovers gold on Lewes R. ... 179
- Hoo-chee-koo Bluff, Lewes River ... 144
- Hoole River, Pelly River ... 118
- Hotalinqu River, *see* Teslintoo ... 13, 169
- Howling-dog Rock, Porcupine River ... 225
- Hudson's Bay Co., enterprise of ... 59, 81, 139
- Il-es-too-a River, Frances Lake ... 107
- Indians on Liard River ... 187
  - Porcupine River ... 224
- Indian farms on Liard River ... 206
  - tribes of Yukon district ... 178
- Iskoot River, Stikine River ... 48
- Island Lake, Big Salmon River ... 151
- Jade on Lewes River ... 36, 146
- Jubilee Mountain, Lake Marsh ... 163
- Ketsa River, Pelly River ... 121
- Krause, Dr. Arthur, exploration of ... 180
- Kwikhpak or Yukon River ... 11
- Labarge Lake, Lewes River ... 155
- Lake basins, in valley of Yukon ... 241
- Laketon, Cassiar ... 83
- Lansdowne Mountain, Lake Marsh ... 162
- Lapie River, Pelly River ... 121
- Lapierre House ... 213
- Lapworth, Prof. Chas. on Graptolites, Dease River ... 92
- Laramie rocks, Yukon district ... 34, 124, 148
- Lewes River ... 13, 15, 140-155, 160
  - section of volcanic ash and drift on ... 33
  - jade on ... 36, 146
  - coal (analysis) ... 147
  - gold on ... 152, 178
  - general notes on ... 173
- Liard River, Upper ... 94-100
  - gold and lignite ... 99
  - dangers of, as route of travel ... 140
  - Lower ... 186-207
  - notes on gold on ... 242
- Lignite on Lower Liard River ... 194
  - on Upper Liard River ... 99
  - Frances River ... 101
- Limestone, Cambro-Silurian, Yukon district ... 30
  - Carboniferous, Yukon district ... 31
  - Stikine River ... 53, 68
  - McDame Creek ... 91
  - Frances River ... 101
  - Lake Labarge ... 156
  - Lewes River ... 170
- Lindeman Lake, Lewes River ... 172
- Little Cañon, Liard River ... 188
- Little Salmon River, Lewes River ... 146
- Lorne Mountain, Lake Marsh ... 162

PAGE.

- Lower Ramparts, Porcupine River 226
- Lower Post, Dease River 90
- Mackenzie River and Yukon River compared 13
- McMillan River 14, 126
- Macpherson Lake, near Frances Lake 109
- Maps accompanying 6
  - previous, of Stikine River 45, 61
  - of Yukon district 11, 178
- Marsh Lake, Lewes River 162
- McConnell, R. G., work by 2
  - quoted 45
  - description of Lower Liard by 186-207
    - Rat River 207-209
    - Peel River Portage 209-215
    - Porcupine River 215-226
    - Yukon River 227-238
  - note on geology of Yukon district by 238-244
- McCullough's Bar, Liard River 82
  - gold found 195
- McDame Creek, Dease River, gold mining 79, 87
  - silver in galena from 80
- McEvoy Lake, Finlayson River 114
- McLeod, J., explorations by 81, 135
- McLeod Mountain, Dease River 75
- Minerals of Yukon district, notes on 23-25, 242-244
- Miner's Range, Lake Labarge 156
- Mining and minerals, Yukon district 23, 182
- Michie Mountain, Lake Marsh 162
- Moose, abundance of on Liard River 198
- Mount Prudence, Liard River 203
- Mountain Portage Rapids, Liard River 193
- Mountain sheep, variety on Peel River Portage 210
- Mud or Marsh Lake, Lewes River 163
- Mud River, Liard River 192
- Nares Lake, Tagish Lake 164, 169
- Navigable waters, Yukon district 16
  - Stikine River 44
  - Pelly River 132
  - Lewes River 164, 173
- Nelson River, Liard River 205
- Newberry or Teslintoo River, Lewes River 153
- Ni-sutlin-hi-ni River 154
- Nordenskiöld River, Lewes River 146
- Nourse River, Taiya Inlet 175, 177
- Ogilvie, W., work by 2
  - notes on rocks of upper part of Porcupine River 231
- Ogilvie Valley, Lake Labarge 156
- Old Crow Mountains 219, 220
- Old Crow River, Porcupine River 218
- Orchay River, Pelly River 121
- Ordovician fossils, Dease River 93
- Orography of Yukon district 8
- Pas-ka River 105
- Peel River Portage 209-213
  - terraces in 240
- Pelly Banks, Pelly River 13, 136
- Pelly Range 118, 122
- Pally River, upper course 13, 117-132
  - general notes on 132
  - gold on 133
  - confluence of, with Lewes River 134
  - exploration of 135
  - and Yukon, identity of 137
- Plants, Stikine River 57
  - Tahltan River 63

Plants—*Continued.* PAGE.

  - E. of Cassiar Range 88
  - Upper Liard River 98
  - Frances River 101
  - Finlayson Lake 116
  - Pelly River 131
  - Lewes River 162, 168
- Platinum, Yukon district 25
- Porcupine Bar, Liard River 190
- Porcupine River 215, 226
  - tributaries 226
  - terraces 241
- Portage Brûlé, Liard River 194
- Quartz veins, Yukon district 33, 244
  - Frances River 111, 117
  - Pelly River 133
- Quartzites, Yukon district 31
  - Stikine River 53
  - Lewes River 171
- Quiet Lake, Big Salmon River 151
- Rabbit River, Liard River 193
- Rampart House 224
- Ramparts, Porcupine River 222
- Rapid River, Dease River 88, 222
- Rapids of the Drowned, Liard River 200
- Rat River 207, 209
- Rink Rapid, Lewes River 143
- River Channel, ancient, Dease Lake, 67
  - gravels and salt, Dease Lake 74
  - Frances River 116
  - Pelly River 129
  - Lewes River 146, 150
- River valley, formerly an inlet, Stikine River 47
- Rivers of Yukon District 7, 10
  - compared with other rivers 15
- Rivière des Vents, Liard River 196
- Rocky Mountains, N. W. extremity 8
  - on Liard River 196
  - on Lower Liard 206
  - Peel River Portage 212
  - Rat River 208
- Ross River, Pelly River 14, 120
- Rothsay Point, Stikine River 52
- Routes of travel, Yukon District 16, 183
  - Cassiar Trail 62, 72
  - Liard River 140, 186, 207
  - Lewes River 173
  - Chilkoot Pass 174
  - White Pass 177
  - Peace River to Liard *via* Nelson River 205
    - *see also* Navigable waters.
- Sandstones, Lewes River 144
- Sayyea Creek, Liard River, gold mining 79, 98
- Scenery, Frances River 107
  - Lewes River 165
- Schistose rocks of Yukon District 235
- Schists, crystalline, on the Yukon 238
  - Yukon District 30
  - Dease River 92
  - Lower Cañon, Liard River 97
  - Pelly River 123, 129, 131
  - Lewes River 170
- Schwatka, Lieut., surveys by 12, 142
- Scud River, Stikine River 48
- Sections, volcanic ash and drift, Lewes River 43
  - basalt overlying gravels, Stikine River 70

PAGE.

- Selkirk, Fort, Pelly River 134, 137
  - distances from 13
- Seminow Mountains, Lewes River 149, 153
- Serpentine 76, 116, 123, 244
- Shales, Dease River 91
  - Pelly River 124
- Sheep mountain, Dease River 88
- Sheep Mountains 231
- Silver in galena, McDame Creek 80
  - on Forty-mile Creek 243
- Simpson Lake, Frances River 102
- Simpson Mountain, Frances River 101
- Sixty-mile Creek 235
- Skree Range, Dease River 86, 90
- Smith River, Liard River 195
- Stewart River 9, 137, 236
  - asbestus 24
  - gold mining 182, 243
- Stikine River 15, 44-62
  - gold on, discovery of 60, 77
  - sections of basalts and gravels 24
- "Stone House," Chilkoot Pass 175, 177
- Sucker River, Porcupine River 225
- Sullivan Mountain, Dease Lake 75
- Superficial deposits, Yukon basin 35-43 240-242
- Sylvester, Rufus, trading post on Liard 192
- Sylvester's Landing, Dease River 87
- Sylvester Peak, Dease River 87
- Tagish Lake 164, 169
- Tahk-heena River, Lewes River 159
- Tahltan River, Stikine River 62
  - gold on 78
- Taiya on Chilkoot Pass 174
- Taiya River, Taiya Inlet 176
- Tako Arm of Tagish Lake 168
- Taku River, Taku Inlet 16
- Tanzilla River, Stikine River 66
- Tatonduc River, notes by Ogilvie on rocks of 231
- Tatshun River, Lewes River 143
- Telegaph Creek, Stikine River 49, 55, 58
  - trail from, to Dease Lake 62
- Telegraph exploration, Stikine River 60
- Tent Peak, Too-tsho Range 104
- Terraces, Stikine River 56, 71
  - Tanzilla River 66
  - Dease River, ... 86. 89, 94
  - Frances River 107
  - Finlayson River 116
  - Pelly River 130
  - Lewes River 143
  - Peel River Portage 240
  - Yukon valley 241
- Tertiary rocks, Yukon district 35
  - Dease River 93
  - Frances River 101
  - Porcupine River 220, 221, 225
  - Mackenzie River, alluded to 240
  - Liard River 189
  - plateau, Upper Liard River 100
- Tertiary lavas, Yukon 238
- Teslin Lake 154
- Tes-lin-too River, Lewes River 13, 152
- Thibert, Henry, discovers gold, 1872 .... 82, 109
- Thibert Creek, Cassiar, gold mining 78
  - native copper, &c 80
- Thomas River, Frances Lake 109
- Til-e-i-tsho Lake, Thomas River 109
- Timber (*see* Trees) 20
- Timber line 114
- Toad River post, Liard River 203
- Too-tshi-too-a River, Frances River 103
- Too-tshoo Range, Frances River 104, 111
- Tooya River, Stikine River 64
- Trees, Tahltan River 62
  - east of Cassiar Range 88
  - Lower Dease River 89
  - Upper Liard River 97
  - Frances River 101
  - Frances Lake 110
  - Finlayson River 114
  - Pelly River 119, 123, 133
  - Chilkoot Pass 177
- Triassic fossils, Hell Gate, Liard River 202
- Triassic, Stikine River 31, 54
- Trout River, Liard River 197
- Tses-i-uh Range, Liard River 100
- Turnagain or Black River, Liard River, gold 79
- Tus-tles-to Lake, Thomas River 109
- Views, Tanzilla River 65
  - Too-tsho Range 108
  - Bennett Lake 167
- Volcanic ash deposits 41
  - rocks, altered, Stikine River 53
    - Lewes River 171
- Vologda, province of Russia, compared with Yukon district 28
- Watershed between Arctic and Pacific Oceans 7
- Whirlpool Cañon, Liard River 193
- Whirlpools, Liard River 193
- White Horse Rapids, Lewes River 160
- White Mountain, Lake Marsh 163
- White Pass 177
- White River 9, 237
- Whiteaves, J. F., determination of fossils, by 145, 158, 202
- Whymper, F., referred to 11, 179
- Winds, summer and winter 19
- Wrangel Island 20, 62
- Yukon District, area of 1
  - former explorations 10
  - routes to 17
  - climate 19
  - gold mining 23
  - economic importance 27
  - fort 137, 139
  - river, confused nomenclature of tributaries of 14
  - and Pelly River, identity of 137
  - description by R. G. McConnell 227, 238
  - note on gold of 243
- Yus-sez-uh River, Frances Lake 109

REPORT

ON AN EXPLORATION IN THE

YUKON DISTRICT, N.W.T.

AND

ADJACENT NORTHERN PORTION OF

BRITISH COLUMBIA

BY

GEORGE M. DAWSON.

Introductory.

Yukon Expedition.

The Yukon expedition, to which the present report relates, was undertaken for the purpose of gaining information on the vast and hitherto almost unknown tract of country which forms the extreme north-westerly portion of the North-west Territory. This tract is bounded in the south by the northern line of the Province of British Columbia (Lat. 60°), to the west by the eastern line of the United States territory of Alaska, to the east by the Rocky Mountain Ranges and 136th meridian, and to the north by the Arctic Ocean. The region thus generally defined is referred to as the Yukon district, this name being rendered appropriate from the fact that the greater part of its area lies within the drainage-basin of the river of that name.

Yukon district.

Area of Yukon district.

The Yukon district, as above defined, has a total area of approximately 192,000 square miles, of which, according to the most recent information, 150,768 square miles is included in the watershed of the Yukon. The superficial extent of the district may perhaps best be realized when it is stated that it is nearly equal to that of France, greater than the United Kingdom by 71,100 square miles, ten times the area of the province of Nova Scotia, or nearly three times that of the New England States. It is unnecessary to add that the present report must be considered merely as a first contribution to our knowledge of this wide country.

Purpose of the Expedition.

The immediate necessity for the exploratory and surveying work undertaken by the expedition, arose from the fact that somewhat important developments of placer gold-mining had of late been attracting a yearly increasing number of miners and prospectors into a portion of the district in question; and the work decided on, included the preliminary determination of the point at which the Yukon or Pelly River crosses the 141st meridian, which here constitutes the boundary between the North-west Territory and Alaska.

Organization.

The writer was placed in general charge of the expedition, with Mr. R. G. McConnell, B.A., and Mr. J. McEvoy, B.Ap. Sc., also of the Geological Survey, as assistants, while Mr. W. Ogilvie, D.L.S., was intrusted with the conduct of instrumental measurement and the astronomical work in connection with the determination of the position of the 141st meridian.

Work by Mr. Ogilvie.

In consequence of information gained from persons having some knowledge of the region to be traversed, it was decided that Mr. Ogilvie should carry out an instrumentally measured traverse of the route from the head of Lynn Canal to the Lewes and along the line of the river to the 141st meridian, where he was to make arrangements for wintering, and in the spring and summer of 1888 continue his surveys north-eastward to the Mackenzie River and up that river to connect with previously surveyed lines on Athabasca Lake.

Work by the writer.

Having ascertained that there was a fair probability of his being able to carry a line of survey and exploration from the Cassiar district in northern British Columbia, by way of the Upper Liard and across the height of land to the Yukon basin, the writer decided on attempting that route, which, though known to be difficult, appeared to offer, in conjunction with Mr. Ogilvie's work, the best opportunity of adding to our knowledge of the country as a whole.

Work by Mr. McConnell.

Mr. McConnell was intrusted, in the first instance, with the instrumental measurement of the Stikine River, from the point to which surveys had previously been carried, as far as the head of navigation, and subsequently, with the exploration of the lower portion of the Liard River; the original intention being that he should return after reaching the Mackenzie, in the autumn of 1887, by the ordinary trade route up that river. Before we finally separated from Mr. McConnell, at the confluence of the Dease and Liard, however, so many unexpected delays had occurred, that it was considered advisable to instruct Mr. McConnell to endeavour to make arrangements for passing the winter of 1887-88 on the Mackenzie, and subsequently to descend the Mackenzie, cross the northern extremity of the Rocky Mountains to the Porcupine River, and by following that river and ascending the Lewes, to return to the Pacific Coast at Lynn Canal. This arrangement further provided for the examination of a great additional region of which the

Change of plan

Reports.

geological structure was altogether unknown. Mr. McConnell has since successfully completed the arduous journey thus outlined. A preliminary report of his work, as far as the mouth of the Liard, is given in conjunction with that of the writer, in Part III., Annual Report of the Department of the Interior, 1887. A progress report of Mr. Ogilvie's work forms a portion of Part II. of the same volume.

The present report.

The present report relates exclusively to the exploration by the writer in 1887, with the following exceptions:—(1.) Mr. McConnell's traverse and geological observations on a portion of the Stikine are included in the description of that river and are incorporated on the accompanying map. (2.) The Lewes River, as laid down on the map, (with the exception of the mountain features in its vicinity and some additions to the outlines to the lakes), is from the survey of Mr. W. Ogilvie. The results of Mr. McConnell's work, carried out after his separation from us at the mouth of the Dease, will form the subject of a separate report of the Geological Survey, and Mr. Ogilvie will also prepare an independent report of his survey on his return. *

Arrangement of matter.

In order to present within a reasonable compass the results of the portion of the work of the expedition here reported on, the daily record of progress, which the unknown character of the country traversed might otherwise appear to warrant, has been discarded, and but slight allusion is made to the modes of travel adopted and the numerous vicissitudes encountered during our journey. This, while resulting in the loss of interest which a connected narrative might possess, has distinct advantages in other respects. On account of the extent of the region treated of, the descriptive portion of the report has been divided into separate chapters, each treating of a distinct portion of our route and constituting practically a separate short report. In the pages immediately following this introduction, some general notes on the region as a whole, are given.

Summary of proceedings.

Journey to the Stikine.

The following summary of our proceedings in connection with the expedition is substantially the same as that given in my preliminary report before alluded to.—

We left Ottawa on the 22nd of April, 1887, travelling by the Canadian Pacific Railway to Victoria, but, in consequence of irregularity in the sailing dates of the Alaskan mail steamers, were unable to reach Wrangell, at the mouth of the Stikine River, where our work may have said to have begun, till the 18th of May. Here Mr. McCon-

---

*** [A portion of Mr. McConnell's report is, however, annexed to the present reprint and later information from various sources has been added to the map.]**

nell stayed behind, for the purpose of getting Indians and canoes to enable him to make a micrometer survey of the Stikine from the end of the line measured by Mr. J. Hunter in 1877, to Telegraph Creek, while I proceeded up the river by the first steamer of the season to Telegraph Creek, the head of navigation. From this place, goods are carried by pack animals to Dease Lake, the centre of the Cassiar mining district; and here again a delay of several days occurred, as the animals had not been brought in from their range or shod for the season's work at the date of our arrival. Finally, on June 5th, we reached the head of Dease Lake, and found the greater part of the lake still covered with ice. It was not till the 9th that we were able to reach the point on the shore near Laketon at which two men, previously sent on in advance with an Indian packer, were sawing lumber for boats. Seven days were here busily employed in this work and in constructing three boats for the purposes of the expedition. On the evening of the 16th, a strong wind having broken up the remaining barrier of ice, we reached Laketon with our boats, Mr. McConnell, with a crew of five Coast Indians intended for my work on the Upper Liard, having meanwhile joined us. On the 18th, having completed our supplies and outfit at Laketon, we left that place, and on the 23rd reached the "Lower Post" at the confluence of the Dease and Liard rivers. Here Mr. McConnell, with one boat and two men, separated from us for the purpose of surveying and geologically examining the Lower Liard.

Journey to Dease Lake.

Building boats

Departure from Dease Lake.

Personnel of parties.

On leaving the confluence of the Dease and Liard, my own party included, besides myself, Mr. McEvoy, Messrs. L. Lewis and D. Johnson, engaged at Victoria, two Tshimsian and three Stikine (Thlinkit) Indians, all good boatmen. Two local Indians hired as guides and to help in portaging, deserted a day or two after engaging, and from the "Lower Post" to near the confluence of the Pelly and Lewes, for an interval of more than six weeks, we met neither whites nor Indians.

Journey to Frances Lake.

The ascent of the Liard and Frances rivers to Frances Lake proved unexpectedly difficult and tedious, the rivers being swift throughout and three bad cañons having to be passed through. Frances Lake was reached on the 8th of July, and after spending a few days in examining and mapping the lake, making the observations necessary to fix its position, and in the endeavour to find some Indian trail by which we might travel across to the Pelly, we began the work of portaging on the 17th.

Journey overland to Pelly River.

As we had been unable to discover any route now in use by the Indians, and no trace whatever remained of the trail employed by the

Hudson's Bay Company in former years; and further, as no local Indians could be found to act as guides or to assist in carrying our stuff, it was evident that the crossing of this portage (which had been estimated by Mr. Campbell at about 70 miles in length) would be a difficult matter, and that we might indeed find it impossible to carry over a sufficient supply of provisions for work on the Pelly. We therefore constructed a strong log *câche* on the shore of Frances Lake, and left there, to be taken to Dease Lake by the Indians when they returned, everything we could possibly dispense with. Had we been unable to effect the portage, there was in our *câche* a sufficient supply of provisions to enable the whole party to return to the "Lower Post." After a very toilsome journey, we were, however, so fortunate as to reach the bank of the Upper Pelly on the 29th of July, with still nearly a month's provisions for four persons, our instruments and a small camping outfit, a canvas cover from which a canoe might be constructed, and the tools and nails for building a wooden boat, should that prove to be necessary. Our Indians, who had for a long time been very uneasy because of their distance from the coast and the unknown character of the country into which they had been taken, were here paid off, and to their great delight allowed to turn back.

Descent of the Upper Pelly.

As a dangerous rapid was reported to exist on the upper part of the Pelly, it was decided to construct a canvas canoe in preference to building a boat, which it might prove impossible to portage past the rapid. Having completed the canoe, we descended the Pelly, making a portage of half a mile past Hoole Rapid or Cañon, and arrived at the confluence of the Lewes branch with the Upper Pelly on the 11th of August.

Proceedings at mouth of Lewes.

We had now reached the line of route which is used by the miners, and expected to find, at the mouth of the Lewes, a pre-arranged memorandum from Mr. Ogilvie, from whom we had separated in May. As we could not find any such notice, and as Mr. Ogilvie had not been seen on the lower river by a party of miners whom we met here on their way up the Lewes, we were forced to conclude that he had not yet reached this point. The same party informed us that there had been few miners during the summer on the Stewart River, where most of the work had been carried on in 1886, but that in consequence of the discovery of "coarse" gold on Forty-mile Creek, over 200 miles further down the river, most of the men had gone there. We were also told that Harper's trading post, where I had hoped to be able to get an additional supply of provisions should we fail to connect with Mr. Ogilvie, had been moved from the mouth of the Stewart to Forty-mile Creek. From the place where we now were we still had a journey of nearly 400 miles to the coast, with the swift waters of the Lewes to contend against for the greater part of the distance. If therefore it should have become necessary to go down stream 200 miles to Forty-mile Creek for provisions, so much would have been added to our up-stream journey that it would become doubtful whether we should be able to afford time for geological work on the Lewes, and yet reach the coast before the smaller lakes near the mountains were frozen over. I therefore decided to set about the building of another boat, suitable for the ascent of the Lewes, and on the second day after we had begun work, Mr. Ogilvie very opportunely appeared. After having completed our boat and obtained Mr. Ogilvie's preliminary report and map-sheets, together with the necessary provisions, we began the ascent of the Lewes, from the headwaters of which we crossed the mountains by the Chilkoot Pass and reached the coast at the head of Lynn Canal on the 20th September,

Building our fifth boat.

Reach Lynn Canal.

In addition to the physical obstacles to be encountered on the long route above outlined, some anxiety was caused by reported Indian troubles on the Yukon. We heard a most circumstantial account of these from a couple of miners who followed us in to Dease Lake, the report being that the hostile Indians had retreated up the Pelly. As it was impossible either to confirm or refute these reports without practically abandoning the scheme of work, it was determined to proceed according to the original arrangement. On reaching the mouth of the Lewes we ascertained that the story was entirely false, but it had none the less kept us in a state of watchfulness during a great part of the summer.

Reported Indian troubles.

Main Geographical Results.

Geographical data obtained.

The main geographical results of the Yukon expedition, in so far as those are covered by the present report, are best shown by the accompanying maps, which may be compared with previous maps of the same region. Mr. Ogilvie's instrumentally measured line from the head of Lynn Conal to the intersection of the Yukon or Pelly by the 141st meridian, will form a sufficiently accurate base for further surveys. In addition to this we now have an instrumental survey of the Stikine from its mouth to the head of navigation (Telegraph Creek), which is connected with Dease Lake by a carefully paced traverse. This is continued by a detailed running- or track-survey following the lines of the Dease, Upper Liard and Pelly rivers, and connecting with Mr. Ogilvie's line at the mouth of the Lewes, the total distance from the mouth of the Stikine to this point, by the route travelled being about 944 miles. Adding to this the distance from the mouth of the Lewes back to the coast at the head of Lynn Canal (377 miles),

Length of route traversed.

the entire distance travelled by us during the exploration amounts to 1322 miles. This, taken in connection with the coast-line between the Stikine and Lynn Canal, circumscribes an area of about 63,200 square miles, the interior of which is still, but for the accounts of a few prospectors and reports of Indians, a *terra incognita*. The same description with little qualification, applies to the whole surrounding region outside the surveyed circuit, but much general information concerning the country has been obtained, which will facilitate further explorations.

Positions fixed.

Along the routes thus travelled numerous points have been carefully fixed in latitude by sextant observations, and a sufficient number of chronometer longitudes have been obtained by which to lay the whole down within small limits of error. Special attention was paid to the sketching and fixing of mountain topography in sight from the line of travel, and the approximate altitudes of a number of the more prominent peaks was ascertained.

No reference is made here to the further work carried out by Messrs. Ogilvie and McConnell in 1888, which will, as above stated, be separately reported on.

OROGRAPHY AND GENERAL FEATURES.

Drainage system.

The region traversed by the routes just mentioned, including the extreme northern part of British Columbia and the southern part of the Yukon district (as previously defined), is drained by three great river systems, its waters reaching the Pacific by the Stikine, the Mackenzie, (and eventually the Arctic Ocean), by the Liard, and Behring Sea, by the Yukon. The south-eastern part of the region is divided between the two first-named rivers, whose tributary streams interlock, the Stikine making its way completely through the Coast Ranges in a south-westerly direction, while the Liard, on a north-easterly bearing, cuts across the Rocky Mountains to the Mackenzie valley. The watershed separating these rivers near Dease Lake has a height of 2730 feet, and both streams may be generally characterized as very rapid.

Watershed.

To the north-westward, branches of the Stikine and Liard again interlock with the head waters of several tributaries of the Yukon, which here unwater the entire great area inclosed on one side by the Coast Ranges, on the other by the Rocky Mountains. As the general direction of this line of watershed is transverse to that of the main orographic ridges of the country, it will probably be found, when traced in detail, to be very sinuous. The actual watershed between the Liard and Pelly, on our line of route, was found to have an elevation of 3150 feet, but it is, no doubt, much lower in the central portion of the region between the Rocky Mountains and Coast Ranges.

To the north of the Stikine, at least one other river, the Taku, cuts like it completely across the Coast Ranges, but its basin is comparatively restricted and little is yet known of it.

Courses of rivers.

It will be noticed, that while the several branches of the Yukon conform in a general way to the main orographic axes, the Stikine and Liard appear to be to a large degree independent of these, and to flow counter to the direction of three mountain ranges.

Relief of the region.

The region as a whole, being a portion of the Cordillera belt of the west coast, is naturally mountainous in general character, but it comprises as well important areas of merely hilly or gently rolling country, besides many wide, flat-bottomed river-valleys. It is, moreover, more mountainous and higher in its south-eastern part—that drained by the Stikine and Liard,—and subsides gradually, and apparently uniformly, to the north-westward; the mountains at the same time becoming more isolated and being separated by broader tracts of low land. The general base-level, or height of the main valleys, within the Coast Ranges, thus declines from about 2500 feet, to nearly 1500 feet at the confluence of the Lewes and Pelly rivers, and the average base-level of the entire region may be stated as being a little over 2000 feet.

Trend of ranges.

Disregarding minor irregularities, it is found that the trend of the main mountain ridges and ranges shows throughout the entire region here described a general parallelism to the outline of the coast. In the south-eastern and more rugged tract, the bearing of such ranges as are well defined is north-west by south-east, while beyond a line which may be drawn between the head of Lynn Canal and Frances Lake the trend gradually changes to west-north-west.

The Coast Ranges.

The Coast Ranges, with an aggregate average width of about eighty miles, the whole of which is closely set with high, rounded or rugged mountains, constitutes the most important orographic uplift in the entire region, and here reproduces geographically and geologically the features characteristic of it in the more southern portion of British Columbia. Beyond the vicinity of Lynn Canal, this mountain axis runs behind the St. Elias Alps, ceasing to be the continental border, and may be said to be entirely unknown, as any indications of mountains which have appeared on this part of the map are purely conjectural. Notwithstanding the great width of the Coast Ranges, it is not known that any of their constituent mountains attain very notable altitudes, but it is probable that a great number of the peaks exceed a height of 8000 feet. These ranges are composed of very numerous mountain ridges, which are not always uniform in direction, and, so far as has been observed, there is no single culminating or dominant range which can be traced for any considerable distance.

Rocky Mountain Ranges.

The mountain axis next in importance to that of the Coast Ranges, is that which forms the water-parting between the Upper Liard and Yukon, on one side, and the feeders of the main Mackenzie River on the other. This represents the north-western continuation of the Rocky Mountains proper. Its eastern ridges were touched on during the present exploration in the vicinity of Frances Lake and the head waters of the Pelly River, and are there designated on the map as the Too-tsho Range. This forms, so far as has been ascertained, the culminating range of a number of more or less exactly parallel ridges, and summits in it attain heights of from 7000 to 9000 feet. It has, however, been traced to a comparatively limited distance only, and it appears probable that a very complicated mountain system remains to be worked out in this portion of the region.

Cassiar Range.

A third notable mountain axis, which I have designated on the map as the Cassiar Range, is cut through by the Dease River in its upper course, and further to the north-westward appears to form the line of water-parting between the tributaries of the Upper Liard and those of the branches of the Yukon. Peaks near the Dease, in this range, exceed 7000 feet, but it is probable that none much exceed 8000 feet, and that the range in a general way becomes lower to the north-westward.

In the north-western and less elevated moiety of the region, the mountain ranges and ridges are in general lower and become discontinuous and irregular, or while retaining a general parallelism, assume an overlapping or echelon-like arrangement.

Granitic rocks.

In each of these mountain chains above described granitic rocks appear in greater or less force, as more fully noted on succeeding pages. In the intervening and subordinate mountain systems of the south-east, granitic axes are not found and do not exist as prominent features.

Orography of neighbouring regions.

Scarcely anything is known of the character of the country drained by the Macmillan, Stewart and White rivers, but it is probable that the basins of the two first-named streams closely resemble that of the Upper Pelly, which is described in following pages. Miners who have ascended the Stewart for a hundred miles or more, report the existence of a continuous range of mountains of considerable height, which runs parallel to the river on the north, from a point about fifty miles from its mouth onward. The absence of tributaries of any size along the south-west side of the Lewes below the Tahk-heena, with the general appearance of the country in that direction, so far it has been overlooked, seems to show that the basin of the upper portion of the White River must be comparatively low, and situated as it is within the St.

Elias Alps, this country must possess most remarkable features, both geographically and from a climatic point of view, and well deserves exploration. It would further appear to be nearly certain that the sources of the Tanana River are to be looked for in this district, well to the east of the 141st meridian.

Effects of the glacial period.

The topographical features of the entire region here described have been considerably modified by the events of the glacial period, and the changes produced at that time have more particularly affected the drainage-basins and the courses of the various streams. The valleys and lower tracts of country are now more or less completely filled or covered by extensive deposits of boulder-clay, gravel, sand and silt laid down during that period. To these deposits are due the flat floors of the larger valleys, and also to a great extent the appearance which the more irregular mountain regions present of being partly submerged in level or rolling plains. Many changes in direction of flow in river-valleys, have doubtless also been produced during this period, though most of these yet remain to be worked out. The general result has been to produce systems of "inconsequent" drainage wherever the natural slopes of the country are easy and the limiting ranges irregular. Most of the rivers at the present day have done little more than cut out new channels in the glacial *débris*, touching only here and there upon the subjacent rocky floor.

Sources of the Yukon and Nomenclature.

Confused nomenclature

Such particulars as have been ascertained relative to the various rivers examined in the course of the exploration, are given in a subsequent part of this report. As, however, some confusion has arisen in respect to the nomenclature of the Yukon and its tributaries, and erroneous statements have been made as to the "source" of the river, it may be appropriate here briefly to note the facts in the case in so far as I have been able to ascertain them. Further details of the exploration of the river are given on a later page.

First Exploration of Yukon.

The estuary of the Yukon appears to have been first explored by the Russian, Glasunoff, in 1835 to 1838, and the river was then named by the Russians the Kwikhpak, which name, according to Mr. W. H. Dall, is in reality that of one of the channels by which it issues to the sea. The lower part of the river, however, continued to be known under this name for a number of years, and it is so called on the (Russian) map of Lieut. Zagoskin, made from reconnaissance surveys which, in 1842-43, he carried up as far as Nowikakat. The mouth of the river is shown on Arrowsmith's map of 1850, but is there nameless.

Origin of the name.

The name Yukon was first applied in 1846 by Mr. J. Bell, of the Hudson's Bay Company, who reached the main river by descending the Porcupine, and called it by what he understood to be its Indian appellation. The head waters of one of the main tributaries of the Yukon had previously been attained by Mr. R. Campbell (also an officer of the Hudson's Bay Company) in 1840, and in 1850 he descended the river as far as the mouth of the Porcupine, naming the whole river thus traversed the Pelly, and naming also the Lewes, White and Stewart rivers, as well as numerous smaller tributaries. Campbell's nomenclature and his sketch of the river appear on Arrowsmith's map published in April, 1854, and Campbell practically established by his journey the identity of his Pelly River with the Kwikhpak of the Russians. The connection between the two is given by a sketch (shown in broken lines) on the map just cited, on which also the mouth of the Tanana River (under the name Mountain-men River), is shown, and other details represented with reasonable accuracy. The sketch of the river below the mouth of the Porcupine appears to have been due to the Hudson's Bay Company's traders, who, before Campbell had communicated his geographical information in London in (1853), had already met the Russian traders at the mouth of the Tanana. Much later, in 1863, I. S. Lukeen of the Russian Trading Company, ascended the river to the Hudson's Bay post, Fort Yukon, at the mouth of the Porcupine.*

Connection of Yukon and Kwikhpak.

Usage on subsequent maps.

The name Yukon does not appear at all on Arrowsmith's map of 1854, that of the Pelly standing for the whole length of the river explored by Campbell, but since that date the term Yukon has gradually become applied to the main river. The next map in order of publication in which original data are employed is, I believe, that accompanying Mr. Whymper's paper of 1868, in the Journal of the Royal Geographical Society, † which is also reproduced in his book, Travels in Alaska and on the Yukon (1869). His general map gives the name Pelly for the whole river above the mouth of the Porcupine, "Kwich-Pak or Yukon," for the lower part. In his large-scale map, on the same sheet, the river above the Porcupine is named the Yukon or Pelly. Whymper refers to the river as the "Yukon (or Pelly) as it has long been called on our maps."[*] In the United States Coast Survey map dated 1869[†] the main river between the Porcupine and Lewes is definitely named the Yukon ; but in the map accompanying Raymond's official report (1871), this name is again confined to the river below the Porcupine, and the statement is made in the report (p. 21) that from Lake Labarge to Fort Yukon the river is called the Lewes.

---

* By a singular oversight, Mr. W. H. Dall states in the first part of his work, Alaska and its Resources 1870 (p. 4) that "the identity of the Yukon [Pelly] River with the so-called Kwikhpak of the Russians" remained to be established when the explorations of the Telegraph Survey commenced on the river in 1868, while giving the credit of this achievement to Lukeen on a subsequent page (p. 277). Raymond repeats this error in his Report of a Reconnaissance of the Yukon River (1871). Mr. Dall's work above cited constitutes a veritable mine of information on the subjects of which it treats, and is frequently referred to in the sequel. Where, therefore, as in the above case, criticisms are offered, it is in no spirit of detraction.

† Vol. xxxviii.

Further confusion of nomenclature.

Much later, Lieut. Schwatka, in the maps accompanying the official report of his explorations of 1883 and in other maps elsewhere published, in defiance of the fact that the name of the Lewes had a published priority of thirty years, erased it completely, extending the name Yukon so as to include under that designation the Lewes River. This extension of the name Yukon appears to be justified by Lieut. Schwatka on the ground that the Lewes is the larger branch at its confluence with the Upper Pelly. As elsewhere stated, this is no doubt true, but from what is now known of the Upper Pelly, that river is almost certainly the longer, its sources are furthest removed from the mouth of the Yukon and its course is more directly in continuation of its main direction than is the case with the Lewes. Granting, however, that the Lewes excelled in all these particulars, it would still, I believe, be unjustifiable to alter an old established name for the sole purpose of giving to a river a single name from its mouth to its source. In any case it is incorrect to state that the Yukon (Lewes) rises in Lake Lindeman, or streams flowing into it, as is done by Schwatka, for by far the greater part of the water of the river enters by the Taku arm of Tagish Lake.

With respect to the substitution of the name Yukon for that of Pelly on the portion of the river between the Porcupine and Lewes, it is simply a question of well established priority *versus* use. It is possibly a matter of small importance which shall be employed in future, but no valid excuse can be offered for the attempt to substitute any new name for that either of the Lewes or Pelly above the site of old Fort Selkirk.

True sources of the Yukon.

From the point of view of the physical geographer, and apart from the question of nomenclature, the position of the furthest source of the great Yukon River is, however, an interesting subject of inquiry; though it may yet be some years before we are in possession of sufficient information to settle this question definitely. It may be confidently assumed that this point is to be found by following up either the Pelly or the Lewes from their confluence at the site of old Fort Selkirk. As already stated, the Lewes there carries the greater volume of water, but draining as it does a considerable length of the humid Coast Ranges, which bear throughout the year great reserves of snow and numerous glaciers, it does not compare on terms of equality with the Upper Pelly, which unwaters a region relatively dry. Whether reckoned by size or distance from its mouth, the source of the Lewes must be placed at the head waters of the Hotilinqu River,* explored by Byrnes, of the Telegraph Survey, in approximate latitude 59° 10′, longitude 132° 40′. In regard to the Pelly, it is not yet absolutely certain that the Pelly proper rises further from the common point at Fort Selkirk than its great branches, the Macmillan and the Ross rivers, but it is highly probable that it will be found to do so.

---

[*] *Op. cit.*, p. 223.

[†] In United States Coast Survey Report for 1867 the same nomenclature is adopted, as it is also in the map accompanying Mr. Dall's Alaska (1870), in the Ethnological map of Alaska by the same author (1875), and in most later maps. These, however, do not embody any original data for this region.

Comparison of tributaries.

With the above facts premised, we may compare the respective distances of assumed or probable sources of the Yukon as below, the distances being in each case measured in a straight line from the common point at Fort Selkirk :—

Fort Selkirk to summit of Chilkoot Pass, source according to Schwatka (position fixed)........	224 miles.
" " to head of Hotalinqu River of Telegraph Survey (position approximate)	294 "
" " to "Pelly Banks" (position fixed)........	213 "
" " to head of Pelly Lakes (above "Pelly Banks," according to Campbell's sketch)........	276 "

The upper lake on the Pelly must be fed by a considerable stream or streams, the addition of the length of which, if known, would add considerably to the last of the above distances.

Size of the river.

I must confess to having been somewhat disappointed in the size of the Pelly or Yukon where we saw it below the confluence of the Lewes. The river is there, when undivided by islands, about 1700 feet only in width, with a maximum depth scarcely exceeding ten feet when at a stage which may be considered as its approximate mean. It appeared to me to be about equal in size and velocity to the Peace River at Dunvegan and Mr. Ogilvie, who is also familiar with the Peace, concurred in this estimate. Below this place the river, of course, receives a number of important tributaries, but at any fairly comparable point on the two rivers I believe that the Mackenzie must far exceed the Yukon in volume. Numerical data on this point are unfortunately still almost

Comparison with Mackenzie River.

---

* The Tes-lin-too occupies the main orographic valley above its confluence with the Lewes, but is smaller than the Lewes, and besides doubles back on its course, as is shown on the map.

entirely wanting, but the comparison of the drainage-areas of the two rivers, according to the latest available information, strongly bears out the statement just made, that of the Yukon being 330,912 square miles as against 677,400 square miles in the case of the Mackenzie.[*] In other words, the drainage area of the Mackenzie is more than double that of the Yukon, while nothing is known to show that the mean annual precipitation over the two areas, as a whole, differs very greatly. Exaggerated statements which have been made, to the effect that the Yukon discharges a volume of water approaching that of the Mississippi, appear to carry their own refutation in the fact that the basin of the latter river has an area of no less than 1,226,000 square miles.

Discharge of rivers.

Some attempt was made by us to gauge the flow of several of the rivers in the Yukon basin, as more fully stated further on. The discharge of the several rivers above the site of the old Fort Selkirk may be roughly summarized as follows. The figures given in heavy type are derived from measurements more or less approximate, the others are based merely on comparisons made by eye and without any attempt to cross-section the streams. The scheme may, however, serve to give a general idea of relative dimensions. All the figures represent cubic feet per second and refer to the latter part of the summer, when the rivers may be assumed to be at their mean height. In common with all the streams of the interior region these are highest in the early summer and lowest toward the end of the winter.

Pelly River, at "Pelly Banks"	**4,898**
Ross River, at mouth	4,898
Macmillan River, at mouth	9,796[†]
Tes-lin-too, at mouth	**11,436**
Lewes River, above confluence with last	**18,664**
Big Salmon	**2,726**
Total thus accounted for	52,418
Pelly or Yukon at site of Fort Selkirk	**66,955**
Difference from above total, not accounted for	14,537

Upper Pelly and Lewes compared.

By adding two-thirds of the water thus not accounted for to the Pelly and one-third to the Lewes, to represent the flow of numerous smaller tributaries not enumerated, the discharge of these two rivers above Fort Selkirk will stand thus:—

---

[*] Of the area drained by the Yukon, about 150,768 square miles are in Canadian, 180,144 square miles in United States territory.

[†] The discharge of the Ross is taken as equal to that of the Pelly at "Pelly Banks," that of the Macmillan as equal to the combined waters of the Pelly and Ross.

Lewis	37,672
Pelly	29,283
Total as above	66,955*

Navigable Waters and Routes of Travel.

The numerous large and important rivers by which the Yukon district and the adjacent northern portion of British Columbia is intersected, constitute the principal routes of travel, and during the summer months render inter-communication comparatively easy. The Stikine is navigable by stern-wheel steamers for a distance of 138 miles, as more fully stated in a subsequent part of this report, where also details respecting the connecting trail to Dease Lake are given. This constitutes the travelled route to the Cassiar mining district. A trail was, at one time, opened from Fraser Lake overland to Dease Lake by which cattle were driven through, but of late no travel has occurred on it. The Dease River can scarcely be considered as navigable for steamers, though constituting a fairly good boat route. The Upper Liard and Frances rivers, above the mouth of the Dease, are also passable for large boats, with occasional portages, but not so for steamers. The difficulties of the Lower Liard, however, are such as to render it an undesirable route, even for boats, and scarcely suitable as an avenue of trade between Cassiar and the Mackenzie. Numerous tributary streams in this district may also be ascended by boat or canoe for considerable distances, though with many interruptions from rapids and bad water.

Navigable rivers.

Communication may easily be established by railway from the mouth of the Stikine to the centre of the Cassiar district and beyond, when

Possible railway route.

---

* For the purpose of comparison, the following extract from a table of various rivers, contained in the General Report of the Minister of Public Works for the fifteen years from 1867 to 1882, is quoted:—

NAMES.	Area of drainage in square miles.	Length in miles.	Discharge in cubic feet per second.		
			Low Water.	Mean.	High Water.
Mississippi	1,226,000	4,000	447,200	....	1,270,000
St. Lawrence	565,000	2,600	....	900,000	....
Ganges	432,000	1,680	36,300	207,000	494,200
Nile	520,200	2,240	23,100	220,000	....
Thames	5,000	215	1,330	....	7,900
Rhone	38,000	560	7,000	21,000	204,000
Rhine	80,000	700	13,400	33,700	161,000
Ottawa (Grenville)	80,000	700	35,000	85,000	150,000

this shall be called for, and it is probable also that this district might, without difficulty, be connected by rail with the more southern portions of British Columbia by one or more routes of which the main outlines can already be indicated. Following the river valleys, by a route practicable for a railway, from Rothsay Point at the mouth of the Stikine to the mouth of the Dease, the distance is found to be 330 miles. Thence to Fort Simpson on the Mackenzie, is a further distance of 390 miles, making the total distance by this route, from the Pacific to the navigable waters of the Mackenzie, about 720 miles only.

Taku River and trails.

Little is yet known of the Taku River, but the Indians ascend it in canoes to a point at a distance of about eighty miles from the head of Taku Inlet, and Indian trails lead south-eastward from this vicinity to the Tahl-tan, eastward to Tes-lin Lake and north-eastward to the lakes near the head of the Lewes. From what has been ascertained of these, it is probable that it would not be difficult to construct a trail suitable for pack-animals, if not a wagon road, from the vicinity of the head of navigation on the Stikine to these lakes connecting with the navigable waters of the Lewes.

Tributaries of Yukon.

The rivers draining the Upper Yukon basin, have in general lower grades, and afford better navigable water than those above referred to, and are in consequence likely to prove of greater importance in connection with the exploration and development of the country. The distance to which they may be respectively ascended by boat or canoe has as yet been determined in only a few cases.

Navigable lengths of rivers.

It may, however, be stated that the Yukon is continuously navigable for small steamers from its mouth, on Behring Sea and following the Lewes branch, to Miles Cañon. Thence, after an interruption of about three miles, to the head of Bennett Lake and to an additional considerable—though not precisely determined distance—by the waters extending south-eastward from Tagish Lake. The Tes-lin-too is probably navigable for stern-wheel steamers for a hundred and fifty miles or more from its mouth while the Tahk-heena and Big Salmon rivers may probably both be ascended by steamers of the same class for some distance. From the site of old Fort Selkirk, again, the Pelly might be navigated by small steamers of good power to within about fifty miles of the site of old Fort Pelly Banks, and the Macmillan branch is also navigable for a considerable, though not ascertained distance. The same may be said of the Stewart River, but White River is, so far as known, very swift and shoal.

Aggregate length of navigable waters.

The total length of the waters which may be utilized for navigation by light stern-wheel steamers on the main river and its branches to the east of the 141st meridian or Alaskan boundary, measured in straight lengths of fifty miles, is therefore at least 1000 miles, and following the sinuosities of the various streams would be very much greater. This does not include the Porcupine River, and with the exception of the single break above referred to on the Lewes, forms a connected system, all parts of which lie to the east of the above meridian. If the upper portion of these rivers, above the first obstacles to such navigation, were included, the total here given would doubtless be greatly added to.

Means of access to Yukon District.

At the present moment but three routes of access to the Yukon district are employed. (1). That of the portage by the Chilkoot Pass from the head of Lynn Canal to the navigable waters of the Lewes. (2). That from Peel River, near its confluence with the Mackenzie by portage to La Pierre's House on a branch of the Porcupine. (3). That from Behring Sea by the main river. The first is that almost exclusively used by the miners, the second is employed only by the Hudson's Bay Company, and the last is that of the Alaskan traders.

There are now three small stern-wheel steamers on the lower river, which ascend each year as far as the trading post at Forty-mile Creek, bringing the greater part of the goods used in trade with the Indians and for the supply of miners. It is not possible, however, for miners to reach the scene of their operations by this route in time to make a season's work, and the chances of reaching or leaving the Yukon mouth are few and precarious. Particulars relating to the Chilkoot Pass and Lewes River will be found on later pages. The character of the pass is such that it would scarcely be possible to construct a useful trail across it for pack-animals, but the White Pass appears to offer a better opportunity for making a trail or road which, if constructed, would render the entire region much more easy of access. Another route, also leading from the head of Lynn Canal to navigable water connecting with the Lewes, is that by the Chilkat Pass. This was formerly much employed by the Indians, but entails a much longer land carriage, one which is said to occupy the Indians for twelve days when carrying packs, as against two days of packing by the Chilkoot Pass.*

Indian routes.

The Indians inhabiting the region to the south and east of the site of old Fort Selkirk are poor boatmen and follow the various rivers in the course of their periodic journeys to a very limited extent. Most of their travelled routes appear, indeed, to run nearly at right angles to the direction of drainage, the rivers being crossed in summer on rafts, the remains of which may frequently be observed. In travelling thus they carry their entire small camping outfit on their backs.

---

* [All the above remarks respecting routes, of course refer to the date of publication of the Report.]

Climate, Agriculture and Flora.

General character of climate.

While the available information as to the climate of the northern portion of British Columbia and the Yukon district is necessarily as yet very imperfect, its general features are sufficiently obvious, repeating as they do those met with in the similarly circumstanced region to the south, with such modification as is produced by their higher latitude. The coast and coastward slopes of the Coast Ranges constitute a belt of excessive humidity and great precipitation, with somewhat equable temperatures, while the interior region to the eastward of these ranges is relatively dry, with a temperature of extremes.* In the interior, however, the climate is largely influenced by the altitude of each particular district, and in consequence of the general lowering of the country beyond the 60th parallel (constituting the north line of British Columbia), it is certain that the climatic conditions are there much more favourable than in the Cassiar district.

Regions of heavy and light rainfall.

The mean annual temperature of the coast region is considerably higher than that of the interior; yet, in consequence of the great depth of the snow fall and persistently clouded character of the skies, the Coast Ranges are found to support numerous and massive glaciers, while these are almost or altogether absent in the Cassiar Mountains, in the mountains about Frances Lake and in the other ranges seen by us in the interior. The heavy accumulation of snow upon the Coast Mountains and in their valleys, retards the progress of spring, as is very clearly evidenced on the Stikine, and explained more fully elsewhere. The depth of snow in winter continues to be inconsiderable or moderate, at least as far down the Pelly (Yukon) as the mouth of Stewart River and Forty-mile Creek, while at Nulato, on the lower river and in a similar latitude, but 500 miles further west, the depth of snow from April to November is said to average eight feet and often to reach twelve feet.† Mr. Dall also writes: "The valley of the Lower Yukon is somewhat foggy in the latter part of summer; but as we ascend the river the climate improves, and the short season at Fort Yukon is dry, but pleasant, only varied by an occasional shower." Relatively to the country of the Upper Yukon basin, the advent of spring is much retarded in the country to the west, and it is stated that on the river below Nulato

Progress of spring.

---

* A mean of the total annual precipitation for Fort Tongass, Wrangell and Sitka gives a general mean for the coast of 86·84 inches.

† Alaska and its Resources, W. H. Dall, 1870, p. 437.

alder buds were found just opening and tender leaves beginning to appear on the 4th of June. These and other facts seem to show conclusively, that in the absence of a continuous mountain barrier in that region, the humid winds of the Pacific are enabled to push eastward a long way up the Yukon valley, carrying with them the belt of heavy snowfall, which ceases to be conterminous with the Coast Mountains, as it is to the south-eastward.

Dry belts.

As in the more southern parts of British Columbia, the dryest country is found to occur in a belt bordering the eastern or lee side of the Coast Ranges, and this phenomenon recurs, though in a less marked degree, in connection with each of the well defined mountain ranges of the interior. Thus a region of greater humidity is found near Dease Lake, on the western side of the Cassiar Mountains, with a dry belt on the east side of the range; while humid conditions, with recurrent showers in summer, characterize the district in the vicinity of Frances and Finlayson lakes. Further illustrations of this fact, with other climatic observations, will be found in the body of this report.

Summer and winter winds.

A noteworthy circumstance in connection with the Stikine valley, the passes leading from the head of Lynn Canal, and doubtless in all the low gaps in the Coast Ranges, is the change in direction as between the summer and winter winds. During the summer strong winds blowing up these valleys inland, are of very frequent occurrence and they commonly freshen in the afternoon and die away toward night. In the winter months the conditions are precisely reversed, the strongest winds blowing seaward. The summer winds are doubtless homologous with the sea breezes observed in many other regions, while the direction of the winter winds probably depends on the existence of a persistent anti-cyclonic area in the interior during that season.

Temperatures of coast and interior.

The temperature of Wrangell, just off the mouth of the Stikine, may probably be taken as fairly representative of that of the coast in these latitudes. For the interior region, here particularly treated of, we are unfortunately without a series of thermometer readings extending even over a single year, but some idea of its climate may be formed from that of Fort Yukon, which is, however, situated far to the north, almost exactly on the arctic circle. The mean seasonal temperatures for these two stations may be compared as below.*—

---

* From the United States Coast Pilot, Alaska, Part I., 1883, p. 269.

	Wrangell.	Fort Yukon.
Spring	40·4	14·6
Summer	57·1	56·7
Autumn	43·0	17·4
Winter	28·3	—23·8
Year	42·2	16·8

Comparison with Russia.

In the central provinces of European Russia, the thermometer descends to —22° and —31°, and occasionally even to —54°, in the winter months, but rises at times to 104° and even to 109° in summer. The rainfall is small, varying from sixteen to twenty-eight inches, the maximum precipitation taking place during the summer months, and not, as in western Europe, in the winter, while the months of advanced spring are warmer than the corresponding months of autumn.† So far as our information goes, the above statement might almost be adopted as characterizing the climate of the southern half of the Yukon district.

Crops and cultivation.

At Telegraph Creek and in its vicinity on the Stikine, to the east of the Coast Ranges (lat. 58°), wheat, barley and potatoes are successfully grown with the aid of irrigation. Their cultivation has so far been attempted on a limited scale only, on account of the want of any market, and wheat has been grown only experimentally, as it cannot, like barley, be employed for feeding pack-animals. None of these crops can be successfully grown or ripened on the coastward side of the mountains. At Fort Yukon (situated, as above noted, on the arctic circle) Mr. Dall states he was informed that barley had once or twice been tried in small patches and had succeeded in maturing the grain, though the straw was very short.‡ A few cattle were also kept here at one time, when the post was in the possession of the Hudson's Bay Company. Petroff, in his Census Report on Alaska, endeavours to discredit Dall's statement as to the growth of barley at this northern point, but I am fortunately in possession of independent evidence as to its accuracy, the late Mr. James Anderson, of the Hudson's Bay Company, having noted in an official report on the district that both potatoes and barley have been grown at the fort.

Conclusions as to possible agriculture.

Taking into consideration all the facts which I have been able to obtain, as well as those to be derived from an examination of the natural flora of the country, and the observed advance of vegetation, which, in the absence of actual experiments, are capable of affording valuable data, I feel no hesitation in stating my belief that such hardy crops as barley, rye, turnips and flax can be successfully cultivated in the Yukon district as far north as the former position of Fort Selkirk, near the 63rd parallel, or in other words about 1000 miles north of Victoria. Taken in conjunction with the physical features of the region, this means, that chiefly within the drainage area of the Yukon, and for the most part to the north of the 60th parallel, there exists an area of about 60,000 square miles, of which a large proportion may—and doubtless in the future will—be utilized for the cultivation of such crops, and in which cattle and horses might be maintained in sufficient number for local purposes, without undue labour, as excellent summer grazing is generally to be found along the river-valleys and natural hay-meadows are frequent. I do not maintain that the country is suitable for immediate occupation by a large, self-supporting agricultural community, but hold that agriculture may before many years be successfully prosecuted, in conjunction with the natural development of the other resources of this great country, of which by far the most valuable portion lies to the east of the line of the Alaskan boundary.

---

† Encyclopedia Britannica, vol. xxi., p. 67.

‡ *Op. cit.*, p. 441.

Trees. A note on the distribution of the various species of trees and on that of some of the herbaceous plants forms a separate section of this report (Appendix I.), while in Appendix III., Prof. Macoun gives a list of the plants collected.*

Timber. Remarks on the quantity and quality of timber along the various routes are given under the local headings. It may suffice here to state, in this connection, that the country is generally wooded,† and that in all portions of it, in valleys and on low lands, there is an abundance of white spruce, of fair to good quality, well suited for purposes of construction. The other species of trees present are of inferior economic importance.

Fauna.

Larger animals noted. The fauna of the region traversel by us, does not differ notably from that of other parts of the northern country which are already moderately well known. There are, no doubt, many interesting points yet to be determined in respect to distribution, but our opportunities for obtaining information of this kind were very limited. The smaller black-tailed deer (*Cariacus Columbianus*) occurs on the islands of the southern portion of Alaska and the adjacent mainland coast, but is nowhere found on the inland side of the Coast Ranges. The mountain goat is moderately abundant in the Coast Ranges, and is also found in the mountainous inland regions, probably throughout. The big-horn or mountain sheep occurs, together with the last mentioned animal, on the mountains about the head of the Lewes and other parts of the inland spurs of the Coast Ranges, but does not inhabit the seaward portions of these ranges. It is also found generally in the mountains of the interior, including the Rocky Mountains.

---

* [These are not here reprinted.]

† No areas of *tundra* or frozen morass, such as are stated to be characteristic of the country of the Lower Yukon, were found in the region here reported on.

The moose is more or less abundant throughout the entire inland region, and together with the caribou, which is similarly ubiquitous, constitutes a great part of the food of the Indians. We found the moose particularly plentiful along the Upper Liard River, and it is stated that the country drained by the White River is noted among the Indians as a moose and beaver region. The caribou is everywhere common, but is scarcely seen in the valleys or lower country during the summer, when it ranges over the high, alpine moors and open slopes of the mountains.

The black and grizzly bears roam over the entire region and are often seen along the banks of the rivers in the latter part of the summer when dead or dying salmon are to be obtained with ease. Wolves are not particularly abundant, but the cross, black and silver-fox are more than usually common.

Smaller fur-bearing animals.

The smaller fur-bearing animals, being similar to those found generally in the northern parts of the continent, do not require separate enumeration. The entire Upper Yukon basin, however, yields furs of exceptionally high grade. Some notes as to the quantity annually obtained from the region will be found in a subsequent paragraph (p. 25 B).

Among a few skins brought back by us, is that of a mouse which Dr. C. H. Merriam has found to be a new species, and has described under the name of *Evotomys Dawsoni.*[*]

Salmon.

The salmon ascend the Lewes River as far as the lower end of Lake Marsh, where they were seen in considerable numbers early in September. They also, according to the Indians, run almost to the head-waters of the streams tributary to the Lewes on the east side. Salmon also run up the Pelly for a considerable distance above the mouth of the Lewes, but their precise limit on this river was not ascertained. The lakes and rivers generally throughout the country are well supplied with fish, and a small party on any of the larger lakes would run little risk of starvation during the winter, if provided with a couple of good gill-nets and able to devote themselves to laying in a stock of fish in the late autumn.

---

[*] American Naturalist, July, 1888.

As might be anticipated from the interlocking of streams tributary to the Mackenzie and Yukon in this region, the fishes in both drainage-areas appear to be identical, so far as I was able to observe, with the exception of the salmon, which, is of course, confined to the Yukon tributaries. The principal fishes noticed are white-fish (*Coregonus Nelsoni*), lake trout (*Salvelinus Namaycush*), grayling (*Thymallus signifer*), pike (*Esox lucius*), and sucker (*Catostomus catostomus*). The names above given are on the authority of Dr. T. H. Bean, of the U. S. Commission of Fish and Fisheries, who has very obligingly examined for me the photographs of fishes which were taken. No photograph, unfortunately, was obtained of the salmon seen on the Lewes, etc., but Dr. Bean informs me, from my description of its size, that he has little doubt it was the king salmon, *Oncorhynchus chuicha*. **Other fishes.**

Appendix IV. includes a list by Mr. James Fletcher, F.R.S.C., of the species of insects collected.* **Insects.**

Mining and Minerals.

Mining has so far been confined, within the Cassiar district and in the Upper Yukon basin, to the working of gold placers, and in the latter, almost entirely to river-bar mining, the inception of which indeed dates only from 1880. Particulars with reference to the rich creeks of Cassiar will be found elsewhere, and facts relating to the rivers tributary to the Yukon on a later page. Almost all the large streams which have been prospected in the Yukon basin, have been found to yield placer gold in greater or less quantity and the aggregate length of the rivers thus already proved to afford gold is very great, but little has been done toward the examination of their innumerable smaller feeders. Similar river-bar mining on the Stikine and Liard rivers preceded the discovery of the smaller creeks in which the richer deposits of "heavy" gold were obtained, and a few miles in length each of Dease, Thibert and McDame creeks produced the greater portion of the $2,000,000 worth of gold credited to Cassiar in 1874 and 1875. Discoveries similar to these may be expected to occur at any time in the Yukon district, the generally auriferous area of which already proved is very much greater than that of Cassiar. Scarcely anything has been done as yet, even in the Cassiar district, toward the search for or proving of metalliferous veins, and practically nothing in the Yukon district, but there can be no reasonable doubt that such deposits **Placer gold-mining.** **Metalliferous veins.**

---

* [Not here reprinted.]

exist.* The present activity in mining enterprise in the southern part of British Columbia will, before long, spread to this northern region also, and then, if not before, its valuable character as a portion of the metalliferous belt of the continent will be realized.

Importance of metalliferous belt.

The Yukon district with the northern part of British Columbia, measured from the vicinity of Dease Lake to the intersection of the Pelly (Yukon) with the 141st meridian comprises a length of over 500 miles of the Cordillera belt of the west, which, wherever it has been examined, has been found rich in minerals and particularly in the deposits of the precious metals. The width of this particular part of the Cordillera belt is also great, as it appears, so far as our explorations have gone, to extend from the coast to the eastern ranges of the Rocky Mountains in the vicinity of the Mackenzie River. This portion of the Cordillera region, together with that of the more southern part of British Columbia, gives an aggregate length of between 1200 and 1300 miles, almost exactly equal to the length of the same metalliferous belt contained by the United States, and in all probability susceptible of an eventual mining development equally great.

Bearings of climate on mining.

In the northern districts here reported on, it is true that the winter climate is a severe one, rendering the working season for ordinary placer-mines short and likely also to present some special difficulties in the way of "quartz mining." There is, however, on the other hand, an abundance of wood and water, matters of great importance in connection with mining, and means of communication once provided, mining operations should be carried on here at less cost than in dry and woodless regions such as are great portions of Arizona.

Statistics of gold.

Statistics of the former and present gold production of Cassiar are given in connection with that district, on a later page. It is difficult if not impossible to arrive at even an approximate statement of the total amount of gold which has been so far afforded by the Yukon district, but from such inquiry as I was able to make in 1887, I estimated the value of gold obtained in that year at a minimum of $60,000; the number of men engaged in mining at 250.

Asbestus.

A specimen of asbestus (chrysotile) being part of a small vein of that material about an inch in thickness, has been brought from the Stewart River, and the occurrence of serpentine in large mass elsewhere, tends to show that workable asbestus deposits may yet be found in that region.

---

* A specimen of galena obtained from McDame Creek, Cassiar, was found to contain 75 ounces of silver to the ton and of seven specimens of veinstuff collected by us on the Upper Pelly and Lewes, five proved to contain distinct traces of gold on assay.

Platinum.

Platinum is found in small quantities along all or nearly all the tributaries of the Yukon, in association with the gold. It has also been observed in the Cassiar district.

Fur Trade.

Exports of furs.

Gold and furs are at present the only articles of value derived from the great region here referred to as the Yukon district. It is impossible to secure accurate information as to the value of furs annually obtained, but sufficient is known to show that it must be very considerable. Petroff, in his report, states that the total annual value of the furs shipped by the Yukon probably does not exceed $75,000,* and it is known that a great, if not the greater, portion of this total is derived from the region lying east of the 141st meridian. Dall states that, at the date of his visit (1867), the value of furs annually obtained at Fort Yukon, then maintained by the Hudson's Bay Company, was not less than $50,000. Captain Raymond notes that the total number of skins collected in 1869, at this place, was stated at 10,000, but adds that he believes this estimate to be excessive.† Practically the whole of these may be regarded as having been brought by Indians from the region east of the Alaskan line. An approximate estimate of the furs derived from Canadian territory and taken down the Yukon, obtained from Mr. François Mercier, who spent many years trading on the river, places the annual value at about $27,000. The annual catch is made up, according to the same authority, about as follows :—

Beaver	1200 to 1500	skins.
Cross fox	100	"
Black fox	100	"
Red fox	300	"
Bear	300	"
Marten	4000	"
Otter	200	"
Mink	2000	"
Lynx	600	"
Wolverine	150	"
Wolf	100	"
	9350	"

Routes of export of furs.

In addition, however, to the furs taken from the Yukon district by this route, the Hudson's Bay Company obtains a large quantity of skins from their posts on the Porcupine, which reach the market by the

---

* Report on the Population, Industries and Resources of Alaska, p. 5, U. S. 10th Census, vol. viii.

† *Op. cit.* p. 115.

Mackenzie River route. A certain number of skins derived from the country north of British Columbia is, further, annually traded at the little post at the mouth of Dease River, and taken out by the Stikine. A considerable quantity of furs also each year finds its way by the Chilkoot and Chilkat passes to the head of Lynn Canal, and some are brought down by the Taku River to the coast, though the greater part of these last is probably derived from the north-western corner of the province of British Columbia. Information obtained on the spot indicates that the value of the furs reaching Lynn Canal from the interior is from $12,000 to $15,000 annually.

Economic Importance of the Region.

Value of the Yukon district.

Without including the northern part of British Columbia, respecting which more has already been made known, but restricting ourselves to the great area of 192,000 square miles situated to the north of the 60th parallel and west of the Rocky Mountains, which I have referred to as the Yukon district, it may be said that the information now obtained is sufficient to warrant a confident belief in its great value. Very much yet remains to be learned respecting it, but it is known to be rich in furs, well supplied with timber, and it is traversed by a great length of navigable rivers. It is already yielding a considerable yearly product in gold, and presents every indication of a country rich as well in other metals, and including deposits of coal. In its southern portion, situated between the 60th and 65th degrees of latitude, is comprised an area of probably not less than 30,000 square miles, suitable for eventual agricultural occupation, and presenting none of the characters of a sub-arctic region, which have, in advance of its exploration, been attributed to it by some writers. In each of these particulars and in climate it is greatly superior to the corresponding inland portion of the territory of Alaska. It may, in fact, be affirmed with little room for doubt, that the region here spoken of as the Yukon district surpasses in material resources the whole remaining northern interior portion of the continent between the same parallels of latitude.

Isothermal lines.

The winter climate of the whole of this great region is known to be a severe one, and its northern extremity lies within the arctic circle, but it must be remembered that the climatic conditions on the western and eastern sides of the continent are by no means comparable, and that the isothermal lines representing the mean annual temperature, trend not westward but north-westward from the Manitoba region. The lines, in particular, which would represent the mean summer temperature would assume, in the far north-west, a proximate parallelism with the Pacific coast, instead of tending to follow lines of latitude. It is needless here to recapitulate the well known causes which produce this remarkable difference in climate, but the lines as already approximately drawn upon the maps, represent in a generalized form the aggregate of influences which, working together, produce at the site of old Fort Selkirk on the 63rd parallel of latitude in the Upper Yukon basin, an attractive landscape, decked with well-grown forests and with intervening slopes of smiling meadow, while in the same latitude in Hudson Strait we find, even at midsummer, merely a barren waste of rocks and ice.

Comparison with province of Vologda.

To instance a region which reproduces the general conditions of the Yukon district and adjacent northern portions of British Columbia, we must turn to the inland provinces of Russia, to which allusion has already been made in connection with climatic features. The province of Vologda, in European Russia, appears to offer the nearest parallel. It is circumstanced relatively to the western shores of Europe, as is this district to the western shores of the North American continent. Its area is 155,498 square miles, situated between the 58th and 65th degrees of latitude. The climate in both cases is a continental one, in which severe winters alternate with warm summers, and the actual degrees of cold and heat, so far as our information goes, are not dissimilar. There is no very heavy rainfall in either region, such as we find near the western coasts bordering on the Atlantic and on the Pacific respectively. The agricultural products from the province of Vologda are oats, rye, barley, hemp, flax and pulse. The mineral products comprise salt, copper, iron and marble, but the precious metals do not appear to be important, as in the Yukon district. Horses and cattle are reared, and the skins of various wild animals, as well as pitch and turpentine, are among the experts. The population of the province is stated at 1,161,000.

Ultimate development assured.

While the Yukon district and the northern portion of British Columbia are at present far beyond the limits of ordinary settlement, we may be prepared at any time to hear of the discovery of important mineral deposits, which will afford the necessary impetus, and may result, in the course of a few years, in the introduction of a considerable population into even its most distant fastnesses. To-day it may well be characterized by the term which has been employed in connection with the Mackenzie basin, a portion of "Canada's Great Reserve." It appears meanwhile eminently desirable that we should encourage and facilitate, in so far as may be possible, the efforts of the miners and others who constitute our true pioneers in the region, and to whom, in conjunction with the fur companies and traders, the peaceful conquest of the whole of our Great West has been due. In the future, there is every reason to look forward to the time when this country will support a large and hardy population, attached to the soil and making the utmost of its resources.

GENERAL GEOLOGY.

Difficulties of the field.

In a reconnaissance carried out along a single line, in which the greater part of one's time is necessarily occupied in overcoming the difficulties of the route and in securing the necessary geographical data, it is difficult to obtain any very complete knowledge of a region geologically complicated. In the present case this difficulty is increased by the circumstances that the geology of the corresponding portion of the Cordillera belt in the southern part of British Columbia, is as yet very imperfectly understood, though considerable attention has been devoted to it ; while with respect to the older rocks of the analogous region in the western part of the United States very little published information of a systematic kind is available.

General similarity with British Columbia.

Speaking broadly, however, and with reference to the general features of the region, the rock-series represented are evidently similar to those found in the southern portion of British Columbia between the Rocky Mountains and the coast, and an important general result of the work here reported on, is the further demonstration of the great constancy in lithological characters of the several formations, when followed in the direction of the main north-west and south-east axes of uplift—a constancy which contrasts markedly with the diversity found when comparisons are made as between localities situated at right angles to this direction.

Rocks of the Coast Ranges.

The Coast Ranges, where traversed by the valley of the Stikine, and again where crossed still further north by the Chilkoot Pass, are found to consist, for the most part, of granite and granitoid rocks, almost invariably of gray colour and frequently rich in hornblende. With these are occasionally included stratified or stratiform masses of mica- and hornblende-schists, and both these and the granites are frequently traversed by pegmatite veins, diabase dykes and intrusive masses of coarse diorite. The schistose portions of these ranges may possibly represent the still recognizable remnants of rocks of Archæan age, or may be merely portions of much newer series which have suffered extreme alteration

No demonstration of the date of the origin of the granitic rocks of the Coast Ranges was obtained in this region, but there is every reason to believe that it is comparatively recent, and due to a time lying between the Triassic and the Cretaceous, as has been found to be the case with their continuation to the south, near the northern part of Vancouver Island.*

Rocks of the coast archipelago.

The argillites of Wrangell, together with those met with near Juneau, and at Sitka, on the Alaskan coast, and also in various places along the east side of Lynn Canal, together with the altered volcanic rocks found in association with these on Lynn Canal and elsewhere (examined by me particularly in the vicinity of Seduction Point), closely resemble rocks of the same class composing the Vancouver group of the Queen Charlotte and Vancouver islands. Though no fossils were obtained at these northern localities, the rocks may, like those just referred to, be provisionally classed as Triassic, with the reservation, (as made in the case of the similar series of the Queen Charlotte and Vancouver islands), that Palæozoic strata may also be represented.

General features of coast belt.

The width of the belt of granitoid rocks composing the Coast Ranges is, on the Stikine, about sixty-five miles, measured from their sea-border inland at right angles to the main direction of the mountains. It is somewhat less in the latitude of the Chilkoot Pass, but may be assumed to occupy a border of the mainland about fifty miles in width along the whole of this part of the coast. Broadly viewed, however, the coast archipelago in reality represents a partly submerged margin of the Coast Ranges, and granitic rocks are largely represented in it also. The examination of these two northern cross-sections of the Coast Ranges, serves, with observations previously made, to demonstrate the practical identity in geological character of this great orographic axis, from the vicinity of the Fraser River to the 60th parallel of north latitude—a length, in all, of about 900 miles.

Formations of the interior region.

East and north-east of the Coast Ranges, the interior region traversed is, for the most part, floored by Palæozoic rocks of very varied appearance, and probably referable to several of the main subdivisions of the geological scale. In so far as the information obtained in the region here in question enables conclusions on the subject to be formed, the lowest part of the rocks, (1) consists of greenish and gray schists, generally felspathic or hornblendic, but often quartzose and including distinctly micaceous and talcose schists, with some bands of limestone; the lithological character of this subdivision being exceedingly varied. Apparently overlying these are, (2) gray and blackish, often lustrous and sometimes more or less micaceous calc-schists and quartzites, including beds of limestone of moderate thickness, which are often more or less dolomitic. These are associated with, or pass up into, (3) black argillites or argillite-schists, also containing thin beds of limestone, which at one locality on the Dease, have afforded a small number of graptolites of Cambro-Silurian age. Next above these is a series (4) consisting chiefly of massive limestones, generally of gray or blue-gray colour where unaltered, but often locally changed into white or variegated crystalline marbles. These are closely associated with quartzites which usually show the peculiar fine-grained cherty character of those of the typical Cache Creek series on the Fraser and Thompson rivers. The thickness of this subdivision cannot (any more than that of those previously mentioned) be stated with precision, but that of the limestones alone must be several thousand feet in some places. On the Dease, on the Frances, and again on Tagish Lake, fossils of Carboniferous age, including more particularly a species of *Fusulina*, have been detected in some beds of this limestone series, probably belonging to its upper portion. Forms of the genus *Fusulina* are characteristic in certain zones of the Carboniferous limestone in California. They have been found by the writer in a number of places in British Columbia, which, with the discoveries here reported on, occur at intervals along a belt of country to the north-east of the Coast Ranges for a distance of over 800 miles. The limestone last-mentioned appears to be conformably followed or even in part interbedded with (5) a great mass of more or less evidently stratified rocks of volcanic origin, comprising amygdaloids, agglomerates, and other more massive materials which apparently represent old lava-flows. All these are highly altered, so much so that in some cases their original physical character is scarcely demonstrable, while they have suffered changes also in constitution, having been converted for the most part into diabases.

---

* See Annual Report Geol. surv. Can., 1886.

Fusuline limestones

Altered volcanic materials.

Analogy with the southern portions of British Columbia which I have examined, leads me to believe that the greater part of these volcanic materials are also to be classed as of Carboniferous age, but it is quite probable that here, as to the south, they comprise as well rocks of similar appearance which are of Triassic age, but which we are at present unable to separate from them. This is further rendered probable by the occurrence in certain black argillites at Glenora, on the Stikine, of Triassic fossils (p. 53) and by the discovery by Mr. McConnell of fossils of this age on the Lower Liard River, some distance to the east of the region covered by this report.*

Relations of the rock series.

No unconformity has been proved to occur throughout the whole of the above Palæozoic series, but the examinations made were scarcely of a sufficiently detailed nature for the detection of any stratigraphical break unless of a very obvious character. Respecting the first-mentioned of the above subdivisions, I feel some doubt as to whether it really constitutes a lower member of the series or whether it may represent some of the other members—particularly the rocks of volcanic origin—in a highly altered state, as seems, from late observations, to be the case with rocks of similar appearance in southern British Columbia. The proximity of the rocks classed under the first subdivision to certain granitic axes is equally explicable on either hypothesis. It must also be added that there appears to be a recurrence of rock materials originally volcanic, in greater or less force in several parts of the series, and that important beds of serpentine occur at one or more horizons.

---

* See Summary Report of the Operations of the Geological Survey for 1887, p. 11.

Geological notes on map.

For the purpose of assisting future more complete inquiry, and in view of the tentative character of the classification here offered, the more important details observed are noted on the face of the map accompanying this report, for which it would be premature to attempt a geological colouring.

Interior granitic axes.

The preponderantly Palæozoic floor of the region east of the granites of the Coast Ranges, is broken through on two main lines by granite axes. The first of these is cut across by the Dease River a short distance below Dease Lake, and was again met with—over 300 miles north-westward—on the Pelly near the mouth of the Macmillan. Though referred to as a single granitic axis, this uplift probably consists rather of a series of alternating and more or less irregularly shaped granitic masses, which, however, preserve a general alignment. There are on the Upper Pelly in fact three separate granitic ridges in place of the single one met with on the Dease. In close association with these granites are some gneissic rocks and holocrystalline mica and hornblende-schists, which have not been referred to in previous paragraphs as they are regarded as probably Archæan, rather than as representing highly altered Palæozoic rocks. A small tongue of granite occurs on the Lewes a few miles above the mouth of the Little Salmon, which may be connected with the south-western side of this granitic axis, but with this exception its continuity between the Dease and Pelly is indicated merely by the statement of Mr. J. McCormick that granites and mica-schists occur on the south-west side of Quiet Lake and near the Big Salmon River, below that lake. Its further extension in a north-westerly bearing is, however, proved by the occurrence of a great preponderance of rocks of the same character in the collection made by Mr. Ogilvie* on the lower Pelly or Yukon, between the mouth of the Lewes and Forty-mile Creek.

---

*Sent out by him in charge of the latest party of miners in the autumn of 1887.

Connection of gold with the rock series.

On comparing the position of this irregular granitic axis and its surrounding altered rocks (in part referable to several of the Palæozoic subdivisions previously described) with that of the richer deposits of placer gold so far discovered and worked, it will be found that they are closely associated. The chief placers and river-bars are, in fact, scattered along this line or belt, and extend, like it, all the way from Dease Lake and McDame Creek to Forty-mile Creek. Evidence was moreover found on the Pelly, to show that the development of quartz veins in the Palæozoic rocks had occurred contemporaneously with the upheaval of the granites, and probably by some action superinduced by the granite masses themselves while still in a formative condition. While cutting the stratified rocks, the quartz-veins seldom or never cut the granite masses in this district. These observations should afford an important clue to the further search for auriferous ground, as well as for the lodes from which the placer gold has itself been derived.

Granites of Too-tsho Range.

Of the second granitic axis of the interior region very little is yet known, but it is probable that it is still less regular in character than the last. It occurs in the mountainous region to the east of Frances Lake and River, and probably also in the vicinity of the Pelly Lakes. Its lithological characters and those of the rocks in its neighbourhood are similar to those of the last described, and here again in its vicinity, on Frances Lake and on the Liard paying gold placers have been found. The district is, however, so difficult of access that it can scarcely as yet be said to have been at all prospected.

Age of granites.

I am inclined to believe that the two granitic axes of the interior region above described are of much greater age than that of the Coast Ranges. The reasons for assigning a comparatively late date to the latter have already been alluded to. It is found, too, that while the stratified rocks usually conform to an ascending order in receding from these granitic axes, there is evidence along the north-eastern flanks of the Coast Ranges of an irregular line of junction, and though on the Stikine the Palæozoic rocks appear to rest upon the granites of the Coast Ranges, the supposed lower members of the series are not seen, while on the lakes near the head of the Lewes some of the upper portions of the Palæozoic are directly in contact with, and have apparently been broken through by the granites. The granitoid rocks of the interior region are, moreover, different in general appearance from those of the Coast Ranges, and resemble more closely the probably Archæan granites of the Gold Ranges in southern British Columbia.

Lithological character.

Lithologically the granites and granitoid rocks of the Coast Ranges are generally fresh and unaltered in appearance, gray in colour and not often distinctly foliated, while those of the ranges of the interior show evidence of considerable alteration subsequent to their formation, are more highly quartzose and often reddish in tint. Some particulars respecting a few of the granites of the region which have been microscopically examined by Mr. F. D. Adams are given elsewhere.

Cretaceous and Laramie rocks.

Besides the Triassic rocks previously referred to, the Mesozoic period is represented also by strata of Cretaceous and Laramie age. These rocks are distinctively more recent in appearance than, and rest quite unconformably on all the older formations, though they have since been to some extent involved in their flexures. On the lower part of the Lewes, below the mouth of the Little Salmon, these rocks are cut across by the river for a distance of at least thirty-five miles. Some fossil molluscs and plants have been obtained from this area, from which it would appear to include beds referable to the Middle or Lower Cretaceous and to the Laramie period, and it is not improbable that the series is a consecutive one between these limits, as the total thickness represented must be very great. The strike of these beds varies much in direction, and the angles of dip are so irregular that no even proximate estimate of thickness could be formed, and it is impossible to arrive at any definite conclusion with respect to the trend of the basin in which they lie. The rocks comprise, in their lower portion, coarse conglomerates, grauwacke-sandstones, yellowish and gray quartzose sandstones and dark calcareous slates. The upper portion, in which Laramie plants are found, consists chiefly of rather soft sandstones, shales and clays, generally of pale colours. Evidence of contemperaneous volcanic action is observable in both parts of the series, and the higher beds include lignite-coal of good quality.

Some miles further up the Lewes, midway between the Little and Big Salmon rivers, peculiar green, grauwacke-sandstones and green, highly calcareous conglomerates occur, which are also provisionally referred, though with some doubt, to the Cretaceous. They are at least newer than the Palæozoic rocks, being composed of fragments of these and of the granites.

Cretaceous of Lake Labarge.

Conglomerates and sandstones similar to the last are again found near the lower end of Lake Labarge, on the east side, and are associated with black calcareous slates, which recur in several places along the same side of the lake, further up, and from which a few fossils have been obtained. These seem to show that the beds are on or near the horizon of Series C, of the Queen Charlotte Islands, which is of Middle Cretaceous age, approximately equivalent to the Gault.

Cretaceous of Upper Pelly.

On the Upper Pelly River, forty-three miles below Hoole Cañon, a single low outcrop of hard, dark shales, containing fossil plants of

Connection of gold with the rock series.

On comparing the position of this irregular granitic axis and its surrounding altered rocks (in part referable to several of the Palæozoic subdivisions previously described) with that of the richer deposits of placer gold so far discovered and worked, it will be found that they are closely associated. The chief placers and river-bars are, in fact, scattered along this line or belt, and extend, like it, all the way from Dease Lake and McDame Creek to Forty-mile Creek. Evidence was moreover found on the Pelly, to show that the development of quartz veins in the Palæozoic rocks had occurred contemporaneously with the upheaval of the granites, and probably by some action superinduced by the granite masses themselves while still in a formative condition. While cutting the stratified rocks, the quartz-veins seldom or never cut the granite masses in this district. These observations should afford an important clue to the further search for auriferous ground, as well as for the lodes from which the placer gold has itself been derived.

Granites of Too-tsho Range.

Of the second granitic axis of the interior region very little is yet known, but it is probable that it is still less regular in character than the last. It occurs in the mountainous region to the east of Frances Lake and River, and probably also in the vicinity of the Pelly Lakes. Its lithological characters and those of the rocks in its neighbourhood are similar to those of the last described, and here again in its vicinity, on Frances Lake and on the Liard paying gold placers have been found. The district is, however, so difficult of access that it can scarcely as yet be said to have been at all prospected.

Age of granites.

I am inclined to believe that the two granitic axes of the interior region above described are of much greater age than that of the Coast Ranges. The reasons for assigning a comparatively late date to the latter have already been alluded to. It is found, too, that while the stratified rocks usually conform to an ascending order in receding from these granitic axes, there is evidence along the north-eastern flanks of the Coast Ranges of an irregular line of junction, and though on the Stikine the Palæozoic rocks appear to rest upon the granites of the Coast Ranges, the supposed lower members of the series are not seen, while on the lakes near the head of the Lewes some of the upper portions of the Palæozoic are directly in contact with, and have apparently been broken through by the granites. The granitoid rocks of the interior region are, moreover, different in general appearance from those of the Coast Ranges, and resemble more closely the probably Archæan granites of the Gold Ranges in southern British Columbia.

Lithological character.

Lithologically the granites and granitoid rocks of the Coast Ranges are generally fresh and unaltered in appearance, gray in colour and not often distinctly foliated, while those of the ranges of the interior show evidence of considerable alteration subsequent to their formation, are more highly quartzose and often reddish in tint. Some particulars respecting a few of the granites of the region which have been microscopically examined by Mr. F. D. Adams are given elsewhere.

Cretaceous and Laramie rocks.

Besides the Triassic rocks previously referred to, the Mesozoic period is represented also by strata of Cretaceous and Laramie age. These rocks are distinctively more recent in appearance than, and rest quite unconformably on all the older formations, though they have since been to some extent involved in their flexures. On the lower part of the Lewes, below the mouth of the Little Salmon, these rocks are cut across by the river for a distance of at least thirty-five miles. Some fossil molluscs and plants have been obtained from this area, from which it would appear to include beds referable to the Middle or Lower Cretaceous and to the Laramie period, and it is not improbable that the series is a consecutive one between these limits, as the total thickness represented must be very great. The strike of these beds varies much in direction, and the angles of dip are so irregular that no even proximate estimate of thickness could be formed, and it is impossible to arrive at any definite conclusion with respect to the trend of the basin in which they lie. The rocks comprise, in their lower portion, coarse conglomerates, grauwacke-sandstones, yellowish and gray quartzose sandstones and dark calcareous slates. The upper portion, in which Laramie plants are found, consists chiefly of rather soft sandstones, shales and clays, generally of pale colours. Evidence of contemperaneous volcanic action is observable in both parts of the series, and the higher beds include lignite-coal of good quality.

Some miles further up the Lewes, midway between the Little and Big Salmon rivers, peculiar green, grauwacke-sandstones and green, highly calcareous conglomerates occur, which are also provisionally referred, though with some doubt, to the Cretaceous. They are at least newer than the Palæozoic rocks, being composed of fragments of these and of the granites.

Cretaceous of Lake Labarge.

Conglomerates and sandstones similar to the last are again found near the lower end of Lake Labarge, on the east side, and are associated with black calcareous slates, which recur in several places along the same side of the lake, further up, and from which a few fossils have been obtained. These seem to show that the beds are on or near the horizon of Series C, of the Queen Charlotte Islands, which is of Middle Cretaceous age, approximately equivalent to the Gault.

Cretaceous of Upper Pelly.

On the Upper Pelly River, forty-three miles below Hoole Cañon, a single low outcrop of hard, dark shales, containing fossil plants of

Cretaceous or Laramie age was found, but in the absence of further exposures along the river in that vicinity, nothing can be said of the extent of this area, except that it must be quite limited in width. Again, on the Stikine River, between Glenora and Telegraph Creek, there are local occurrences of conglomerates and soft sandstones which may be regarded as probably Cretaceous, though no palæontological evidence is forthcoming.

Relations of the Cretaceous

The position of these last-noted areas, as well as that of those along the Lewes River, occurring as they do in a zone of country immediately within the line of the Coast Ranges, is analogous to that held by Cretaceous rocks on the Skeena and in other localities still further southward in British Columbia. Further investigation will probably show that rocks of this age occur in many additional places, and occupy somewhat extensive areas in this belt of country. In the vicinity of the Lewes, particularly, it is noted that the plane of the original base of the Cretaceous, now thrown into a number of folds, is about that of the present surface of the country, and these rocks may therefore be expected to recur frequently in the form of troughs or basins, more or less strictly limited and only to be discovered in detail by thorough examination. The loose material brought down by the Big Salmon River, appears to indicate the existence of a considerable development of these rocks not far up the valley of that stream.

Tertiary rocks

No wide-spread Tertiary areas like those of the southern interior portion of British Columbia appear to occur in the region here described. The most important occurrence of beds of this age met with, is that which occupies the wide valley of the Upper Liard, but its extent to the north-west and south-east was not ascertained. The rocks are soft shales, sandstones and clays, generally of pale color, and holding beds of lignite in some places. Flows of basalt either cap these rocks or are included in their upper portion, and from the considerable angles of dip observed, the formation would appear to have suffered some flexure subsequent to its deposition.

Basalts.

In the Stikine valley, east of the Coast Ranges, important local basalt-flows are met with, overlying old river and valley-gravels and the lignite reported to exist some miles up the Tahl-tan is, doubtless, also of Tertiary age and inferior in position to the basalts. Basalt effusions of a sporadic character may be frequent in other places in the region, as such were actually noted in three other widely separated localities, viz., above Hoole Cañon on the Pelly, at Miles Cañon on the Lewes, and again at the confluence of this river with the Pelly.

Age of basalts.

The basalts are at least pre-glacial in age, and though no characteristic fossils were observed in the associated bedded deposits, both may be provisionally classed from their analogy with similar deposits in the more southern portion of British Columbia, as Miocene.

Occurrence of Jade on the Lewes.

Occurrence of jade pebbles.

Having become interested in the question of the origin of nephrite or jade, on account of its former extensive employment by the natives of the West Coast for the manufacture of implements,* I kept a close watch for this mineral along our route, and ultimately succeeded in finding several rolled pieces of it in gravel-bars along the Lewes. Of the pebbles collected by us, at least five have the specific gravity and other physical characters of jade, though they have not yet been subjected to chemical or microscopical analysis. Several of these are evidently, however, pure and typical jade, of which the finest and most characteristic was found by Mr. W. Ogilvie, near Miles Cañon. This specimen is a pale green translucent to sub-transparent variety weighing a pound and three-quarters, after a piece, probably equal to about one-fourth of the original mass, had been broken off and unfortunately lost. Some of the specimens collected, but not referred to in the above remarks, appear to show the passage, by admixture of other materials, of the pure jades into various altered rocks of volcanic origin, as described in the publication above referred to. So far as I have been able to ascertain, the discovery of jade here noted is, with one exception, the first actually direct one made in the region of the Pacific slope. The exception above alluded to is that of jade found at the Kwichpak mouth of the Yukon during Captain Jacobson's stay in that vicinity and which was obtained by him and taken to Berlin.†

Glaciation and Surface Deposits.

Such details as appear to be of interest respecting glaciation, and the superficial deposits, are given in the subsequent descriptive portion of this report. The general bearings of these are here merely summarized in the briefest possible manner.‡

Previous observations in British Columbia.

Previous observations in British Columbia§ have shown that at one stage in the Glacial period—that of the maximum glaciation—a great confluent ice-mass has occupied the region which may be named the

---

* See Canadian Record of Science, vol. II., No. 6, April, 1887.

† See paper by Prof. A. B. Meyer, Jahresbericht des Vereins für Erdkunde zu Dresden, 1884.

‡ The substance of this summary has been published in advance in the Geological Magazine. Decade III., vol. V., p. 347 (Aug., 1888).

§ Quart. Journ. Geol. Soc., vol. XXXI. p. 89. vol. XXXIV. p. 272. Canadian Naturalist. vol. VIII.

Interior Plateau, between the Coast Ranges and the Gold and Rocky Mountain ranges. From the 55th to the 49th parallel, this great glacier has left traces of its general southward or south-eastward movement, which are distinct from those of subsequent local glaciers. The southern extensions or terminations of this confluent glacier, in Washington and Idaho Territories, have quite recently been examined by Mr. Bailley Willis and Prof. T. C. Chamberlin of the U. S. Geological Survey, * and their observations tend to confirm the views above outlined, which had previously been stated by the writer. There is, further, evidence to show that this inland-ice flowed also, by transverse valleys and gaps, across the Coast Ranges, and that the fiords of the coast were thus deeply filled with glacier-ice, which, supplemented by that originating on the Coast Ranges themselves, buried the entire great valley which separates Vancouver Island from the mainland, and discharged seaward round both ends of the island. Further north, the glacier extending from the mainland coast touched the northern shores of the Queen Charlotte Islands. The observed facts on which these general statements are based have been fully detailed in the publications already referred to, and it is not here necessary to review former work in the region, further than to enumerate the main features developed by it, and to connect these with the observations made during the summer of 1887, in the more northern region described in the present report.

Glaciation of the coast.

The littoral of the south-eastern part or "coast strip" of Alaska, presents features identical with those of the previously examined coast of British Columbia, at least as far north as lat. 59°, beyond which I have not seen it. The coast archipelago has evidently been involved in the border of a confluent glacier which spread from the mainland and was subject to minor variations in direction of flow dependent on surface irregularities, in the manner described in my report on the northern part of Vancouver Island. † No conclusive evidence was here found, however, in the valley of the Stikine River or in the pass leading inland from the head of Lynn Canal, to show that the inland-ice moved seaward across the Coast Ranges, though analogy with the coast to the south favours the belief that it may have done so. The front of the glacier must have passed the outer border of the archipelago, as at Stika, well-marked glaciation is found pointing toward the open Pacific ‡ (average direction about S. 81° W. astr.).

---

* Bulletin U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 40, 1887.

† Annual Report Geol. Surv. Canada, 1885, p. 100 B.

‡ Mr. G. F. Wright has already given similar general statements with regard to this part of the Coast of Alaska, American Naturalist, March, 1887.

Glaciation of the interior region.

It is, however, in the interior region, explored and examined by us in 1887, between the Coast Ranges and the Rocky Mountains proper, and extending northward to lat. 63°, that the most interesting facts have come to light respecting the direction of movement of the Cordilleran glacier. Here, in the valleys of the Upper Pelly and Lewes, traces were found of the movement of heavy glacier-ice in a northerly direction. Rock-surfaces thus glaciated were observed down the Pelly to the point at which it crosses the 136th meridian and on the Lewes as far north as lat. 61° 40′, the main direction in the first-named valley being north-west, in the second north-north-west. The points referred to are not, however, spoken of as limiting ones, for rock exposures suitable for the preservation of glaciation are rather infrequent on the lower portions of both rivers, and more extended examination may result in carrying evidence of the same kind further toward the less elevated plains of the Lower Yukon, as elsewhere detailed. Neither the Pelly valley nor that of the Lewes is hemmed in by high mountainous country except toward the sources, and while local variations in direction are met with, the glaciation is not susceptible of explanation by merely local agents, but implies the passage of a confluent or more or less connected glacier over the region.

On Lake Labarge, in the Lewes valley, both the sides and summits of rocky hills 300 feet above the water were found to be heavily glaciated, the direction on the summit being that of the main (north-north-west) orographic valleys, while that at lower levels in the same vicinity followed more nearly the immediate valley of the river, which here turns locally to the east of north.

Glaciation was also noted in several places in the more mountainous country to the south of the Yukon basin, in the Dease and Liard valleys, but the direction of movement of the ice could not be determined satisfactorily, and the influence of local action is there less certainly eliminated.

Deposits of the glacial period.

While the greater part of the area traversed is more or less completely mantled with glacial deposits, it will be observed, in referring to subsequent pages, that true boulder-clay was found in certain parts only of the southern and more mountainous portion of the region, while it spreads over almost the entire length of the Upper Pelly and Lewes valleys, though not found exposed quite to their confluence. The boulder-clay generally passes upward into, and is covered by, important silty beds, analogous to the silts of the Nechacco basin, further south in British Columbia, and to those of the Peace River country to the east of the Rocky Mountains. It may be stated also that the country is generally terraced to a height of 4000 feet or more, while on an isolated mountain-top near the height-of-land between the Liard and the Pelly rivers (Pacific-Arctic watershed) rolled gravel of varied origin was found at a height of 4300 feet, a height exceeding that of the actual watershed by over 1000 feet.

Mammoth remains.

No remains of mastodon or mammoth were observed in the country traversed by us, but according to Campbell such remains occur not far from the site of Fort Selkirk, and they are known to be moderately abundant at points further down the river. Sir J. Richardson speaks of a tibia of *Elephas primigenius* sent to England by Roderic (Robert) Campbell from this region.*

General facts established.

Reverting to the statements made as to the direction of the general glaciation, the examination of this northern region may now be considered to have established that the main gathering-ground or *névé* of what I have called the great Cordilleran glacier or confluent glacier-mass of the West Coast, was included between the 55th and 59th parallels of latitude, a region which, so far as explored, has proved to be of an exceptionally mountainous character. It would further appear that this great glacier extended, between the Coast Ranges and the Rocky Mountains, south-eastward nearly to lat. 48°, and north-westward to lat. 63°, or beyond, while sending also smaller streams to the Pacific Coast.

Other instances of northward glaciation.

In connection with the northerly direction of ice-flow here ascertained, it is interesting to recall the observations which I have collected in a recently published report of the Geological Survey, relating to the northern portion of the continent east of the Mackenzie River.† It is there stated that for the Arctic coast of the continent, and the islands of the archipelago off it, there is a considerable volume of evidence to show that the main direction of movement of erratics was *northward*. The most striking facts are those derived from Prof. S. Haughton's Appendix to M'Clintock's Voyage, where the occurrence is described of boulders and pebbles from North Somerset, at localities 100 and 135 miles north-eastward and north-westward from their supposed points of origin. Prof. Haughton also states that the east side of King William's Land is strewn with boulders of gneiss like that of Montreal Island, to the southward, and points out the general northward ice-movement thus indicated, referring the carriage of the boulders to floating-ice of the glacial period.

The copper said to be picked up in large masses by the Eskimo, near Princess Royal Island, in Prince of Wales Strait, as well as on Prince of

---

* Am. Journ. Sci. and Arts, vol. XIX., 1855, p. 132.

† Notes to accompany a Geological Map of the Northern Portion of the Dominion of Canada East of the Rocky Mountains, p. 57 R., Annual Report Geol. Surv. Can., 1886.

Wales Island, * has likewise, in all probability been derived from the copper-bearing rocks of the Coppermine River region to the south, as this metal can scarcely be supposed to occur in place in the region of horizontal limestone where it is found.

Dr. A. Armstrong, surgeon and naturalist to the *Investigator*, notes the occurrence of granite and other crystalline rocks not only on the south shore of Baring Land, but also on the hills at some distance from the shore. These, from what is known of the region, must be supposed to have come from the continental land to the southward.

Dr. Bessels, again, remarks on the abundance of boulders on the shore of Smith's Sound in lat. 81° 30′, which are manifestly derived from known localities on the Greenland coast much further southward, and adds: "Drawing a conclusion from such observations, it becomes evident that the main line of the drift, indicating the direction of its motion, runs from south to north." †

It may further be mentioned that Dr. R. Bell, has found evidence of a northward or north-eastward movement of glacier ice in the northern part of Hudson Bay, with distinct indications of eastward glaciation in Hudson Strait. ‡ For the northern part of the great Mackenzie valley we are as yet without any definite published information, but Sir J. Richardson notes that Laurentian boulders are scattered westward over the nearly horizontal limestones of the district.

Two great glacier-masses.

Taken in conjunction with the facts for the more southern portion of the continent, already pretty well known, the observations here outlined would appear to indicate a general movement of ice outward, in all directions, from the great Laurentian axis or plateau which extends from Labrador round the southern extremity of Hudson Bay to the Arctic Sea; while a second, smaller, though still very important region of dispersion—the Cordilleran glacier-mass—occupied the Rocky Mountain region on the west, with the northern and southern limits above approximately given, and a length, in a north-west and south-east direction, of at least 1200 miles.

It is inexpedient at the present moment to enter into any detailed discussion of the glaciation of the extreme north-west, as Mr. McConnell's observations, made in the prosecution of his portion of the work of the expedition, are likely to add much to our store of facts bearing on the subject.

---

* De Rance, in Nature, vol. XI., p. 492.

† Nature, vol. IX.

‡ Annual Report Geol. Surv. Canada, 1885, p. 14 DD. and Report of Progress, 1882-84, p. 36 DD.

Economic importance of facts elicited

It may be added, that while the study of the phenomena of the glacial period is one not without its bearings on economic problems even in the eastern part of the continent, it has, in British Columbia and the Yukon district, a direct value in its connection with the distribution of the placer gold deposits and on the existence and position of the buried channels of rivers and streams, in which some of the richest of those deposits are often found to occur. Thus the greater part of the "fine" gold found along the river-bars and banks of the larger streams in the Yukon district, is doubtless proximately derived from the gravels and other superficial deposits in which these streams have re-excavated their beds since the period of glaciation. By the general dispersion and intermixture of these materials, composed of the *débris* of the older rock formations, it is even possible that the existence of a few comparatively limited areas of great richness might account for the widespread auriferous character of the alluviums of the Upper Yukon basin. In the former direction of ice-movement, and consequently that of its transport of material, we obtain an important clue as to the source of the finer gold which may now be found in any particular area. This subject is too wide in its ramifications to be followed out here, but it is one to which considerable attention has been devoted, and to which I hope to return at an early date in greater detail.

Volcanic Ash Deposit.

Extent of the deposit.

A circumstance of some interest in connection with the later superficial deposits of that part of the Upper Yukon basin drained by the Lewes and Pelly rivers, is the occurrence of a widespread layer of volcanic ash or pumiceous sand. The existence of a peculiar white line or band in the upper parts of scarped banks along the river, was first remarked not many miles below the point at which we reached and embarked on the Pelly. As its character was not at first understood, I omitted to note the precise point at which it was first seen but am of opinion that it probably extends to the east of the place where we reached the river. After recognizing its character and importance, however, it was looked for and noticed almost continuously along the whole course of the Pelly, as far down as the mouth of the Macmillan, beyond which, to the site of Fort Selkirk at the mouth of the Lewes it was not distinctly recognized, but according to Mr. McConnell (1888) it extends down the river for about ten miles below Fort Selkirk. It is likewise seen along nearly the whole course of the

Lewes, being last noted at the Narrows between Lake Nares and Bennett Lake, known as Caribou Crossing.*

Origin of the deposit.

This ash deposit appears to be entirely due to a single period of eruption. It is homogeneous in character wherever seen, forming a single layer not divided by intercalations of other material, and has been spread everywhere over the entire area characterized by it. It is much more recent in date than the white silt deposits, which are the last of those properly referable to the glacial series, having been deposited after the river-valleys were excavated in the glacial materials, and at a time when the rivers had cut down nearly or quite to their present levels, a fact rendered evident by the circumstance that it overlies the deposits of river and valley-gravels and sands in all cases, except in those of some low river-flats, where these deposits sometimes cover it to a depth of several feet. In most places it is overlain merely by the surface soil with a depth of six inches to two feet, and in a few instances it was noted as constituting the actual surface of terraces of moderate height, the present forest being rooted in it.

Mode of deposition and thickness.

The ash appears to have fallen tranquilly, much in the manner of snow deposited from a calm atmosphere. The examination of scarped banks along the two rivers showed it to occur near the surface of terraces about 200 feet in height, as well as on lower terraces and river-flats down to within about ten feet of the actual river-level in August and September. It was also detected in some places on the sloping fronts of terraces. The thickness of the layer was no doubt originally pretty uniform, and it still retains this uniformity where it rests upon wide flat terraces. Its average normal thickness for the Pelly, as a whole, was estimated at about five inches, but this is somewhat exceeded along the part of the river immediately above the Macmillan. On the Lewes, below Rink Rapid, its normal thickness is about a foot, but above this point it becomes much less and where last seen, at Caribou Crossing, is not over half an inch thick, and only to be recognized when carefully looked for.

Local accumulation.

In addition to these differences in normal thickness, however, and much more striking than them, is an irregularity due to local circumstances. Thus in hollows, and particularly when these occur at the foot of steep slopes, the material has evidently been washed together by rains occurring shortly after its deposit, and sometimes attains a thickness of as much as three feet. In correspondence with this it has been completely removed from some sloping or exposed surfaces. The same local circumstances explain the varying depth in different localities of the soil or ordinary sand which overlies the ash deposit.

---

*I found subsequently that Schwatka had observed this peculiar layer along the Lewes and correctly characterized it as a volcanic ash. Along Alaska's Great River, p. 196.

Where the ash deposit rests undisturbed upon the original surface, this appears very generally to be a yellowish or reddish quartzose sand. There are, in some cases, remains of burnt trees at the base of the layer, and traces of similar forest fires are found as well in the sand or soil overlying it.

Source of the ash deposit.

So far as the observations I was able to make go, the volcanic ash is thicker on the lower part of the Lewes than elsewhere, and the thickest part of the deposit on the Pelly lies nearly due east of the portion of the Lewes just referred to. The greater mass of the deposit in that direction, seems to show that it was derived from the westward, and a line drawn across the portions of the Pelly and Lewes above defined, lies between the 62nd and 63rd parallels of latitude, with a nearly east-and west bearing, so that if produced to the westward it would pass, at a distance of about 200 miles, through the mountain region near the Copper River, of Alaska, which includes Mount Wrangell. Mount Wrangell is the nearest known volcano,* and this or one of the neighbouring mountains in the same group, may not improbably have been the source of the material which has been so widely spread over the Upper Yukon basin. It should be stated, however, that the Indians report the existence of a burning mountain near the head-waters of the White River, and that it is uncertain whether this report refers to Mount Wrangell or to some still unknown mountain which may be even nearer to the district here described.

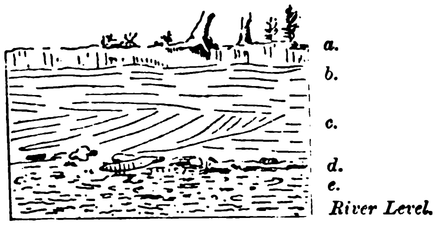


FIG. 1. RELATIONS OF ASH-BED ON LEWES RIVER.

a. Soil. *b.* Ash-bed. *c.* Stratified sands and gravels. *d.* Buried drift-wood. *e.* Stratified gravels.

Date of the eruption.

Respecting the date of the eruption to which the ash-bed is due, very little can be said with certainty. As already noted, the rivers have not certainly cut their beds perceptibly deeper since the deposit occurred on their flood-flats, so that the period to which it belongs cannot be an exceedingly remote one. It was further observed in one place, on the Lewes, to rest upon stratified sands a few feet thick, which in turn overlie a mass of drift logs still quite sound and undecayed. This fact, with the general appearance and mode of occurrence of the deposit, leads me to believe, that while the eruption must have happened at least several hundreds of years ago, it can scarcely be supposed to have taken place more than a thousand years before the present time. Dall, in his work on Alaska, gives a list of volcanic eruptions (derived from Grewingk which have occurred in the Aleutian Islands and along the western part of the Alaskan Coast from the year 1690. † While it is quite improbable that any of these was connected with the formation here described, it is interesting to note that great quantities of ash were observed to fall on several occasions, notably in 1825, when the whole peninsula of Alaska was covered with black ashes.

---

* See Lieut. H. T. Allen's Reconnaissance in Alaska, Washington Government, 1887.

Volume of ash ejected.

That the eruption of which the occurrence is marked by the ash-bed of the Lewes and Pelly, was on a great scale, is sufficiently evident from the extent of the deposit; which must necessarily be very much greater than the area to which the present observations refer. By drawing a line such as to include the outer limits of the observed extent of the ash, a roughly triangular area of about 25,000 square miles is outlined, and if we assume the average depth of the layer over this area alone to be three inches, the mass represented would be equivalent to a prism one mile square, with a height of 6240 feet or (making allowance for interspaces in the comminuted material) equal to nearly a cubic mile of rock.

Lithological character.

It has not been considered necessary to make a complete examination of the character of this ash. In appearance it is a fine, white, sandy material, with a harsh feeling when rubbed between the fingers. Microscopically it is found to consist chiefly of volcanic glass, part being merely frothy and pumiceous, but of which the greater portion has been drawn out into elongated shreds, frequently resembling the substance known as "Pele's hair," in which the inclosed vesicles become more or less completely tubular. In addition to this glass, fragments and small perfect examples of sanadine felspar crystals occur together with portions of minute crystals of hornblende and probably of other minerals.

---

† Alaska and its Resources, 1870, p. 466.

THE STIKINE RIVER.

General Features.

River cuts across the Coast Ranges.

Since the year 1873, when the placer gold mines of Cassiar were first developed, the Stikine River has become a somewhat important avenue of communication from the coast to the interior of the northern part of British Columbia. Like the Fraser, the Skeena, the Nass and several other smaller streams, it rises to the east of the broad belt of mountains which constitutes the Coast Ranges, and cuts completely through this belt with a nearly uniform gradient. In size and general character the Stikine closely resembles the Skeena, which reaches the coast 200 miles further south. It is navigable for stern-wheel steamers of light draught and good power, to Glenora, 126 miles from Rothsay Point, at its mouth, and under favourable circumstances to Telegraph Creek, twelve miles farther. Above Telegraph Creek is the "Great Cañon" which extends for many miles and is quite impassable either for steamers or boats, though traversed by miners in winter on the ice. The head-waters of the Stikine are unknown, but lie for the most part to the south of the 58th parallel of north latitude, in a country said to be very mountainous, interlocking there with northern branches of the Nass and western feeders of the Black or Turnagain River, a tributary of the Laird. From Telegraph Creek, the head of navigation, a pack-trail sixty-two miles and a half in length, constructed by the British Columbian Government, follows the valley of the Stikine, generally at no great distance from the river, and eventually crosses from the Tanzilla or Third North Fork to the head of Dease Lake, which may be regarded as the centre of the Cassiar mining district. This route has long been known to the Indians, the Stikine having been to them from time immemorial an important avenue of trade, by which, as by the Skeena, the coast tribes penetrated a considerable distance inland.

Route to the interior.

Information obtained.

My personal acquaintance with the Stikine, as far as Telegraph Creek, was such only as could be made from the deck of the little steamer in which we ascended the river to that point, and merely enabled me to note the main features of the valley. This was supplemented, however, by the observations of Mr. McConnell, who remained behind for the purpose of making a micrometer survey of the river from the furthest point reached by Mr. Hunter's survey of 1877 to Telegraph Creek. Mr. McConnell's notes and map with specimens collected by him have been consulted in the following sketch of the river, and are drawn upon particularly in respect to its geological features.

Map of the river.

As the result of Mr. McConnell's survey, taken in conjunction with that of Mr. Hunter, we are now for the first time in possession of a correct map of the river to the head of navigation. The best general map of the river and route to Dease Lake previously in existence, was a sketch made by Mr. G. B. Wright and published in the report of the Minister of Mines of British Columbia in 1875. This map also includes Dease Lake and part of the Dease River, and I may take this opportunity of stating that much credit is due to Mr. Wright for its general accuracy, taking into consideration the circumstances under which it was made.

Trend of the main valley.

The general trend of the Stikine valley for twenty miles from the sea, is east-and-west, corresponding in direction to Bradfield Canal, which penetrates the coast thirty miles to the south, and also to part of the northern portion of Behm Canal and Burroughs' Bay, still further south. At this distance from the coast the river bends through a quadrant of arc, and assumes a nearly due north direction, which it maintains for about sixty-six miles, beyond which the valley is continued in a nearly direct north-eastward course to the vicinity of Dease Lake, but in its upper portion is occupied, not by the main river, but by the Tanzilla or Third North Fork, the main river entering this continuous valley from the southward.

The Coast Mountains.

The particular range of the Coast Mountains, which locally assumes a culminating or axial character on the Stikine, is that which is traversed by the river-valley near the great bend above alluded to. As seen from the sea, at some distance off shore, it is notably higher and rougher to the north of the river-valley than to the south of it, and is surmounted by sharp, jagged, rocky pinnacles in some places. The highest summits in this range here probably average about 8000 feet. It carries much snow throughout the year, and in it are the sources of the principal glaciers which debouch along the north-and-south part of the river above the great bend. The inland border of the Coast Mountains may be said, on the Stikine, to be near Glenora, giving a transverse width, from the coast, for this rugged belt of country, of nearly eighty miles.

Current of the river.

The current of the navigable portion of the Stikine is swift throughout, but there are no rapids properly so-called, though the Little Cañon (fifty-three miles above the great bend) forms a serious impediment to navigation when the river is at its highest stage in June or July, in consequence of the great velocity of the current in this narrow and rocky though deep gorge. Near the mouth of the river the current scarcely surpasses two miles an hour, but it increases as the river is ascended, till it attains a rate of six to seven miles in many places between the great bend and Telegraph Creek, the swifter water being chiefly met with above the Little Cañon. The average rate of flow of the navigable portion of the river must be about five miles an hour, The width of the Stikine immediately opposite Telegraph Creek was found on May 29th to be 480 feet only, but it is here deep, and had a velocity of 6·08 miles per hour, as determined from several observations. A few days later it was rising fast, and the velocity was considerably greater.

Navigation.

Stern-wheel steamers for the navigation of the river should have good engine-power, and should draw not more than four feet of water when loaded.

The height of the river above sea-level at Telegraph Creek, as deduced from simultaneous barometric observations at the mouth and at this place, is 540 feet, giving an average fall of over four feet to the mile by the course of the stream. The actual fall on the upper part of this length of the river must, however, considerably exceed this figure. while that of the lower portion is inconsiderable. Under ordinary circumstances the ascent of the river to Telegraph Creek, with a suitable steamer, occupies about three days, and it is generally necessary to carry a line ashcre at a few places. The extensive flats near the mouth of the river render it necessary to enter it about high-tide. Mr. Hunter ascertained that the channel across these flats has from one to two feet only of water at low ebb. A considerable proportion of the traffic is carried on by Indians with canoes, and the Stikine Indians are very expert in all the necessary operations of tracking and poling in swift water.

Notes on the dates of opening and closing of the river will be found on a later page.

Lower part of river at one time an inlet.

The entrance to the Stikine from the sea is not distinguishable in its main orographic features from that of many of the salt-water inlets by which this part of the West Coast is dissected. The lower portion of this river-valley may, in fact, be regarded, like that of the corresponding part of the Skeena, as an inlet which has become filled with detritus in consequence of the great size and sediment-carrying capacity of the river which has emptied into it. Unlike the Skeena, however, the *débris* brought down has in this case been projected seaward so as to completely block the wide channel between the mainland coast and Mitkoff Island with shallow tide-flats and bars, above which several smaller, high, rocky islands project. The mountains immediately bordering the valley of the Stikine at its seaward entrance are from 2000 to 3000 feet in height, and rise abruptly from the wide alluvial flats, through which the river there winds, often without even touching the lower spurs of the hills.

Character of valley to Little Cañon.

The flats are generally covered with fine groves of cottonwood, mingled with spruce and other trees, and are often cut through by sloughs and channels, which become so numerous in some places as to render it difficult to decide which is entitled to rank as the main stream. The valley-bottom maintains an average width of from two to three miles as far up as the Little Cañon, which place may be regarded as nearly marking the head of the old salt-water inlet which has been silted up by the river. The cañon is about three-fifths of a mile long, and in places not more than fifty yards wide. It is bordered by massive granite cliffs, 200 to 300 feet in height, above which, on the west side, rugged mountain slopes rise. On the east, are low rocky hills representing part of a former spur of the mountain, through which the cañon has been cut. A tract of low land separates these hills from the eastern side of the main valley, and it is difficult to explain under what circumstances the river has taken its present course.

Valley above Little Cañon.

For some distance above the Little Cañon the Stikine valley appears to cut very obliquely through a series of somewhat irregularly parallel ranges. Eight miles further up is the "Kloochman Cañon," which to some extent repeats the features of the last, but it is nearly 300 feet in width and offers no impediment to navigation. At four miles above the "Kloochman Cañon" is the so-called "Grand Rapid," which, in consequence of recent changes in the river, is now by no means formidable, though the water is still particularly swift and the river wide and shallow. Here the valley begins very markedly to open out, the mountains retiring further from the river and decreasing in altitude, while irregular basaltic hills, of no great height, appear between the river and the bases of the mountains. This, taken in conjunction with the dry climate which characterizes the country to the east of the mountains, and the fact that most of the slopes have been bared of timber by fire, gives an entirely different aspect to the landscape.

Iskoot River.

The Stikine is joined by some important tributaries in the part of its course above described, though none of these have yet been examined in detail. The Iskoot or Skoot, which flows in from the eastward about thirty-five miles from the mouth, or just within the locally culminating range of the Coast Mountains, is known to be navigable for some distance by canoes, and one branch is said to head not far from the extremity of Portland Canal, to the southward. By following this river to its head and there making a portage, the Indians are reported to be able to reach the Nass River without difficulty. The Iskoot has been prospected by a few miners, but apparently without any notable result, though the Indians report the occurrence of coal. The northern branch of the Iskoot, to the east of the Coast Mountains, was traversed in 1867 by P. J. Leech, of the Western Union Telegraph Exploration Survey, who crossed from it to the head of the First South Fork of the Stikine. The valley is there reported to be from 2500 to 3700 feet above sea-level, generally timbered, but with some open, grassy slopes.

Scud River.

About seven miles below the Little Cañon, the valley of the Scud River opens to the east, but the exact position of the mouth of the stream has not been fixed on the map. Some gold has been found by prospectors on this stream, but no workable placer deposits. It is said to head in a low country behind the Coast Mountains, and if this be correct, must nearly inosculate with branches of the Iskoot and First South Fork of the Stikine.

Clearwater River.

Six miles above "Kloochman Cañon," the Clearwater River enters the Stikine on the west side, by several mouths. This is a stream of considerable size, and is navigable for canoes for some distance. It is said to head near the sources of one branch of the Taku River, and is noted by the Indians on account of the great number of salmon which ascend it.

First South Fork.

The First South Fork joins the Stikine about a mile and a-half below Telegraph Creek. It is a large turbid stream, and for a number of miles from the main river, flows in a rough narrow gorge, between high hills and mountains. Further up, according to the Telegraph Exploration sketch, it is bordered by level, partly timbered terraces or "benches." The summit between its head-waters and those of the Iskoot, on the route followed by Mr. Leech, is given on his authority at 5000 feet. Salmon do not ascend this stream.

Telegraph Creek and Glenora.

Telegraph Creek is an inconsiderable stream, which falls rapidly to the river through a narrow rocky cleft in the bordering hills of the right or north-west bank of the Stikine. Its name is due to the fact that here the Western Union Telegraph line was intended to cross the Stikine. The little town of Telegraph Creek occupies the narrow delta of the stream and the lower terraces bordering it on both sides, its site being identical with that of "Fort Mumford" of the older maps. Glenora, twelve miles below Telegraph Creek and on the same side of the Stikine, consists of a single row of houses built along the edge of the river at the foot of a steep bank. Both places were at one time busy little towns, but are at present very much reduced in importance, though I believe it will probably not be long before further mining developments in the Cassiar district will lead to the renewal of their activity.

Glaciers.

Previous notes on the glaciers.

The glaciers constitute one of the most remarkable features of this part of the Stikine valley. There are a number of these on both sides of the river, in its lower part; but four only of special importance, all of which are situated to the west of the river, and all but the first on the eastern slopes of the most massive central ranges of the mountainous region. The only detailed previous notice of these glaciers is that given in a report by W. P. Blake.* Mr. Blake's account of the glaciers is transcribed in the Fifth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, where it was placed under the somewhat misleading title of Glaciers of "Alaska." Two of the glaciers are illustrated in the last-mentioned volume by reproductions of photographs taken under the direction of Dr. I. W. Powell, Superintendent of Indian Affairs in British Columbia. That named the "Orlebar Glacier" represents part of the front of the Great Glacier of the miners and of Mr. Blake's map. The "Bernard Glacier" I am unable to identify with any certainty, but the illustrations evidently represent part of either the Flood or Dirt Glacier.

Mr. John Muir, who spent some time on the Stikine in 1879, gives an interesting popular description of its glaciers in a letter dated from Sitka in December of that year, and published in the San Francisco Bulletin. Mr. Muir informs me that no more systematic account of his observations in this region has yet been made public. The glaciers are also noticed at some length in an account of a trip on the Stikine by Mr. W. H. Bell, in Scribner's Monthly, 1879, Vol. XVII. The accompanying illustrations, though striking and artistic, have been idealized so far as to be scarcely recognizable.

Little Glacier.

The glacier known as the First or Little Glacier by the miners (named the Popoff Glacier by Blake) fills a high valley on the north side of the river, about ten miles from its mouth. As seen from a distance it offers no features of particular interest, resembling many other minor glaciers of the Coast Mountains.

Great Glacier.

The next and most important glacier is that universally known on the river as the Great Glacier, and so named also by Mr. Blake, who gives an excellent description of its main features. The high snow-fields from which this glacier must take its rise are not seen from the river, the glacier entering the wide valley of the Stikine nearly at right angles, through a break in the mountains two to three miles distant from the river bank. Before entering the Stikine valley, the glacier has a width estimated at from one-half to three-quarters of a mile, but upon freeing itself from the bordering mountains immediately expands in a fan-like manner, its actual front upon the river being from three to three and a-half miles in width. The slope of the surface of the glacier where it issues from the mountains was estimated—as seen at right angles—at above five degrees. Beyond this point it flattens out, and portions of the surface become extremely rugged, breaking off near the front in series of descending steps, as described by Mr. Blake. When seen by us, on the 20th of May, much of the surface was still covered by the new snow of the preceding winter, but notwithstanding this, a great quantity of rocky *débris* was visible, giving a gray tint to portions of the ice. The front of the glacier appears to be quite close to the edge of the river, but is actually about a third of a mile distant at the nearest points. This interval is occupied by moraines and marshy pools, the outer tier of moraines, or that nearest to the river, forming wooded hills about one hundred and fifty feet high. The newer moraines were partly covered and overridden by the front of the decaying ice. Large streams issue from beneath the ice, the position of outflow frequently changing from year to year.

---

*Geographical Notes upon Russian America and the Stikeen River. W. P. Blake, Washington, Government. 1868.

Next to its size, the most remarkable feature about this glacier is the regularity of the fan-like form in which it terminates. It resembles in this respect the Davidson Glacier on Lynn Canal.

Recession of the glacier.

The miners state that, during the few years which they have known the Stikine, the Great Glacier has steadily and notably receded, though the total amount of such recession can evidently not have been more than the distance from the wooded bordering-moraine to the present ice-front. The Indians relate as a tradition, that at a former period the glacier stretched completely across the valley, the Stikine passing beneath the ice through a tunnel-like opening. It is, however, impossible to determine whether this is a remembered fact or a fancied inference. Curiously enough, a copious hot spring is situated immediately opposite the glacier on the east side of the Stikine valley.

Dirt Glacier.

Ten miles above the Great Glacier, and also on the west side of the valley, is the Dirt Glacier, so named by the miners because of the great quantity of rocky *débris* with which its surface is covered.* This is much smaller than the last, having a width estimated at a quarter of a mile but possibly greater than this. Like the Great Glacier, it comes quite down on the river-flats.

---

* Also so named on sketch map in Report on Customs District, Public Service and Resources of Alaska Territory, by W. G. Morris, 1879.

The last important glacier, sixteen miles further up the river, is the Flood Glacier. This also comes down to the level of the river-flats, but does not closely approach the river. From the valley of this glacier a great rush of water occurs almost every year towards the end of the summer. This, no doubt, arises from the blocking by the glacier of the mouth of some lateral valley in which a lake is formed and from time to time breaks through the glacier dam. The quantity of water thus liberated is so great as to raise the river from a low stage to half-flood level for a short time. There is a large quantity of *débris* also on this glacier, though less than on the last.

Flood Glacier.

Geological Notes on the Stikine.

The only information as to the geology of the Stikine, up to the present time, has been that embodied in notes in Mr. Blake's report, already referred to,* and these include the lower portion of the river alone, as his furthest point was a few miles above the Little Cañon. The result of Mr. Blake's examination are by himself summed up in the following terms :—"The mountains of the Stikine valley, from the Little Cañon down to near the coast, are formed of syenite and granite, with some metamorphic beds at intervals. The walls of the Little Cañon are granite. At the mouth of the river, and below the Indian villages, the rocks are quite different, being formed of the great sandstone and shale formation already described. The direction of uplift of these strata is about N. 80° W. magnetic. This formation is some thousands of feet thick, and resembles the rocks of San Francisco, but is more changed by metamorphic action. They are probably of the secondary period. It appears to pass into mica-slate just above the site of an old stockade or fort of the Hudson's Bay Company, where I found a locality of garnets like those of Monroe, in Connecticut."†

Mr. Blake's observations.

The rocks seen along the west shore of Wrangell Island, in the vicinity of the town and harbour, are chiefly black, flaggy argillites, remarkably uniform and regular in their bedding and with a westward dip. They are considerably indurated and contain small staurolite crystals in some layers, while on the surface of others crystals of mica have been developed. Similar rocks are found on other parts of the coast, both to the north and south, and from a lithological point of view, they much resemble the Triassic argillites of the Queen Charlotte Islands, though no fossils were found at this place. The ridge behind

Rocks of Wrangell Island.

---

* Mr. Blake's notes on the geology of the river are also given in Petermanns Mitteilungen, vol. X, 1864.

† This does not appear to be the locality near Rothsay Point, subsequently mentioned.

the town of Wrangell is chiefly composed of rather fine-grained gray granite, which is probably intrusive and may have been the cause of the incipient crystallization observed in the argillites. The north point of the island is formed of similar granite, probably a continuation of the same mass.

Rocks at mouth of river.

On crossing to the mainland, to the eastward, mica-schists and granites are met with, and beyond Rothsay Point (which may be regarded as the entrance to the Stikine River) granitic rocks only were seen for some miles. Near Rothsay Point, at a short distance from the shore, is the locality from which are obtained fine claret-coloured garnet crystals, sometimes an inch or more in diameter. The matrix of these, as seen in hand specimens, is dark, highly crystalline mica-schist, but the locality was not visited. The general strike of the rocks west of Rothsay Point is about S. 35° E., with prevailing westward dips.

Garnets.

Rothsay Point to Great Glacier.

From Rothsay Point to the Great Glacier, the mountains bordering the river are chiefly composed of granites and granitoid rocks. These alternate with gneissic and schistose rocks of similar composition, including mica-schists; but massive granites probably form much the greater part of the whole. The granites are usually gray in colour, and contain both hornblende and mica, with white felspars, which are often porphyritic, giving the rock a spotted appearance. Some varieties become granitoid diorite, while others are highly quartzose, and contain little or no hornblende. The series as a whole closely resembles that cut across by the Fraser River in its lower course, and generally characteristic of the Coast Ranges of British Columbia.*

Rocks brought down by the glacier.

The Great Glacier, rising many miles back in the higher ranges of the mountains, in the material which it has brought down and deposited in its moraine, affords a mode of ascertaining the general composition of the central ranges. The material was found by Mr. McConnell to consist almost entirely of gray granite of medium grain, composed of felspar, quartz and hornblende in nearly equal proportions, but holding also a little mica and occasional crystals of sphene. Diorites and mica-schists occur in smaller quantity, together with coarse pegmatite, which is evidently derived from veins intersecting the granite.

Kloochman Cañon to Grand Rapid.

Similar granitoid rocks, with occasional schistose areas, constitute the whole of the rock-exposures seen along the river to the so-called Grand Rapid, about four miles above "Kloochman Cañon." The mountains bordering the valley also appear to be entirely, or almost entirely, composed of the same materials, though at one place, (nearly opposite the site of the Hudson's Bay Company's old post) the upper portion of a mountain seems to show a massive bedding, recalling that of the Cretaceous quartzites of Tatlayoco Lake, which occur there in a similar position relatively to the Coast Ranges.* No further evidence was, however, met with tending to show that rocks of this age occur here.

---

* Compare Annual Report, Geol. Surv. Can., 1886, p. 11 B.

Stratified rocks at Grand Rapid.

A short distance below the "Grand Rapid," distinctly stratified rocks of dark colour are seen capping some of the mountains and resting upon the granites. These beds have a dip of N. 70° E. < 30°, which brings them down to the level of the river near the rapid. They are there found to consist of hard argillites and grauwacke-quartzites, interbedded with shaly, gray and brownish impure limestones, the whole being considerably disturbed and cut near the granites by coarse gray prophyritic dykes of that rock. The argillites were not observed to hold staurolite, mica, or other crystalline minerals like those of Wrangell, and otherwise differ somewhat in appearance from these, though their relation to the granitic rocks appears to be similar. They are followed in ascending order by a massive gray-blue sub-crystalline limestone of considerable though undetermined thickness, which can be traced in the mountains for some distance on both sides of the valley. These limestones are believed to represent those afterwards noted on the Dease and there referred to the Carboniferous period.

Altered volcanic rocks.

About two miles and a half above "Grand Rapid," near the mouth of the Clearwater, the limestone is followed—apparently still in ascending order—by a series of altered volcanic rocks which are, for the most part, of gray and greenish colours. These are apparently chiefly diabases, but include also porphyrite-like rocks. The rocks are generally rather fine grained, and would require microscopic examination before they can be named in detail.† Though clearly forming a stratified series, evidence of bedding can seldom be detected in the exposures, in consequence of their homogeneous composition and shattered state. They seem to be identical with those forming a part of the Cache Creek group, in the southern interior of British Columbia, and though no fossils were found in the limestones previously mentioned, they, and possibly also the argillites beneath them as well, may be referred with considerable probability to the same Upper Palæozoic age.

---

* Report of Progress, Geol. Surv. Can., 1875-76, p. 253.

† One of these which has been microscopically examined by Mr. F. D. Adams, is described as a diabase-porphyrite (Stikine No. 16.)

Argillites and limestones.

Altered volcanic rocks only, like those above noted, were seen along the river for about twelve miles above the Clearwater, but there is reason to believe that outliers of Tertiary basalt also occur in this part of the valley. At the distance just mentioned above the Clearwater, and about six miles and a-half below Glenora, exposures are found of slaty argillites and dark shaly rocks, containing some impure limestone, all very much broken and disturbed, and associated with altered volcanic materials. Some beds of these shaly limestones prove on microscopical examination to consist chiefly of organic fragments which are not, however, sufficiently distinctive for the reference of the beds.

Triassic fossils.

Dark shaly rocks occur near Glenora which were not specially examined. It is probably from these that some specimens containing Triassic fossils, which were given to me some years ago by Mr. J. W. McKay, were derived. The form represented is a species of *Halobia* probably a finely sculptured variety of *H. Lommeli.*

Tertiary volcanic rocks.

From this point to Telegraph Creek, basaltic and other comparatively modern volcanic rocks become prominent features, the basalts appearing as remnants of horizontal flows, the broken edges of which form scarped cliffs. These rocks are due to a period antecedent to that of the glacial deposits, and are of Tertiary age. Analogy with neighbouring parts of British Columbia indicates that they may be assigned with probability to the Miocene. The basalts have evidently flowed along and partially filled the old river-valley, and unconformably overlie the old altered volcanic rocks previously alluded to, as well as all the other rock series.

About two miles below Glenora, the basaltic rocks were noticed in one place to have filled the old river-bed, conforming in their lower layers to the slopes of its sides, and to have been subsequently cut across obliquely by the present river. Other examples of this character are mentioned on following pages and are of special interest in connection with the occurrence of placer deposits of gold.

Palæozoic and Cretaceous rocks.

Between Glenora and Telegraph Creek, the rocks seen below the basalts include at least two distinct series. The first and oldest of these is represented by a number of occurrences of altered volcanic rocks, like those previously referred to, as well as by considerable exposures (beginning about a mile above Glenora) of gray and blackish, rather cherty quartzites, often nearly on edge. The second consists of slightly indurated conglomerates, sandstones and shales, the conglomerates being often very coarse and containing pebbles both of the older volcanic series and of the granites and granitoid rocks. These lie at comparatively moderate angles of inclination. No fossils were observed in them, but in their lithological character as well as in their position relatively to the Coast Ranges, they resemble rocks of Cretaceous age met with in other parts of British Columbia, both to the south and north of the Stikine, and may be provisionally referred to that period.

Rocks near Telegraph Creek.

In the immediate vicinity of Telegraph Creek, the prevalent rock is a gray-green, speckled, altered volcanic material, which proves to be a fine-grained diabase-tuff.* The high hill immediately opposite Telegraph Creek, on the other side of the river, is composed of similar old volcanic rocks, comprising compact diabase and a massive diabase-agglomerate.

Basalt flows.

About two miles below Telegraph Creek, on the right bank of the river, a portion of the basaltic filling of the old valley forms a range of columnar cliffs about 200 feet above the present water-level. A second similar remnant occurs just above Telegraph Creek, on the same side, and a portion of it extends up Telegraph Creek itself for a mile or more. Basaltic dykes, which may have served as sources of supply of molten material at the time of eruption, are found cutting the older rocks. Though in some cases simulating the appearance of terraces, the basaltic shelves along the sides of the valley are quite distinct from, and of earlier date than these.

Notes on map.

Notes on the various rocks met with will be found on the face of the map accompanying this report. The country to the east of the granitic rocks of the Coast Ranges would require much time and attention before its somewhat complicated geological structure could be properly defined.

Fossiliferous limestone.

In the gorge of Telegraph Creek, a large boulder of gray sub-crystalline limestone was found, closely resembling in character and degree of alteration that seen near the "Grand Rapid," but in this case containing large branching corals and numerous *Fusulinæ*, indicating its Carboniferous age. It is of course impossible to state with certainty whence this boulder was derived, but it may very probably have come from the mountains to the north within the drainage-area of Telegraph Creek.

Terraces.

The portion of the Alaskan coast which I have seen, viz., that to the south of the 59th parallel, shows the same general absence of terrace deposits which has already been noted and commented on in the case of the British Columbian coast. In the vicinity of the mouth of the Stikine, terraces fifteen to twenty feet in height are found, resembling the wooded flats met with further up the river, but as they are here upon tide-water, indicating, doubtless, an elevation of the coast-line to that amount. Further up the river, the first appearance of high-level terraces is at about two miles below the Great Glacier. Those here seen are quite narrow, and were estimated to be 500 and 700 feet, respectively, above the river. The river, for the first time, shows bordering terraces of from thirty to fifty feet in height, about six miles below the Little Cañon, and similar terraces are frequently seen above this point. On the mountain above Glenora a distinct but small terrace was seen from a distance at an estimated height of 1500 feet above the river. At Telegraph Creek the two principal terraces are 90 and 200 feet respectively above the river-level. (See Plate I.)

---

* (Stikine No. 25.)

Gold.

The mode of occurrence of gold on the Stikine, and the placer mining which has occurred along the river, are described on a subsequent page, in connection with facts on gold mining in the Cassiar region generally.

Climate.

Two distinct climatic regions.

The traverse of the Coast Ranges by the Stikine River, from its mouth to Telegraph Creek, affords an excellent illustration of the difference between the coast and inland climates, repeating to a great extent the phenomena met with in making a similar traverse of the same ranges in the southern part of British Columbia. It is here, however, all the more remarkable, as so great a difference between these climates would scarcely be anticipated in this northern latitude. Some records of observations in Appendix VI.* may be referred to for details, but it may be stated here, as showing the broad general contrast, that while the annual precipitation at Wrangell, at the mouth of the Stikine, is over sixty inches†, that in the vicinity of Telegraph Creek on the inland side of the mountains, is so small that it is necessary to irrigate cultivated land.

Nor does this comparison of rainfall sufficiently mark the great diversity which actually obtains between the two climates, the prevalence of clouded skies in the coast region being accompanied by a saturated state of the atmosphere, while precisely opposite conditions are found on the eastern side of the mountain belt, at not more than eighty miles inland from the general line of the coast. The coast climate is, of course, much more temperate than that of the interior, which, even no further off than Telegraph Creek, becomes one of extremes. It is probable that the total annual precipitation is even

---

* [Not reprinted.]

† U. S. Coast Pilot, Alaska, Part I., 1883, p. 271. The precipitation at Wrangell is moreover much less than that at more exposed parts of the Coast, for at Tongass and elsewhere it exceeds 100 inches annually.

Bearing of snowfall on existence of glaciers.

greater in the vicinity of the culminating and central ranges of the Coast Mountains than at Wrangell, and as a large proportion of this occurs as snow, it sufficiently accounts for the existence of the important glaciers and the heavily snow-covered appearance of the mountains till late in the summer. Miners state that the snow accumulates on the river-flats of the lower part of the Stikine, within the mountains, to a depth of from eight to ten feet, while at Telegraph Creek and on the Tahl-tan River it seldom exceeds eighteen inches, and at the latter places horses and mules have been wintering out for a number of years. The great depth of snow retard the advance of spring all along the portion of the river where it occurs, and thus by a cumulative effect conserves the already large quantity of snow for the supply of the glaciers, which are consequently due rather to the extremely heavy snowfall than to the actual latitude of the region.

Observations on depth of snow.

When we left the coast, on the 19th of May, the hills near the sea were generally denuded of snow to a height of several hundred feet, but on entering the river, patches of snow began to appear on the low flats, and a few miles further on these flats and the gravel-bars of the river were almost entirely covered with the old snow, quite down to the water's edge. The quantity of snow was observed to diminish somewhat where the river first turns to the north, but was again greater in the vicinity of the glaciers, and it was not till the Little Cañon was reached that the flats were found free from snow. From this point on, the improvement in the climate became quite marked, and the limit of snow retreated far up the mountain sides.

Climate and vegetation.

In correspondence with the above facts, the vegetation is much farther advanced in spring on the inland side of the Coast Ranges than elsewhere. Thus, at the date above mentioned, the cotton-woods and other deciduous trees at the mouth of the Stikine and along its lower part showed merely a general faint greenish tint as the buds opened. Four days later, in the vicinity of Telegraph Creek, the appearance was almost that of early summer. *Shepherdia Canadensis*, *Amalanchier alnifolia*, *Corydalus aurea* var. *occidentalis*, *Actæa spicata* var. *arguta*, *Prunus Virginiana*, *Arnica cordifolia*, *Viburnum pauciflorum*, *Saxifraga tricuspidata*, *Androsace septentrionalis*, amongst other plants, were in flower, and butterflies and humming-birds were abundant.

The change in species of plants met with in ascending the river is also clearly indicative of that from a very moist to a dry climate, as a reference to the lists in an appendix to this report will show. The devil's club (*Fatsia horrida*) extended only a few miles above "Kloochman Cañon," while *Elæagnus argentea* and other forms characteristic of a dry region was first seen at Telegraph Creek. The state of progress of the season at this place appeared to be nearly, if not quite, equal to that found at a similar date in the vicinity of Ottawa or Montreal.

Local climatic differences.

The local differences of climate are, however, quite important. Thus Glenora, though about twelve miles only from Telegraph Creek, is said to experience much greater cold in winter, and the snow fall is also greater, being estimated at three feet and a-half. Less snow falls on the Tahl-tan than elsewhere, the amount increasing both to the east and west of that place. Strong winds blowing up stream or inland are prevalent in the Stikine valley in summer, but occur in the reverse direction, as a rule, in winter. Further observations on the winter climate of the Stikine are given in Appendix VI.*

Notes at Telegraph Creek.

During the few days spent at Telegraph Creek, in the latter part of May, the wind generally blew up the river and was often strong. The high distant ranges of the Coast Mountains to the west, were usually enveloped in clouds, and heavy showers were there evidently of constant occurrence. The sky at Telegraph Creek was also as a rule largely obscured, but after passing over the Coast Mountains the clouds were more broken and produced merely a few drops of rain now and then, the conditions being similar to those met with in the dry country to the east of the same range in the Fraser valley, much further south.

Cultivation,

Cultivation in the vicinity of Telegraph Creek and Glenora is practically confined to the raising of small quantities of vegetables and of barley and fodder for animals. There is, however, in this vicinity, in the aggregate, a considerable area of land which might be tilled if there were sufficient local demand to warrant it. Excellent potatoes are produced, and though the leaves are occasionally touched by frost, the crop is seldom affected. It has further been ascertained by actual trial on a sufficient scale that not only barley, but wheat and oats will ripen, and that all ordinary garden vegetables can be produced. The record is a remarkable one for the 58th degree of north latitude.

Opening and closing of the river.

According to Mr. J. C. Callbreath, of Telegraph Creek, the Stikine generally opens for navigation between April 20th and May 1st.† Ice or "sludge" usually begins to run in the river about the 1st of November, but has been noted in some years a fortnight earlier. The river generally freezes over before the end of November. Mr. Callbreath states that the first sludge ice coming down from the smaller tributary mountain streams ceases to appear in the Stikine for a time after these are frozen over. As in the case of other rivers rising in the interior, the highest water occurs in the early summer, generally in June. Horses and mules find grazing on the Tahl-tan from April 20th, or May 1st to about December 1st, after which date they require some hay.

---

*[Not reprinted.]

†The season of 1887 was unprecedently late, the first canoe from the upper river reaching the coast only on May 18th.

Discovery and Exploration of the Stikine.

Early notices of the river.

Establishments of the Hudson's Bay Co.

Though the position of the Stikine* is indicated on Vancouver's charts by the open channels of the river, and the shoals about its estuary are mapped, the existence of a large river was not recognized by that navigator, who visited this part of the coast in 1793. According to Mr. W. H. Dall,† the river was first found by the fur traders. "The sloop *Dragon*, Captain Cleveland, visited the Stikine delta in April, 1799,‡ and in the journal of the sloop *Eliza*,§ Captain Rowan, for the same year, we find the locality alluded to as 'Stikin.'" It was, no doubt, visited as well by many of the trading vessels which about this time frequented the coast. In 1834 the Hudson's Bay Company fitted out a vessel named the *Dryad* for the purpose of establishing a post and colony at the mouth of the Stikine, but the Russians being apprised of this circumstance sent two small armed vessels to the spot, and constructed a defensive work which they named Fort Dionysius, on the site of the present town of Wrangell. Finding themselves thus forestalled, the Company retired. This dispute was compromised in 1837, when an arrangement was made by which the Company leased for a term of years all that part of the Russian territory which now constitutes the "coast strip" of Alaska, and the "fort" was handed over to the Company, the British flag being hoisted under a salute of seven guns, in June, 1840. In the same year, the post, which had been re-named Fort Stikine by Sir James Douglas, was attacked by the Indians, and in the following year a still more serious attack was threatened, and averted only by the timely arrival of Sir George Simpson, as recorded in his "Narrative of a Journey Round the World" (II, p. 181). In 1847, the coast Indians (Thlinkit) are stated to have attacked and taken possession of the fort. In the spring of 1840, the Hudson's Bay Company established also a second fort on this part of the coast, which was named Fort Durham. This fort was situated at a place named by the late Sir James Douglas "Locality Inlet," about thirty miles southward from the mouth of Taku River and near the entrance of the inlet of the same name, in sight of Douglas Island. It was abandoned in the spring of 1843, and is sometimes referred to as Taku Fort.

---

* The mode of rendering the native name of this river has been very varied. Mr. Dall enumerates *Stakeen*, *Stahkin*, *Stickeen*, *Stachin* and *Stikine*. (Pacific Coast Pilot, Alaska, Part I, 1883, p. 100; foot-note). The last mentioned has been generally employed by good authorities and is adopted here. Mr. J. W. McKay informs me that the name Stikine is a corruption of the native (Thlinkit) *sta-hane*, meaning "the river," and equivalent to "the great river."

† U. S. Coast Pilot, Alaska, Part I, 1883, p. 110. From this work, and from Bancroft's History of the Pacific Coast, vol. XXXIII, several of the facts mentioned below are also derived.

‡ Cleveland's Voyages, Cambridge, Mass., 1842.

§ MS. in possession of Mr. Dall, but unpublished.

Discovery of upper part of river.

Previous to this time, in 1834, Mr. J. McLeod had, in the interest of the Hudson's Bay Company, reached the banks of the upper part of the Stikine, near Dease Lake, coming overland from the Mackenzie River. Subsequently, Mr. R. Campbell spent the winter of 1838-39 on Dease Lake, but established no fort on the Stikine.

Discovery of gold.

No further events of importance appear to have occurred in connection with the river till, in 1861, two miners, named Choquette ("Buck") and Carpenter, discovered placer gold on its bars. In the following spring, some excitement being created by the announcement of this discovery, several prospecting parties were fitted out in Victoria, and a number of men passed the summer in mining on the river. In 1863, the Russian authorities, hearing of the discovery of gold, despatched the corvette *Rynda* to ascertain whether the mining was being carried on in Russian territory. A boat-party from this vessel, under Lieutenant Pereleshin, ascended the river to a point a few miles above the Little Cañon, occupying May 23rd to June 1st on the expedition. Mr. W. P. Blake accompanied this party, and in addition to the sketch-map published by the Russians, his report on the Stikine, previously alluded to, is based on it.*

Hudson's Bay Company's post.

A Hudson's Bay post was established on the east side of the river in 1862 or 1863 and maintained till about 1874, when it was moved to the vicinity of Glenora, where it remained till 1878, when it was abandoned.

Telegraph exploration.

In 1866, explorations for the line of the Western Union or Collins' Telegraph Company were extended to the Stikine under Major Pope. These were continued in 1867 by Messrs. M. W. Byrnes, Vital Lafleur, W. McNeil and P. J. Leech, and embraced most of the principal tributaries of the river. The results of this work were not separately published, and the whole enterprise of which they were a part was, as is well known, abandoned. The sketch-maps then made were, however, partly embodied in the small map accompanying Mr. W. H.

---

* Geographical Notes upon Russian America and the Stickeen River; Washington, 1868. Also, Am. Journ. Sci. and Arts, vol. XLIV, 1867, p. 96.

Dall's work on Alaska (1870), and with greater completeness in other subsequent maps of the region. The surveys made at this time, while doubtless sufficient for the object in view, and serving to represent the main features of the country traversed in a general way, leave much to be desired in the matter of accuracy.

Subsequent history of the Stikine.

In 1873, Messrs. Thibert and McCullough, travelling westward from the Mackenzie, discovered gold in the Cassiar region and fell in with the miners already engaged in placer work on the Stikine in the autumn of that year. The subsequent history of the river depends on that of the Cassiar mining district, and need not be further followed in detail.

Some years after the acquisition of Alaska by the United States, the Stikine came prominently into public notice for a time in connection with difficulties respecting territorial jurisdiction which occurred in regard to customs and other matters. A full account of these difficulties, together with a report by Mr. J. Hunter of his survey of the lower part of the river, made for the purpose of approximately determining the position of the line of boundary between Alaska and the province of British Columbia, is given in the Canadian Sessional Papers, Vol. XI., No. 11, 1878.*

A description of the Stikine is given in the U.S. Pacific Coast Pilot, previously quoted, as well as an itinerary of the river, but as no correct survey of the Stikine existed at the time (1883), the distance and details are only approximately correct.

Published Maps of the Stikine.

The following reference list of published maps of the Stikine is based on that given by Mr. Dall in Appendix I. to the Coast Pilot of Alaska, 1879 :—

Russian maps.

Russian Hydrographic Office chart No. 1396, Pacific Ocean on the North-west coast of America (published 1848). Also, Russian chart No. 1493-4 (published 1853), Alexander Archipelago. (These two charts, Mr. Dall informs me, show a part of the Stikine in such a way as to prove that it must have been surveyed.)

Plan of the Stikine River from observations by officers of the corvette *Rynda* in 1863. Russian Hydrographical Department, 1867.

Blake's map.

Sketch-map of the Stickeen River from the mouth to the Little Cañon, W. P. Blake, *Op. supra cit.*, 1868.

---

*See also Report by W. G. Morris, elsewhere referred to, p. 43 *et seq.*

Wright's map. Map of Cassiar District in Report of Minister of Mines of British Columbia, 1876. (This has remained the most complete map of the river up to the present time, and is a very praiseworthy sketch.)

Hunter's map. Plan of Stachino (Stikine) River, by J. Hunter. (This, with other subsidiary maps, is contained in the Sessional Papers, Vol. XI., No. 11, 1878. It includes the lower part of the river only, but is from actual survey and on a scale of 8000 feet=1 inch. It shows the provisional boundary line adopted, without prejudice, until the true line shall have been determined.)

Morris's map. Map showing boundary line in Morris's Report on Alaska. U. S. Senate, Ex. Doc. No. 59, 1879.

The river is shown on a small scale, according to the result of surveys here reported on, in a map accompanying a summary of the results of the expedition, in Science, Vol. IX., April 2, 1888.

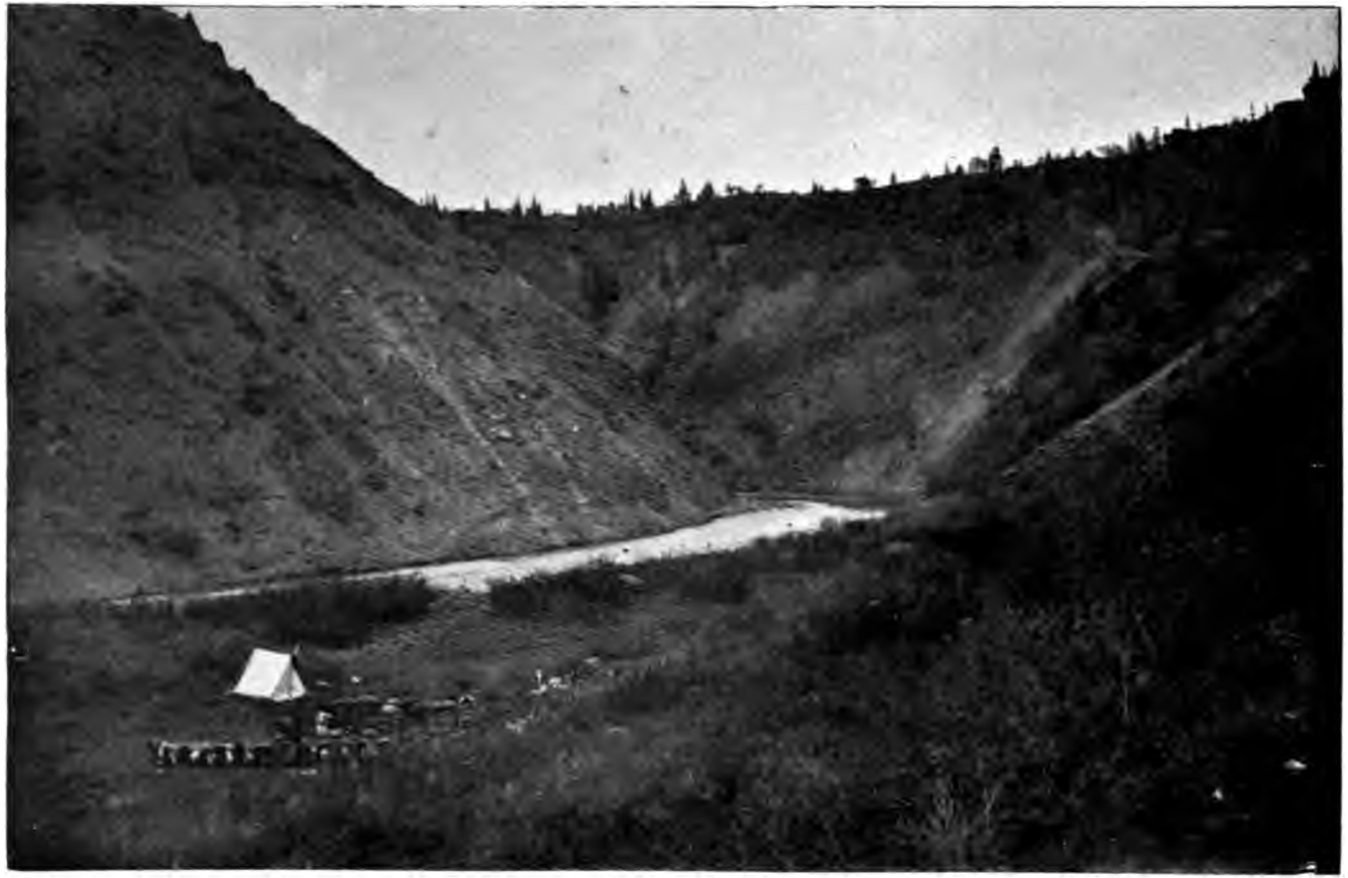
CASSIAR TRAIL *(Telegraph Creek to Dease Lake.)*

Route followed.

The trail from Telegraph Creek to the head of Dease Lake was opened by the Government of British Columbia in 1874. It has since been kept in a fair state of repair, and is a good route for pack animals. It follows the north side of the Stikine and Tanzilla valleys, and is sixty-two miles and a-half in total length. As already mentioned, the same important valley which is occupied by the Stikine below Telegraph Creek, continues in a north-eastward direction to Dease Lake, the main stream of the Stikine entering it from the southward about midway between these two points.

Telegraph Creek to Tahl-tan.

On leaving Telegraph Creek, the trail makes a steep ascent to the level of a broad terrace, and runs along at a considerable height above the river, and often at some distance from it, till it descends again, at eleven miles, to the valley of the Tahl-tan or First North Fork, near its mouth. The main valley of the Stikine is here about four miles in width, and is bordered by high hills and by mountains of rounded forms, those to the north often nearly bare, while those on the opposite side are generally either wooded or strewn, where fires have passed, with burnt logs. The river occupies a cañon, with precipitous banks often 300 feet in height, which has been cut in the bottom of this great valley. It is very rough and rapid, but there are no true falls. Terraces are well developed at several levels on both sides of the river, which is frequently bordered by vertical basaltic cliffs. The basalts have manifestly filled the bottom of the ancient valley in a series of nearly level flows, which have since been cut through by the present river, while the bordering hills are all composed of much older



G. M. D.—Photo., May 31, 1887.

TAHL-TAN VALLEY, AT TRAIL-CROSSING.

Bank on the right shows basalt, capping old gravel deposit. Hill on the left composed of older crystalline rocks.

and probably Palæozoic rocks. A general summary of the geology of the country from Telegraph Creek to Dease Lake is given on a later page.

The country traversed by the trail between Telegraph Creek and the Tahl-tan is wooded only in patches, the trees being chiefly black pine (*Pinus Murrayana*) and aspen (*Populus tremuloides*), with occasional specimens of white birch, and alder and willow in the hollows. The soil is reddish and rather sandy, and appears very dry, being but scantily clothed with thin, tufty grass and bear-berry (*Arctostaphylos uva-ursi*). The strawberry (*Fragaria Virginiana*) was abundant and in full flower on May 31st, while *Polemonium pulchellum* was also very conspicuous, and *Linnæa borealis*, *Echinospermum Redowskii* and *Arnica cordifolia* were also locally abundant. Thickets are composed principally of *Shepherdia Canadensis*, high-bush cranberry (*Viburnum pauciflorum*), roses, service-berry (*Amelanchier alnifolia*), red dog-wood (*Cornus stolonifera*) and willows.

Indian village.

The Tahl-tan Indian village is seen near the trail, about a mile before the river of the same name is reached, but was at the time we passed quite deserted.

Tahl-tan River.

The Tahl-tan River is crossed near its mouth by a good bridge. It is a large and rapid stream, which rises about thirty miles to the north-westward. Its valley is narrow and almost cañon-like where it reaches the Stikine, and has cut through basalt-flows and heavy underlying gravel deposits to a depth of about one hundred and fifty feet, though its right bank, just above the crossing, is composed of the older rocks. It is resorted to by the Indians for salmon fishing during a part of the summer, and there are several temporary houses and a number of graves. The angle between this river and the Stikine, on the right bank, shows three clearly defined, superposed, columnar basalt-flows. The opposite angle, up which the trail zig-zags, is in the form of a long, narrow point, the surface of which is extremely rough, being composed of large pieces of basalt lying in great confusion, with deep interspaces and crevices. This is generally known as the "lava bed," but its broken character appears to have been produced by the washing out of the underlying gravelly deposits, resulting in slides and irregular settlement of a once uniform basalt sheet. Notwithstanding its relatively recent appearance, the basalt here, as elsewhere along the Stikine, is of pre-glacial age, and was found, like the other basalt flows, to pass beneath the higher terraces. Gold mining was at one time carried on successfully for some miles up the Tahl-tan valley.

Sources of Tahl-tan

According to M. W. Byrnes, one of the Telegraph Company's explorers, the sources of the Tahl-tan are at a distance of about thirty miles from its confluence with the Stikine. It occupies a portion of an important valley which, still further to the north-westward, carries the upper branches of the Taku and the furthest sources of the Lewes River. The Indians travel along this valley, and it appears worthy of attention as a route from the navigable waters of the Stikine to the Yukon basin.

Tahl-tan to Tooya.

The distance from the Tahl-tan to the Tooya, or Second North Fork, is about six miles. For about half this distance, to Ward's house, (now, like other places of call along this route abandoned) the trail runs near the Stikine River, the immediate valley of which still continues to be occupied by basaltic flows. Above these, however, the sides of the valley are generally formed of very regular and high terraces, composed of horizontally stratified sands, gravels and earthy deposits, which though generally very fine, are rather silts than true clays. The gravels frequently include large boulders. At Ward's, the trail turns away from the river and cuts across a high point to the Tooya, the highest terrace-level crossed being about 1000 feet above the river. On these terraces the vegetation was perceptibly less advanced than in the lower parts of the valley. Swampy spots are frequent, and the country, as we recede from the vicinity of the Coast Mountains, has evidently a somewhat more humid climate and is more subject to summer frosts. Potatoes and other crops are successfully grown at Ward's, situated on one of the lower terraces, but irrigation is there necessary.

Tooya valley.

The Tooya valley, where it is crossed by the trail, is a great gorge, about 600 feet in depth, cut out through the terrace deposits. The river, which is spanned by a small bridge, is a wild torrent—almost a series of cascades. Its scarped banks show a section of about 400 feet of the terrace deposits, which are of the character above noted, but include rough, bouldery and gravelly layers, and a number of large granite boulders occur in the bottom of the valley, resembling in their lithological character the granites of the Coast Ranges.

Sources of Tooya.

Scarcely any authentic information is available regarding the headwaters of the Tooya, though these have been reached by prospectors from Dease Lake. A lake of considerable size is reported to exist on its upper part, as indicated in the accompanying map, and the volume of water in the river is such as to lead to the belief that it must drain a large area to the south of the Yukon watershed.

Plateau beyond Tooya.

About a mile beyond the Tooya, on the summit of a wide, undulating terrace, is Wilson's house. Here turnips and potatoes have been grown, but the potatoes do not fully mature. From Wilson's to Caribou Camp, about twelve miles, the trail crosses an extensive high terrace or plateau, with a nearly level or slightly undulating surface, which is generally wooded with aspen, black pine and white spruce of fair growth. A few very small streams, which flow toward the main valley, are crossed, but the river is generally some miles distant and scarcely visible from the trail. The Tooya valley is here said to run nearly parallel with the main valley of the Stikine and at no great distance from it, but is invisible from the trail. No mountains were here seen to the north-eastward, but high, rounded mountains, with broad, bare summits, continue to border the south-east side of the Stikine valley. About midway between Wilson's and Caribou Camp, the Stikine, or Too-dessa of the Tahl-tan Indians, coming from the southward, enters the main valley, cutting through the bordering mountains in a narrow cañon, which the Indians report impassable. Their route to the upper waters of the river crosses the mountains to the west of this cañon. They state that after again reaching the Stikine, above the cañon, they can ascend it in canoes without difficulty for a long distance.

Head of Stikine.

No rock exposures were seen along this part of the trail, and only occasional groups of boulders. The soil appears to be excellent, but the altitude is probably too great for the successful cultivation of any but the most hardy crops. The vegetation and appearance of the country afford evidence that the climate is still a rather dry one.

Tanzilla.

The trail reaches the edge of the valley of the Tanzilla, or Third North Fork, about a mile south-westward from Caribou Camp. This valley is cut out to a depth of 450 feet below the level of the plateau, and is about a mile in width from rim to rim. The sides show evidence of extensive landslips, both old and recent. The river is a comparatively small though swift and muddy stream, with an estimated width of 180 feet and depth of about three feet. No rocks are exposed in the valley, the entire depth of which appears to be excavated in bedded clays and silts, which weather to gray, earthy slopes. No true boulder-clay was seen, but the occasional presence of large granitic boulders, with the singularly contorted character of some of the clay-beds, appear to indicate the existence of floating ice in the body of water in which the deposits were originally laid down. The clays and silts are evidently the same with those seen in the Tooya, but here, so far as observed, want the rough bouldery and gravelly beds which are there intercalated, and which are doubtless connected with the entry of the former representative of the Tooya into the lake in which the silty deposits have been formed. Flat or lenticular calcareous nodules are abundant at certain horizons in both places, and are also reported

Silt and clay terraces

to occur at some distance up the Tahl-tan, where the same silty deposit is probably continued. The level country based on these deposits has a width of several miles on both sides of this part of the Tanzilla.

Tanzilla valley.

From Caribou Camp to the vicinity of Dease Lake, or for about twenty-six miles, the trail runs along the north-west side of the Tanzilla. The valley of the stream gradually loses its depth, owing to the fact that, while the grade of the stream is considerable, the terraces at its sides continue at about the same level. These consist, so far as can be seen, of similar silty and clayey materials, but the edges of the terraces are less marked, and they show a tendency to merge into slopes, which rest upon the bases of the mountains bordering the valley. The mountains that extend to the south-east of the river here become higher than before, and take the form of a well-marked range, which is known to the Indians as *Ho-taï'-luh.** Swampy spots become frequent and the vegetation more alpine in character, with evidence of a considerably greater rainfall. The white spruce is relatively more abundant, and *Betula glandulosa* and *Ledum latifolium* were here met with for the first time. A great part of the forest all along this portion of the valley has been destroyed by fire. Rock is seen in place only on approaching the bases of the mountains.

Valley connecting Tanzilla with Dease Lake.

Opposite the head of Dease Lake, the Tanzilla turns off abruptly, and is seen to take its rise in a high range of mountains, holding much snow and running in a north-east and south-west bearing, at a distance of seven or eight miles. The main valley, which has heretofore been occupied by the river, turns northward, through a right angle, and becomes continuous with that of Dease Lake. The distance from the head of the lake to the Tanzilla, at the nearest point, is about three miles, the level of the Tanzilla being somewhat lower than that of the lake. The height of land is about seventy feet above the lake or 2730 feet above the sea, and constitutes the watershed between the Arctic and Pacific slopes.

Origin of the valley.

The part of the valley which connects the Tanzilla with Dease Lake is floored by terrace deposits, and is without doubt very deeply filled with such material, as no solid rock is seen in it. It has evidently been part of a through river-course of very ancient date, but in which direction the stream which originated the valley flowed, it is now difficult to surmise. It has, however, been again occupied by a river in comparatively recent post-glacial times, subsequently to the formation of the terrace deposits, as it is traversed by a well-marked river-bed, filled with rolled stones and gravel. This old channel appears to rise slightly towards Dease Lake, and there can be little doubt that the stream by which it was formed flowed out of the lake.

---

* The names of geographical features which have not been previously recognized, whether Indian names or names applied by himself, are throughout the descriptive portion of this report printed in italics, on the occasion of their first occurrence.

Geological Notes on the Cassiar trail.

Rocks chiefly Palæozoic.

Respecting the older rocks which characterize the greater part of the country between Telegraph Creek and Dease Lake, few details were noted, and no approach to a general section was obtained, as they are not usually exposed except along the bases of the mountains, which are, as a rule, at some distance from the route of travel. They may be described as consisting of gray and greenish-gray quartzites and grauwackes, with a large proportion of altered volcanic materials, generally felspathic, but passing into diabases and becoming in some cases more or less schistose. Rocks originally of volcanic origin notably preponderate in the vicinity of Telegraph Creek, while near Dease Lake they are less abundant, and at about two miles from the lake, on the trail, massive gray fine-grained limestone occurs, in exposures which are nearly continuous for about a mile. None of the mountains in sight on either side of the valley are distinctly granitic, and rocks of this character were observed only in one locality, where they occupy a relatively small area.

Limestone.

Hornblende-rock and granite.

At about two miles along the trail to the south-west of the Tahl-tan, a dark, blackish-green, highly crystalline hornblende-rock occurs in considerable mass, and is much broken and shattered by a gray porphyritic and hornblendic granite, which appears to be of later date, and which may have a width of about two miles on the trail. In the bed of the Tooya River rocks differing in appearance from any seen elsewhere on this trail were found. They are reddish and purplish in colour, fine-grained and in some beds slightly porphyritic, and appear to be chiefly felspathic in composition.* One of these is identical with a rock met with in the lower part of the bedded series, a short distance above "Grand Rapid," on the Stikine. No fossils were found in the limestones above alluded to, and the rocks, as a whole, can at present only be classed as Palæozoic, though showing many points in common with those of the Cache Creek group of southern British Columbia, which is believed to be, in great part at least, of Carboniferous age.

Purple felsites

Basalts filling old river-valley.

The pre-glacial age of the basaltic rocks is shown, as already noted, by their relation to the terraces of the valley, and also by the occurrence upon them of large granitic boulders, the transport of which must be attributed to glacial action. This is seen particularly in some places between Telegraph Creek and the Tahl-tan. The basaltic rocks, at the period of their eruption, have filled the old river-valley, and may very probably have at one time done so continuously from below Glenora to the Tooya, or perhaps considerably further. There is no reason to suppose that the basalts were erupted from a single volcanic centre, and indeed the existence of basaltic dykes cutting the older rocks at Telegraph Creek would appear to lead to an opposite conclusion. Subsequent to the period of basaltic eruption, the river, still flowing in the same great valley, has cut down through the basalts in several places, exposing sections of the gravel deposits of the ancient river. The new channel thus formed is not, however, coincident with the old, but cuts across it at several points, and above Telegraph Creek, the excavation of the new bed has been carried to a depth estimated at from forty to seventy feet below the earlier one.

---

* (Cassiar Trail No. 4.)

A few miles below Glenora, where the basalt filling of the old valley has been cut across, it seems, however, that the old river-bed is below the present water-level, indicating, in connection with the previous observation, that the grade of the original river was greater than that of the present.

Basalts near Tahl-tan.

Directly opposite the mouth of Tahl-tan River, on the left bank of the Stikine, a good section of the old river-bed is exposed in the truncated end of a point which forms a spur of the plateau to the south, the basalts filling it like a great ingot, and resting, at the bottom, on the old gravels; at the sides, directly on the rocky banks of the old channel.

The angle between the Tahl-tan and the Stikine, on the upper side, has already been referred to in connection with the peculiarly disturbed character of the basalt layer by which it is capped. Beneath the basalt at this place is a great thickness (apparently not much less than one hundred feet) of well-rounded gravel and boulders. It is probable that this deposit does not reach to the water-level, but its disintegrated material has formed a slope which conceals any basis of old rocks which may be beneath it. The eruption of basalt has, moreover, not been confined to a single period, but must have occurred at several different times separated by rather wide intervals. The occurence in some places of three or more superposed flows, shows this to have been the case, but a still more striking proof of the same fact is found in a section, observed from a distance, on the left bank of the Stikine above the Tahl-tan. At this place a thick and apparently extensive deposit of gravels has been covered by three superposed basaltic flows. Through these, a narrow vertical-sided cañon has been cut by some tributary stream, which has even excavated a portion of the gravels beneath

Basalts of several dates.

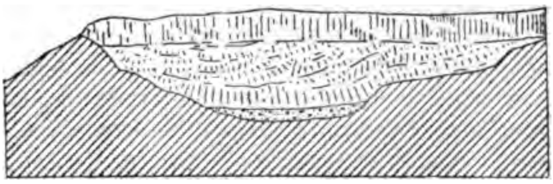


FIG. 2.—SECTION SHOWING OLD RIVER-CHANNEL CAPPED BY BASALTS. EAST BANK STIKINE RIVER BELOW TAHL-TAN.

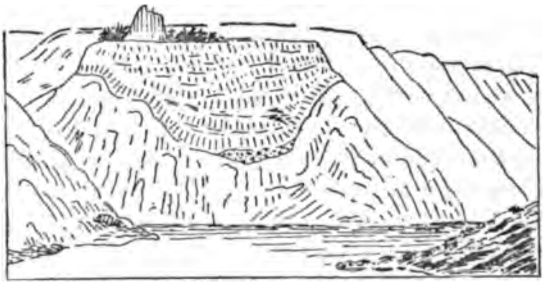


FIG. 3.—SECTION SHOWING OLD RIVER-CHANNEL FILLED WITH BASALT. MOUTH OF TAHL-TAN.

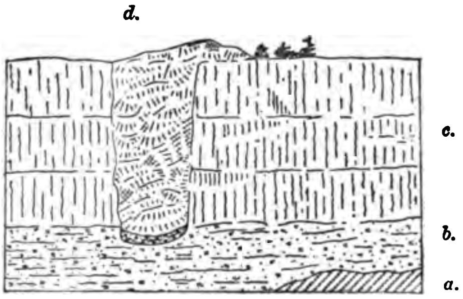


FIG. 4.—SECTION SHOWING RELATIONS OF BASALTS AND GRAVELS. STIKINE RIVER, EAST BANK, ABOVE TAHL-TAN.

a. Old basal rocks.
b. Old gravels.
c. Superposed basalt flows.
d. Basaltic filling of a later gorge.

the lowest basalt. A fourth basaltic flow has then occurred, which has completely filled the cañon and partly overflowed on the surface of the highest of the three earlier basaltic layers.

Though the basalts of Tertiary age actually seen by me are confined to the Stikine valley, it is highly probable that further explorations will prove their occurrence in other valleys, and possibly also the existence of similar rocks, in the form of plateaux of some size, in the region east of the Coast Ranges.

Old channel and gold placers.

The basaltic formation of this part of the Stikine has been described in some detail, on account of the importance which it possesses in respect to the distribution of gold. The gold along the Stikine was said by the miners to be "spotted," or irregular, in its occurrence, but the greater part of the "heavy" gold was found just along that portion of the stream now characterized by the basalts, and it appears even possible to trace a connection between the richer bars which have been worked and those places in which the present river has cut through or followed the old basalt-protected channel. This being the case, it seems very desirable that the old channel should be fully prospected, which I cannot learn has ever been attempted. If gold should be found in it in paying quantity, it might easily be worked, and would give rise to a considerable renewal of activity in mining. It is not known to what extent similar conditions may occur up the Tahl-tan valley, where also remunerative bars were worked some years ago.

Superficial Deposits and Terraces.

Boulder-clay not observed.

No true boulder-clay was recognized either on the Lower Stikine or in the country between Telegraph Creek and Dease Lake; neither were any striated rock surfaces actually seen. The last-mentioned fact is to be attributed to the want of suitable localities for observation in the vicinity of the route followed and to the necessarily cursory character of the examination, as evidence of glaciation of a general character, shown in the rounding of rocky hillocks and the transport of large boulders, is abundant. The most characteristic later formation of the country between Telegraph Creek and Dease Lake, is the silty and clayey deposit which has already been referred to in several places. The whole of the great valley has evidently in later-glacial times been filled with this deposit, which must have been laid down in a comparatively tranquil lake-like body of water, into which coarser material was in some places washed by entering torrents, as in the case of the Tooya. It appears to me possible that this body of water

Thick silty and clayey deposits.

was held in by means of glacier-ice accumulated on the Coast Ranges on one side and those of the Cassiar Mountains on the other, and the increased height of the terraces in the vicinity of Dease Lake, as compared with those near Telegraph Creek, may show that the terrace-deposits have been laid down near the front of a retreating glacier-mass, the water-level of the lake being reduced *pari passu*, with its recession. The highest terrace-level observed near the Tahl-tan, is at an approximate elevation of 1700 feet above the sea, while half way between the Tooya and Dease Lake the terraces run up to a height of about 2800 feet. At the head of the lake a well-marked terrace-edge was observed at 520 feet above the lake, or 3180 feet above the sea. The irregular surface of the same terrace sloped upward to a further height of about 100 feet, and granite boulders were found on the summit of a limestone hill 1000 feet above the lake, or 3660 feet above the sea. If the supposition of the considerable inland extension of the glaciers of the Coast Mountains at one epoch of the glacial period be correct (and it is strictly paralleled by similar circumstances in the more southern part of British Columbia), the greater part of the granitic erratics met with may probably have been derived from the Coast Ranges, though the Cassiar Mountains, and possibly other ranges in the region, are characterized by similar rocks.

Heights of terraces.

Route for Wagon-road or Railway.

Dease Lake is the central point of the Cassiar district, and though, as shown by statistics subsequently quoted, the yield of gold has greatly fallen off since the palmy days of its first discovery, it is very probable that further placer mines of value may yet be found in this region, (of which a great part still remains to be carefully prospected) and there is every reason to believe that quartz mining and other industries will before long be developed on a considerable scale. Even at the present moment this district is more easily accessible than that of Cariboo, and when a wagon-road shall have been built from the head of navigation on the Stikine to Dease Lake, it should be easy to lay down goods at the latter point at very reasonable rates.

District naturally easy of access.

The construction of a wagon-road, with moderately favourable grades, between Telegraph Creek and Dease Lake, would not be very difficult or expensive. The first ascent from Telegraph Creek is steep, but might easily be overcome. Between eight and ten miles from Telegraph Creek, or for a distance of about two miles, the road would have to follow a rough hill-side above the cañon, where some blasting and grading would be required. The descent to the Tahl-tan would entail some heavy side-hill cutting in rock and earth and a bridge

Route for wagon road.

would be necessary. The ascent and crossing of the "lava bed" would entail about a mile of rough work on the opposite side of the Tahl-tan, and should the line of the present trail be followed, a long and steep ascent, with grading in gravel and clay, would be required at Ward's, and again in descending to and ascending from the Tooya valley, but no rock-work would be necessary. It seems quite probable, however, that a better route might be found for a road, at a lower level, from Ward's to the mouth of the Tooya, in following along the side of the main valley. In either case a good bridge would be required at the Tooya. Beyond this, all the way to Dease Lake, no further serious obstacle is met with. Portions of the route are clayey and swampy, and to render these easily passable, from eight to ten miles of corduroy in all would be required, for which suitable material could be obtained near by in all cases.

Railway route

Should the construction of a railway be contemplated, the difficulties to be surmounted would be greater in proportion, particularly between Telegraph Creek and the Tahl-tan, where the line would have to follow the side of the cañon, which is very rough and rocky. Beyond this point, so far as the valley could be seen from the trail, it presents no very serious impediments. Below Telegraph Creek, to Glenora, or a little further, a railway would involve some moderately heavy side-hill work; but further down the Stikine, to the sea, it might follow the river-flats at a nearly uniform level. The greatest difficulty to be apprehended on this part of the line would be that likely to arise in winter from the very heavy snow-fall on that part of the river below the Little Cañon.

It may be pointed out, in this connection, that the survey of the Stikine and of the valley leading by the Tanzilla to Dease Lake, shows that the route is an exceedingly direct one to Dease Lake, and that, taken in conjunction with the valleys of the Dease and Liard rivers, it affords almost an air-line from the Pacific Coast to the great Mackenzie River. (See p. 19 B.)

Freight rates.

The present [1887] rates for goods, from Wrangell to Dease Lake are about as follows:—Wrangell to Telegraph Creek by steamer, 2½ cents per lb. Thence to Dease Lake by pack animals, 6 cents. Thence by lake to Laketon, ¾ to 1 cent. Total, about 9¾ cents per lb., or $195 per ton. The result of such high prices is to discourage prospecting in the district and seriously to retard its further development.

DEASE LAKE.

Proceedings at Dease Lake.

We reached the head of Dease Lake on June 5th, and eventually left the lake on the morning of June 19th, spending thus thirteen days in all upon the lake. At the date of our arrival, the lake, with the exception of a small area at its head, was still covered with the decayed but unbroken ice of the previous winter, and this did not finally break up and disappear till the 16th. Meanwhile, almost all our time and attention was devoted to sawing out boards and building three boats. It would have been impossible to have left sooner, even if we had had boats ready at the outlet of the lake, which had long been open, in consequence of the entire exhaustion of supplies in the district, from which it was necessary that we should depart provisioned for the greater part of the summer's work. As it was, our boats were finished a few hours before the final disruption of the ice, which occurred in the end with extraordinary rapidity, under the influence of a strong wind. It will easily be understood that we had but little time or opportunity for the examination of the surrounding country, which is nevertheless of considerable interest on account of the rich gold-producing character of some of the streams.

Opening and closing of lake.

The disappearance of the ice must always be late in this lake, in consequence of its high altitude, the want of any large entering streams and its contracted outlet. It was, however, in 1887, later than ever before known since mining operations began. The following dates, obtained from Mr. Robert Reid, of Laketon, are those of the opening and closing of the lake for the past few years ;—

Year.	*Lake opened.*	*Lake closed.*
1882	June 9	December 5 or 6
1883	May 30 (Clear from end to end.)	December 5
1884	June 2	December 2
1885	June 3	December 1 (Frozen completely across.)
1886	June 5	December 16 (Crossing on 17th.)
1887	June 16	

Further particulars respecting the climate of Dease Lake will be found in Appendix VI. [Not reprinted.]

Dease Lake.

Dease Lake has an elevation of 2660 feet above the sea, and lies nearly due north-and-south on the 130th meridian. It has a total length of twenty-four and a third miles, with an average width of rather less than one mile, being somewhat narrower at the northern than at the southern end. Dease Creek, on the delta of which is situated Laketon, the chief place of the Cassiar district, enters on the west side at sixteen miles and three-quarters from the head of the lake, and is the largest tributary stream. It is also the most important, as being that on which the richest of the gold deposits were discovered,

Mining camps

and on which gold is still worked to a limited extent. A certain amount of business is still carried on here, and it is the head-quarters of the present Gold Commissioner, Mr. Crimp. At the south end, or head of the lake, there are a few buildings, now virtually abandoned, and at Porter's Landing, on the west side of the lake near its north end, goods are landed for Thibert's Creek. The old Hudson's Bay post was situated about two miles from the lower end of the lake, on the east side. A small steamer was put upon the lake when the mines were in a flourishing condition, and is still employed in making occasional trips up or down the lake with supplies.

Country surrounding the lake.

The country about the lake is everywhere wooded, though trees large enough for lumber are found only in sheltered valleys or on low land. It is not roughly mountainous, though several prominent summits occur. The most conspicuous of these lies four miles back from the lake, about half-way between the head of the lake and Laketon. As I could not ascertain that this is recognized by any name, I propose naming it *McLeod Mountain*, in honour of the discover of the lake. Its height is about 6300 feet. Between McLeod Mountain and Dease Creek is *Mount Sullivan*,* not so elevated as the last, but nearer the lake-shore and very conspicuous from it. On the opposite, or east side of the lake, a couple of miles back from the shore, is a group of rounded and wooded mountains, somewhat exceeding 1000 feet in height above the lake, or about 3800 above the sea. *Beady Mountain*, another notable landmark, is also on the east side of the lake, about three miles from its lower end and near the creek of the same name. Its height was not determined, but is less than that of McLeod Mountain. With the exception of these and some other nameless mountains, the country near the lake is merely hilly, or rises in long, light slopes from the shores to undulating wooded uplands, a few hundred feet only above it, which coalesce with the bases of the mountains. Only near the northern end of the lake do the mountains begin to crowd down more closely to the water's edge. The lake is shallow and marshy at both ends, but is elsewhere evidently very deep, though no soundings have been made in it.

Mountains.

Superficial deposits.

Rock-exposures are infrequent along the margin of the lake, which, when scarped, generally shows only stratified, sandy, clayey and gravelly terrace-deposits, like those seen on the trail to the south-eastward. None of these were recognized as true boulder-clay. The lake is probably held in at its northern end by the accumulated delta deposit of Thibert Creek.† It is much constricted, further up, by the similar deposit of Dease Creek, and has narrowly escaped being divided at this place into two lakes. It is rimmed round at its head by somewhat irregular terrace deposits, which have already been alluded to as filling the ancient valley which communicates with that of the Stikine.

---

* So named for Mr. J. H. Sullivan, first Gold Commissioner of the district, lost in the wreck of the *Pacific* in 1875.

† A stream about fifty feet wide.

Vegetation and cultivation.

The vegetation gives evidence of a greater rainfall and conditions more alpine and less favourable than those met with on the trail to the south-eastward, and sharply contrasting with that of Telegraph Creek and the Tahl-tan. The effect of the ice upon the lake in spring, in retarding the vegetation in its immediate vicinity, was extremely apparent. Agriculture can scarcely be regarded as practicable in this region, and the results of gardening, however carefully conducted, are small. Potatoes can be grown, but in some years they are much injured by frost, and carrots, lettuce, cabbage, cauliflowers and turnips may be made to afford a fair return.

Rocks.

Such rock-exposures as could be reached near the shores of the lake were inspected, and the material brought down from the hills by several streams was examined, the evidence afforded being in favour of the belief that the whole country is underlain by Palæozoic strata resembling those described to the south-eastward. In addition to the limestone already noted as occurring at the head of the lake, there are gray and greenish rocks, representing altered materials of volcanic origin, associated with leek-green serpentine, in which some minute veins of chrysotile or asbestos were noted. Besides these, and probably predominant as a whole in the valley of the lake, are argillite-schists, which vary from a black plumbaginous, to a gray, finely micaceous, character, and are often lustrous and not unfrequently highly calcareous. The rocks, as a whole, closely resemble those of parts of the gold bearing series of Cariboo district.

Dease Creek.

Dease Creek is said to be about twelve miles in length and to rise in a lake about five miles long. It has cut a deep, narrow V-shaped valley through a series of terraces, which have evidently been formed at its mouth when the lake stood at various levels higher than the present. The ancient pre-glacial valley has, at the same later-glacial period, been filled with clayey and gravelly deposits, among which large and often glaciated boulders are common. These deposits frequently resemble boulder-clay, and are possibly entitled to be so called. The present valley has been cut down through them, and often to a considerable depth into the rock beneath them. The mining has occurred chiefly in the bed of the stream, along the surface of the solid rock, in the sides of the valley, and in various places in the gravel deposits which still remain; also at the head of the flat on which Laketon stands, where the stream issues from the narrow recent valley. Much quartz occurs in the wash of the stream, and the gold, being "coarse," is evidently of local origin and has been liberated by the disintegration of the rocks in the immediate vicinity of, if not entirely within, the actual drainage-area of the stream.

GOLD MINING IN CASSIAR DISTRICT.

Yield of gold.

The following table, based on the reports of the Minister of Mines of British Columbia, clearly illustrates the sulden rise and gradual decadence of the gold yield of Cassiar district.—

Estimated value of Gold produced by Cassiar District, from 1874 to 1887.

1873	Not known.
1874	$1,000,000
1875	830,000
1876	556,474
1877	499,830
1878	519,720
1879	405,200
1880	297,850
1881	198,900
1882	182,800
1883	119,000
1884	101,600
1885	50,600
1886	63,610
1887	60,485
Total	$4,886,069

No estimate has been formed for the yield of the mines in the first year of their operation (1873), but as that for the following year appears probably to be overstated, it may, for the purpose of arriving at a general estimate of the whole, be assumed that the sum of one million includes both years. The value of the gold may be stated as from $16 to $17 per ounce, though that of Dease Creek is usually priced at about $15.50 only.

Sources of information on mining.

In the Report of Progress of the Geological Survey for 1886-87, I was enabled to give a general note on the various creeks worked for gold in Cassiar and on the Stikine.* The information there given was chiefly furnished by Mr. G. B. Wright. I am now able to add to this, particulars as to the actual condition of the workings in 1887. These were largely obtained through the kindness of Mr. J. S. Crimp, the present Gold Commissioner for Cassiar district, though facts were also gathered from several old miners who were among the first to enter the country. As explained on a previous page, my opportunities of personally investigating the Cassiar district were restricted by the necessity we were under of pushing on to our main field of exploration. Chiefly from the sources above mentioned the following summary account of the different localities is derived.

---

* *Op. cit.*, pp. 138-140.

Summary of Facts relating to Gold on the Stikine and various Creeks in the Cassiar District (1887).

Localities of gold mining.

Stikine River.—Gold discovered, 1861. Very fine gold can be found on almost all parts of the river, but very little profitable work was ever done below the mouth of the Clearwater. The rich ground may be said to have begun about nine miles below Glenora, and to have extended thence to the Grand Cañon, above Telegraph Creek. Here Sheck's or Shake's Bar, and Carpenter's, Fiddler's and Buck's Bars were situated, the richest being between Glenora and Telegraph Creek, though gold was also worked in a few places in the Grand Cañon. With the exception of a few spots in the lower part of the cañon, below the Tahl-tan, and one nearly opposite Wilson's, all the gold was very fine. Coarse gold was also found on the lower part of the Tahl-tan, which proved quite profitable, and bars were worked for a distance of ten or fifteen miles up the river. Pellets supposed to be of silver but probably of arquerite or silver-amalgam were also found on the Tahl-tan. The bars on the Stikine at first averaged $3 to $10 a day to the hand, and as much as two to three ounces was sometimes obtained, but not more than $1 to $3 can now be got, and work has practically ceased. It is stated that none of the higher benches so far prospected will pay for hydraulic work, but it is doubtful whether these have been examined with sufficient care, as the area of such benches is very considerable.

Dease Creek.—The bed of this creek has been gone over several times, and is now nearly worked out. It formerly yielded $8 to $50 a day to the hand, and paid well from the head of the flat, at its mouth, for six miles up. Above this a few isolated good claims were found, particularly the Cariboo Company's claim, eight miles up, from which much heavy gold was obtained. This claim has been worked over four times. The best remaining claims are bench-claims on the south side of the creek, some of these being upon an old high channel which yields well in places. Some hydraulic work on a small scale is being carried on. In 1886 there were sixteen whites and thirty-five Chinese at work, and the total amount produced was about $15,000. The

Localities of gold mining, continued.

gold is generally well water-worn and somewhat mixed in character, varying in value from $15.50 to $16 per ounce.

Thibert Creek.—The bed of this stream is also worked out. It paid for about six miles up from the mouth, yielding at about the same rate as the last. Bench claims are now being worked, two by the hydraulic method, the rest by tunnelling. An old high channel had also been found on the south side of this creek, upon which two claims are being worked, one paying very well. Yield in 1886, nearly the same with Dease Creek, about twenty-two whites and twenty-five Chinese being employed. Gold valued at $16 per ounce. On a tributary named Mosquito Creek, very good prospects have lately been obtained,—as much as $40 to a six-foot set of timbers. Work is now going on here.

Defot Creek.—A tributary of Cañon Creek, on the same (west) side of Dease River with the last. It rises on a plateau high above the river, where great numbers of quartz reefs occur, and the gold found is quite rough and full of quartz. Large nuggets have been obtained, including one of fourteen ounces in weight. Some work is still in progress, though the creek-bed is worked out. Gold worth $17 per ounce.

Cañon Creek.— No paying deposits found.

Cottonwood Creek.—This large stream heads in the same mountains with the last, but no paying deposits have been found upon it.

Beady Creek.—A little mining was done here in 1874 and 1875, but nothing of importance ever found.

Eagle River.—No mining ever developed.

McDame Creek.—Discovered 1874. The highest average daily yield varied from $6 to $100 to the hand when mining was at its best. Most of the gold was obtained in what appeared to be an old high-level channel, which crossed points of terraces or benches on both sides of the present stream. A very small proportion of the yield was from the stream-bed. Four or five whites and forty Chinese are now at work here, the greater number of the Chinese being employed on wide flats, which occur about nine miles up the creek. Bench claims run for about seven miles up the creek or to Holloway's Bar. Gold worth from $17.75 to $18 per ounce.

Snow Creek, a tributary of the last.—The richest claim found in Cassiar was near the mouth of this creek, yielding for a week 300 ounces for six to eight men. Only two men now at work.

Quartz Creek, a branch of Trout Creek, which is also a tributary of McDame Creek. Good claims were worked here, yielding rough gold full of quartz. Much quartz in the vicinity. Two miners now at work.

Localities of gold mining, continued.

Rosella Patterson and Dennis Creeks.—Yielded moderate amounts of gold, paying "wages," say, at $6 a day. Now abandoned.

The remaining creeks mentioned in the report cited, *viz.*, *Gold Creek*, *Slate Creek*, *Somer's Creek* or *First North Fork of McDame*, *Third North Fork of McDame*, *Spring Creek* and *Fall Creek*, are now abandoned, though several of them yielded a considerable amount of gold at one time.

Sayyea Creek.—Near the head-waters of the Upper Liard, yielded excellent prospects, but has never been properly examined. The gold obtained was found in the benches, and some of it was very coarse. The creek yielded at the rate of $10.90 a day to the hand for a short time, to three miners who discovered it.

Walker Creek.—Said to be distant about seventy miles in an easterly direction from the mouth of McDame Creek. Some work has been done here, but no great quantity of gold obtained.

Black, *Turnagain* or "*Muddy*" *River.*—Reached by trail running easterly from a point opposite the mouth of McDame Creek, and said to be ninety miles distant. Fine gold stated to have been obtained to the value of $20 per day to the hand, and it is generally believed that coarse gold may occur on its head-waters. In 1874 prospectors found streams about seventy miles south-east of Dease Lake, which are supposed to be tributaries of this river, and yielded $6 a day in coarse gold, but at the time this was considered too poor to work.

Frozen ground

Considerable difficulties were experienced in mining operations in some parts of the Cassiar district on account of frozen ground, often met with below the wooded and mossy surface. It is on record that on Dease Creek, the ground continued to be frozen to the end of a tunnel driven in one hundred and fifty feet from the slope of the hill, and at a depth of forty feet from the surface. After the woods and moss had, however, been burnt off, little further complaint was heard of frozen ground.

Metalliferous veins.

Very little has yet been done in the way of prospecting for metalliferous veins in this district, but from what I have been able to learn it would well repay a thorough examination, and the comparative ease with which it may be reached from the coast, together with the facility it affords for the construction of a good road to the very centre of the district, should not be forgotten. A specimen of galena, holding a little copper- and iron-pyrites, from the "Acadia Claim," South Fork of McDame Creek, was given to me some years ago by Mr. J. W. McKay. This has since been assayed by Mr. C. Hoffmann, and proves to contain 75 ounces of silver to the ton of 2000 lbs. A piece of native copper, fifteen pounds in weight, was at one time found in Boulder Gulch, Thibert Creek.

Prospects of further placer mining.

Taking into consideration the great extent of generally auriferous country included in the Cassiar district, it must be conceded, that apart from the immediate vicinity of the well known productive camps, it has been very imperfectly prospected. A great part of the district has in fact merely been run over in search of rich diggings, the simplest and cheapest methods of prospecting only having been employed in the quest. It is not improbable that additional rich creeks like those of the vicinity of Dease Lake, may yet be discovered elsewhere and it may be considered certain that there are great areas of poorer deposits which will pay to work with improved methods, and will eventually be utilized. It is also to be anticipated that "quartz mining" will ere long be inaugurated and will afford a more permanent basis of prosperity than alluvial mining, however rich.

DISCOVERY AND EXPLORATION OF CASSIAR DISTRICT.

Discovery.

The Cassiar district of the northern interior of British Columbia may be said to have been twice discovered, first by officers and employees of the Hudson's Bay Company, and again, after a considerable interval, by the gold miners.

Exploration by McLeod.

The unsuccessful attempt made by the Hudson's Bay Company in 1834, to reach the trade of the interior country west of the Rocky Mountains from the mouth of the Stikine, has already been noted. (p. 59 B). Efforts were at the same time being made to open up routes from the eastward. In the summer of 1834 Mr. J. McLeod, chief trader, was employed exploring the Liard River above Fort Halkett, and in endeavouring to discover some stream flowing to the westward. He found and named Dease Lake,* crossed to the head-waters of the Stikine, which he proposed to name the "Pelly River," and travelled westward in the valley apparently as far as the Tooya or Second North Fork. The Indian bridge (afterwards named Terror Bridge by Mr. R. Campbell), by which this river was crossed at the foot of "Thomas' Fall," was of such a character that neither McLeod nor any of his eight men dared to attempt it, and from this point he and his party retraced their steps.

McLeod's route and map.

The geographical information obtained by McLeod is incorporated in Arrowsmith's map of 1850, on which, however, the upper part of the Stikine, which McLeod had proposed to call the Pelly, is named "Frances River," and is placed much too far north and is not connected with the Stikine. The name Frances is still retained as an alternative one to "Stikeen" on the edition of 1854, though it has since fallen entirely into disuse. McLeod's route from the head of Dease Lake, as shown on these maps, crossed the Tanzilla within a few miles of the lake, and followed its left bank, recrossing before the main Stikine enters the valley, probably by an Indian suspension bridge, which is reported still to exist, within a mile or two of this point. On careful consideration of the facts there can scarcely be any doubt that the Tooya River was McLeod's furthest point, and the Indian bridge probably crossed it near the position of the present bridge, though it may have been at some point further up the stream which has not yet been mapped.

---

* Dease Lake and River were so named by McLeod after Peter Warren Dease, the Arctic explorer.

Second abortive expedition.

In 1836, McLeod's successor at Fort Halkett was instructed to establish a post across the mountains and to extend the trade down the Stikine, or "Pelly," as it was then called from McLeod's naming. For this purpose he left Fort Halkett early in June, with a party of men and two large canoes, but the expedition entirely miscarried. The appearance, or reported appearance, of a large force of hostile Indians at Portage Brulé, ten miles above Fort Halkett, so alarmed the party that they turned back in great haste, abandoning their goods, and lost no time in running down stream to Fort Simpson.

Exploration by Campbell.

For most of the above particulars I am indebted to Mr. Robert Campbell, who was at the time of the return of the last-mentioned party in temporary charge of Fort Simpson. The news brought back by these expeditions was of a character to discourage further enterprises in the region, the extremely difficult and dangerous navigation of the Liard River, which constituted the avenue of approach from the Mackenzie, being an additional deterrent. In 1838, however, Mr. R. Campbell volunteered his services to establish a trading post at Dease Lake, and in the spring of that year succeeded in doing so. He was accompanied by a half breed and two Indian lads only. After ascertaining that the "Pelly" of McLeod was identical with the Stikine, he returned to Dease Lake, where, to employ his own words, "we passed a winter of constant danger from the savage Russian [coast] Indians, and of much suffering from starvation. We were dependent for subsistance on what animals we could catch, and, failing that, on '*tripe de roche.*' We were at one time reduced to such dire straits that we were obliged to eat our parchment windows, and our last meal before abondoning Dease Lake, on 8th May, 1839, consisted of the lacing of our snow-shoes."* After being thus abandoned, the post was not again re-occupied. It had become unnecessary, owing to the leasing of the "coast strip" of Russian America by Sir

---

* The Discovery and Exploration of the Yucon (Pelly) River. Winnipeg, 1885.

George Simpson for the Company, in consequence of which the trade of the interior was entirely controlled on both sides by the Company.

Further history.

From this time the country appears to have been practically forgotten for many years. The furs produced by it found their way, through the Coast Indians down the Stikine, by the Liard to the Hudson's Bay posts on that stream, or across country southward to Fort Connelly (established by Douglas in 1826), on Bear Lake, at the head of the Skeena River. The exploration of the Telegraph Survey in 1866-67, has already been referred to. It did not extend inland as far as Dease Lake.

Gold discovery.

Such was the state of the Cassiar district when Messrs. Thibert and McCulloch, by the discovery of gold in 1872, brought about an entire change in its conditions. Henry Thibert, a French Canadian, left the Red River country in 1869 on a hunting and prospecting expedition to the west. In 1871 he met McCulloch, a Scotchman, and together they passed the winter near the abandoned site of Fort Halkett, on the Liard River, suffering no ordinary hardships from scarcity of food. Near this place, probably on what was known afterwards as McCulloch's Bar, gold was first found. In 1872 they reached Dease Lake, having been informed that it was a good locality for fish, with the intention of securing a sufficient supply for the ensuing winter. Being told, however, by the Indians, that white men were engaged in mining on the Stikine not far off, they crossed by the trail from the head of the lake and reached the mining camp of Buck's Bar. Early in 1873 they set out on their return to the original discovery of gold, but meeting with success on Thibert's Creek, at the lower end of the lake, they were deterred from going further and remained working there during the summer, being joined afterwards by thirteen others miners from the Stikine. Dease Creek was discovered during the same season, and Capt. W. Moore was among the first to begin work there. Thibert is still mining in Cassiar, but McCulloch lost his life some years since on a winter journey on the Stikine.

The subsequent history of Cassiar is that of a mining district.

Gold mining. 1874.

In 1874 the population, exclusive of Indians, was estimated to have reached 1500. The placers of McDame Creek were discovered. Miners descended the Liard a long distance, and worked McCulloch's Bar and other river-bars. Prospectors ascended the same river, and reported having been within sight of Frances Lake. The little town of Laketon was built at the mouth of Dease Creek, and beef cattle were for the first time brought across country from the Upper Fraser. The total yield of gold from the district (which, from a mining point of view, includes the Stikine) is roughly estimated to have been equal to $1,000,000.

1875.

In 1875, the population is estimated to have been 1081, and the yield of gold equalled about $830,000. Three hundred head of cattle were brought from the Fraser overland. This and the preceding season were the best years of the district. Of a small party which spent the winter of 1874-75 far up the Liard River, four died of scurvy. Prospecting was actively carried on in outlying regions, Sayyea Creek being discovered near the Liard head-waters, and the Frances River also apparently examined.

1876.

Owing to the flattering accounts sent out, a great influx of miners occurred in 1876, the population being at one time estimated at 2000. Profitable work could not, however, be found for so many men, and the yield of gold fell to $499,830. Walker Creek, said to be seventy to eighty miles east of McDame Creek, was discovered, but this stream never proved very remunerative. Defot Creek was also found, and in 1878 proved rich for a limited area.

Decline of gold mining.

Since this time the production of the district and the number of miners employed have gradually declined, and no important new creeks have been discovered, though reports to that effect have from time to time been circulated. The Black or Turnagain (Muddy) River is the most recent of these, some attention being drawn to it in 1886. It appears, indeed, that after the first few years very little prospecting or exploring has been done at a distance from the main creeks, of which Dease, Thibert and McDame have throughout been the most important and permanently productive.

DEASE RIVER.

We left Dease Lake with quite a little flotilla, consisting of the three boats we had built, with an Osgood canvas boat, which it had been intended to keep in reserve, but which the amount of dead weight which we had to carry obliged us to press into the service. Besides myself, the party consisted of Messrs. McConnell and McEvoy, four white men, five Coast Indians and one Indian woman, the wife of the leading Indian boatman.

Cassiar Range

Though the region about Dease Lake is as a whole rather low, with isolated mountains and ridges here and there prominent, that to the east and north-east is very different, being studded with rugged mountains, and in effect constituting an important mountain range with north-west and south-east trend, and a transverse width of nearly fifty miles. This range appears to represent a continuation of that which in various maps has been named the Peak Mountains or Blue Mountains, but as its connection to the south-eastward is as yet quite uncertain, and as neither of these names possesses either a distinctive character or any special fitness, I believe it will be most appropriate and convenient to call the range the *Cassiar Range*, and shall accordingly so designate it.

Lower end of Dease Lake.

Looking down the Dease River from Porter's Landing, near the north end of the lake, the view is one of the most picturesque possible, embracing a portion of the lake itself, bordered by the marshy flats of the mouth of Thibert Creek and bounded by the rugged and extremely varied forms of the eastern ridges of these mountains, towards which the Dease River flows, and through which it cuts in a direction almost directly transverse to the run of the range.

Three main courses of the Dease.

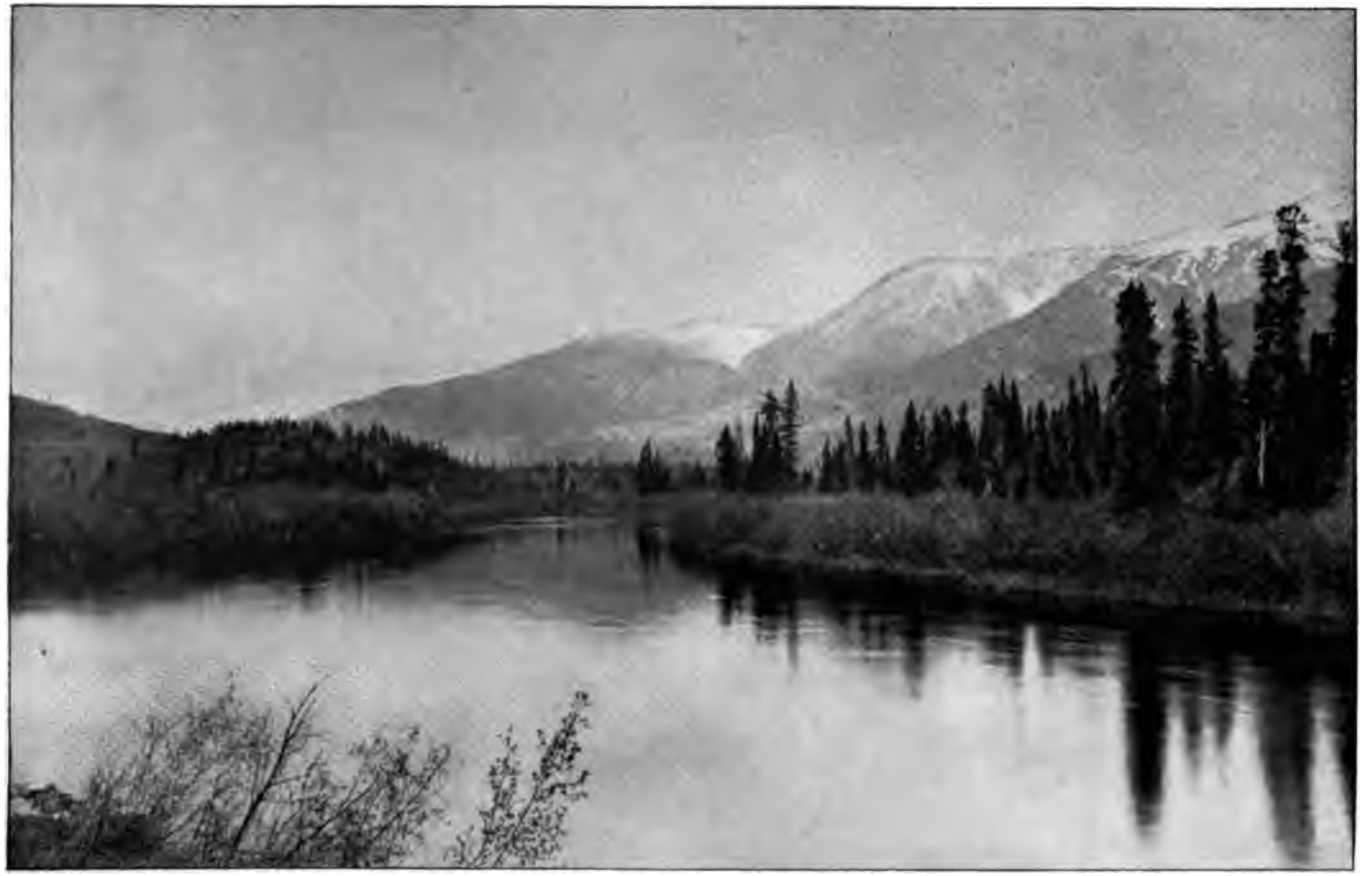
The Dease River has, up to the present time, been very inaccurately represented upon the maps. My survey of the river, as shown on the accompanying map, proves that its course is somewhat remarkable. Disregarding minor flexures, which are numerous and sometimes involved, it may be described as following three principal directions.—From Dease Lake its general course is N. 50° E. for forty-seven miles, to a point near the valley of Rapid River. Here, before it has freed itself from the Cassiar Range, it turns nearly at a right angle to a bearing of N. 15° W., which it maintains for thirty-one miles. Thence it again turns for a second time through a right angle to a course of N. 55° E., which it follows to its junction with the Liard. Its entire length, thus measured in three straight reaches, is one hundred and ten miles, but measured in straight lengths of one mile it is one hundred and twenty-seven miles, or, following all the sinuosities of the stream, one hundred and eighty miles.

Fall of the river, and current.

The height of Dease Lake, as previously stated, is 2660 feet, within small limits of error. That of the confluence of the Dease and Liard about 2100 feet. The last-mentioned elevation is a fair approximation only, as no simultaneous barometer readings were available for purposes of comparison, and the weather during our stay at the forks was rather unsettled. The total fall of the river, according to these figures, is 560 feet, giving a slope of four feet to the mile for its entire length, which, judging from analogy with other western rivers, is about what might be expected from the appearance of the stream. The velocity of the current was estimated at about three miles an hour, as a general average, but there are several little rapids, as well as some rather long tranquil reaches.

Navigability of the river.

The river, from Dease Lake to the Liard, may easily be descended in two days, but the ascent is a comparatively slow process, depending much on the height of the water, and when the bars and beaches are not bare for tracking is a tedious affair. It is possible that the river



G. M. D.—Photo., June 19, 1887.

DEASE RIVER ABOVE "FIRST LAKE," LOOKING WEST.

might be navigated by small stern-wheel steamers of good power, as there are no insuperable obstacles, but doubtful whether such an enterprise would be a remunerative one, even if the traffic were to assume proportions much greater than at present. Such goods as are now required at McDame Creek (fifty-five and a-half miles below Dease Lake by the course of the stream) and at the little trading post at the mouth of the river, are easily taken down stream in large flat-bottomed boats, which go back light, by poling and tracking, without great difficulty. The boating on the river has been done principally by crews of Coast Indians, who are engaged and brought into the interior for the purpose.

Upper part of the river.

On leaving Dease Lake, the river is a small stream, estimated to average from 100 to 150 feet only in width, with a general middle depth of about three feet. It is extremely tortuous and rather swift, meandering in a wide, flat valley. At about eight miles from the lake, it may be said distinctly to enter the mountains, the valley at the same time gradually narrowing and becoming bordered by mountains from 4500 to 5000 feet in height, which, on the 19th of June, still bore much snow on their summits. At about thirteen miles from Dease Lake, it expands into a little lake about a mile and three-quarters in length, and between this and the mouth of Cottonwood Creek it flows through three more similar lake-like expansions, which are, respectively, a mile and a-half, two miles and one mile in length. These are probably formed in all cases by the partial blocking of the valley by *débris* brought in by tributary streams, of which Cottonwood Creek itself is the last and most important. These lakes constitute somewhat serious impediments to navigation, as they freeze over in the autumn long before the ice takes on the river, and remain frozen till late in the spring.

Small lakes.

The mountains by which the valley is hemmed in on both sides from *First Lake* to the Cottonwood, are very rough and high, and chiefly, if not entirely, composed of granitoid rocks. About three miles and a-half north-west of *Second Lake* is a remarkable broken summit, with a height estimated at 7500 feet, which, from the peculiarity of its form, has been named *Anvil Mountain.* Running parallel with this and *Third Lake* is a straight, well-defined range, the higher peaks of which attain an equal elevation, and which, for the sake of distinction and in consequence of the long slopes of broken rocks which descend from it, has been indicated on the map as the *Skree Range.* It is probable that actual measurement will show that several of the peaks in this vicinity exceed 8000 feet. The vegetation was observed to be further advanced as soon as the Dease River was fairly entered, showing how great must be the effect of the ice which lingers on Dease

Lake, in its immediate vicinity. There is also evidence of a less abundant rainfall along the river.

Tributaries.

Dease River rapidly increases in size, and after the lake is left, soon doubles its volume, owing to the number of affluent streams, of which Cottonwood Creek is the first which may be called a river. This stream occupies an important valley, which may be observed to run for many miles in a north-westward direction, bordered by continuous high ranges. It is remarkable that no paying deposits of gold have ever been found either on this or on Eagle River, which enters the Dease from the south about four miles further down. Eagle River also flows between high mountains, and its valley appears to be parallel to, and analogous with, that occupied by Dease Lake. It is evidently the "Christie River" of McLeod,* but this name has entirely passed out of use, and it appears hopeless to endeavour to reinstate it. Cottonwood Creek is shown on Arrowsmith's maps, according to McLeod and Campbell, but is not named.

Terraces.

Rock exposures are unfrequent in the banks of the portion of Dease River above described, though stratified gravel deposits are often cut into. There is also a considerable development of terraces at high levels on the sides of some of the mountains, particularly in the part of the valley which runs along the base of the Skree Range. Well marked terraces are here seen on the west side of the valley, at an estimated height of 2000 feet above the river, or about 4600 feet above the sea.

Cottonwood Creek to McDame.

Immediately below the mouth of Cottonwood Creek is the Cottonwood Rapid, in which the course of the river is impeded by a number of boulders. The rapid is not a formidable one, or at all dangerous to run, with ordinary care. The river below Cottonwood Creek runs nearly due east for about ten miles, with a rather strong current. It then turns more to the northward, and after making several large flexures, reaches Sylvester's Landing, at the mouth of McDame Creek, in about eight miles. In this reach the current is slack, and the river averages 300 feet in width. The flat land of the river-valley is rather wide in this part of its length, but the mountains to the north and south are high and bold, many of the summits ranging from 6000 to 7000 feet. The lower slopes of the mountains are usually light, and in general thickly wooded, but their higher parts are treeless, and from the quantity of snow borne by them in June, must retain some snow throughout the summer. Immediately opposite the mouth of McDame Creek, is a remarkably prominent and abrupt rocky mountain, which it is proposed to name *Sylvester Park.* It height was estimated at 7000 feet, but the circumstances did not admit of its measurement.

---

* I have endeavoured in all cases to identify the original names given by the first explorers in this country, and to ascertain as well the native names of places, but where these have passed entirely out of use by the miners and traders now in the country, it becomes necessary to drop them, though in so doing the strict law of priority is, no doubt, transgressed.

Sylvester's Landing.

Sylvester's Landing is the point of supply for the miners on McDame Creek, also a post for Indian trade, and there are here a few log houses and store buildings. Mr. R. Sylvester has been resident here for a number of years, and readily gave us all the information and advice in his power. McDame Creek was discovered to be auriferous in 1874. It has since been constantly worked, and, with its tributaries, has yielded much gold, but is now believed to be nearly exhausted. Its valley is wide and important, running north-westward for about seven miles, and then turning nearly due west. At the angle thus formed, a low, wide pass leads through the mountains to the north-eastward, where it connects with the valley of the Dease. The appearance of this pass, as seen from a distance, is such as to suggest that the Dease River itself may at some former period have flowed through it.

McDame Creek mountains.

The mountains bordering McDame Creek, viewed from Sylvester's Landing, are singularly different from any before met with. They are evidently composed for the most part of limestone, and characterized by the occurrence of long, bare slopes of shattered rock-fragments. They are scarcely at all wooded, and in this respect resemble the bare limestone crests of parts of the Rocky Mountains in more southern latitudes.

Cultivation.

Potatoes and turnips of large size are grown every season without difficulty on McDame Creek.

Tributaries below McDame.

Nine miles below Sylvester's, the Dease makes its great bend toward the north, the intervening portion of the river somewhat changing its character from that above described, rock exposures being comparatively frequent in its banks and bed, where they produce several little rapids. Four-mile Creek enters from the south at somewhat less than the specified distance below Sylvester's. It appears to be the "Stuart River" of McLeod, shown on Arrowsmith's map of 1850, but neither on this nor on that of 1854 is McDame Creek indicated. Sylvester's Trail to Turnagain or Black River (Muddy River of miners) runs up this valley, and follows a tributary—Sheep Creek—to the south-eastward, passing near the base of *Sheep Mountain*, a high rugged peak estimated at 8000 feet, situated about five miles and a-half south of the Dease. The distance to the trading outpost on Turnagain River is estimated at ninety miles, but is probably less. Horses are employed in packing over the trail.

Trail to Black River.

Rapid River.

The valley of the Rapid River joins that of the Dease at its great bend, just alluded to; but the stream, running parallel with the Dease for some distance, enters it several miles lower down, and its actual confluence was not observed. Beyond the great bend the mountains near the river decrease rather notably in height and abruptness, and at the same time retreat from the vicinity of the river, the valley becoming very wide, and long, hummocky slopes, or groups of low hills, coming in between the river and the mountains.

Dry belt east of Cassiar Mountains.

The northerly course of the river here carries it very obliquely through the eastern portion of the Cassiar Range. The precipitation in this part of the valley is evidently inconsiderable. The quantity of snow resting upon the mountains was observed to be very small, and here Sylvester successfully winters his horses, without cutting hay or otherwise providing for them, the depth of snow in winter being so small that it does not seriously interfere with grazing. This favoured district is, in fact, homologous with that in the vicinity of Telegraph Creek, being in the dry lee of the Cassiar Range, just as that is in a similar situation with respect to the Coast Mountains, Much of the valley, with the slopes of the hills, is open or partially wooded with groves of black pine *(P. Murrayana)* and aspen poplar. The grass has the tussocky bunch-grass character usually found in dry regions, and it is intermixed with the small sage (*Artemisia frigida.)* The bear-berry *(Arctostaphlyos uva-ursi)* is not uncommon, and the strawberry and lupin *(Lupinus Nootkatensis)* were in flower. *Anemone patens* was here also observed for the first time, but long past flowering. Making allowance for the time occupied in reaching this place from Telegraph Creek, the progress of vegetation here was palpably less advanced, but the showing was still a remarkable one for the latitude, elevation and distance from the sea of the region.

Dease below Rapid River.

Below the Rapid River the Dease changes its character considerably, becoming relatively wide, with numerous gravel-bars and in some places many islands, with frequent "drift piles" or accumulations of timber. Terraces are well shown on the sides of the mountains and reach a height of about 2000 feet above the river.

French Creek.

A few miles before reaching the second great bend, a stream joins from the west, which has become known to the miners as French Creek, and is probably the "Detour River" of old maps. It rises on the north-east slope of the Cassiar Mountains, and is not large.

Lower part of the Dease.

The last main reach of the Dease is that which extends from the second great bend to its mouth, a distance of thirty-one miles in a direction of N. 55° E. Though the course of the river is far from being direct, the general bearing leaves the base of the Cassiar Range nearly at a right angle. The country becomes low and uninteresting, and assumes a rather dreary aspect, being covered generally with forest of inferior growth, often degenerating into swamp on northern aspects, and with only occasional grassy openings on slopes with sunny exposures. In descending this part of the river, the mountains soon become invisible from the river-valley, which is bordered by undulating lowlands, or low diffuse hills which rise to a plateau at some miles distant, from 400 to 500 feet above the stream. Banks of frozen soil were seen in one or two places beneath a peaty or mossy covering. The climate is evidently somewhat more humid than before and less favourable to vegetation. The current of the river is rather swift, and there are two or three inconsiderable rapids, but none of importance till within about four miles of the mouth, where there are several strong rapids, which at certain stages of the water are reported to be dangerous, and in which all our boats shipped more or less water. Terraces, as much as 300 feet in height, approach the river in some places in this part of its course, and when cut into generally show stratified gravels, which sometimes rest directly on low exposures of rock.

Larch.

The larch *(Larix Americana)* was first seen five miles below the second great bend, and below this place becomes quite abundant in cold, swampy spots, where it grows with the black spruce *(Picea nigra)*.

Blue River.

Blue River (the "Caribou River" of Campbell) joins the Dease twelve miles below the second great bend. It is a stream fifty feet wide at the mouth, with clear water, and derives its supply from the north-eastern slopes of the Cassiar Range, to the north of French Creek.

"Lower Post."

The "Lower Post," which is the furthest outwork of "civilization" or trade in this direction, is situated at the edge of a terrace forty feet in height on the left bank of the Laird, about half a mile above the mouth of the Dease. It is of a very unpretentious character, consisting of a few low log buildings, in the vicinity of which the woods have been entirely destroyed by fire.

The soil is poor near the post and the climate evidently unfavourable, but potatoes and turnips have been grown here in small patches.

Opening and closing of the river.

The Liard River is here said to open, as a rule, from the 1st to the 5th of May, though in 1887 this did not occur till the 18th of that month. In the autumn of 1886 it was frozen over on November 21st.

Mr. Egnell, in sole charge, received us on our arrival here with all distinction possible, displaying his Union Jack and firing a salute from his fowling piece. Before leaving we were indebted to him for many other courtesies, all of which are here gratefully acknowledged.

Geology of the Dease River.

Rocks west of granite range.

It would be impossible, without the expenditure of much time, to make anything like a complete geological section on the line of the Dease, in consequence of the infrequency of rock-exposures on the river itself and the distance and rough character of the bordering mountain-slopes. The main geological features are, however, sufficiently apparent. For about twelve miles below the lake, the rocks composing the mountains seem to be referable to the same Palæozoic series, which has been described as occurring on Dease Lake, but the exposures examined appeared to be somewhat more highly altered, and in some cases to approach the character of crystalline schists. One bedded rock is probably a diabase, with somewhat lustrous division planes and kernels of epidote.

Granite rocks of Cassiar Mountains.

Beyond the point above defined, at the first little lake, a granitic area is entered on, which may be regarded as constituting the axis of the Cassiar Range, and which extends on the river to the mouth of the Cottonwood, constituting the entire Skree Range, and apparently also Anvil Mountain and the surrounding high mountain region, with a transverse width of about thirteen miles. The granite here seen differs somewhat from that found on the Stikine in being more highly quartzose and occasionally garnetiferous. Mica is present in great abundance, and is in some specimens black, in others of characteristic pale, silvery colours. The existence of distinctly gneissic rocks was not ascertained, but the lithological character of the series resembles that of the lowest rocks of Shuswap Lake and other districts in the interior of British Columbia to the south, which have been provisionally referred to the Archæan.

East edge of granites.

The valley of Cottonwood Creek appears to coincide with the north-eastern edge of the granites for a number of miles. The mountains to the north of it, and extending eastward along the north side of the Dease, are evidently composed of stratified rocks, including important beds of limestone, the average dip being about N. 45° E. < 30°. The northern spur of the mountain which terminates the Skree Range, opposite the mouth of Cottonwood Creek, shows the overlap of the stratified rocks upon the granites at a considerable height above the river. The mountains which run southward on both sides of Eagle River valley seem to be also granitic for the most part, though a greenish-gray felsite was collected on the river from the northern spur of the mountain to the east of the valley.

Rocks of McDame Creek mountains.

Little was ascertained respecting the rocks composing the mountains between Eagle River and Sylvester's Landing, but granite does not reappear in them. The range to the east of McDame Creek is largely composed of limestone, which, striking in a north-west and south-east direction, constitutes also the mountains on the south side of the Dease. The dip is generally westward, at varying angles, and the limestones are associated with reddish shales, and near the mouth of Rapid River were observed to be interbedded with dolomitic layers and calcareous schists. The total thickness of the strata brought to the surface along this part of the river must be very considerable. The lithological resemblance is close to the upper part of the Palæozoic section on the Bow Pass, including the Banff, Intermediate and Castle Mountain limestones of Mr. McConnell (Annual Report, 1886, part D). Limestones near the western or upper part of the river-section contain numerous obscure fossils, including brachiopods, corals, and apparently a sponge-like organism. I also satisfied myself of the occurrence of *Fusulina*, on weathered surfaces, proving the Carboniferous age of the rocks in question. The pure limestones are usually gray and are not highly crystalline.

Fusulina.

The mountains bordering the valley in the north-and-south part of its course, between the first and second great bends, appear to be composed throughout of similar rocks, though those on the west side are much better exposed than those on the east.

Confused exposure.

Eleven miles south of the second great bend, on the right bank of the river, is a low, rocky cliff, about fifteen feet above the water, capped by about ten feet of bedded white silts. The rocks are blackish, sandy shales, rather hard in some places, carbonaceous, and holding a little impure lignite. They are extremely irregular in dip, and are broken and jumbled up with a hard, gray quartzite, which is seen in places as the underlying rock, but is even then singularly shattered. The aspect of the shales is that of those of the Tertiary rocks, and it is possible that this locality represents an old shore-line, but more probable that the rocks form part of an ancient slide, or are upon the line of disturbance of a fault.

Possibly Triassic rocks.

At the second great bend there are a few exposures of a peculiar character, consisting of regularly bedded, dark, calcareous, flaggy argillites, alternating with gray, flaggy and massive limestones. Lithologically, these much resemble the Triassic of the West Coast, but no fossils could be found, though carefully sought for, and the evidence is quite too imperfect for the reference of the beds. The limestone is rather cherty, and gives out a fetid odour on being struck. The beds, as a whole, appear to form a syncline.

Schists and slates of lower river.

From the second great bend to the mouth of the Dease, the underlying rocks consist of gray and black schists, the former generally calc-schists, and the latter more or less highly carbonaceous. They are interbedded with thin limestones, which often weather brown. The calc-schists are frequently glossy, and in some places form very thin, paper-like layers. Some of these rocks closely resemble those met with at the "Grand Rapid" on the Stikine (p. 53.) The general strike is north-west by south-east, but the direction and angle of dip is very varied, and the beds are frequently much disturbed and twisted, and traversed by veins of quartz and calcite. There are probably frequent repetitions of the same horizon, but the general arrangement may be synclinal, the dark shales and schists occupying the higher position, and being most abundant about the middle of this length of the river-section. Graptolites were found in the dark shales, particularly at a locality in a north bend of the river, eleven miles westward in a direct line from the mouth, and in appearance the whole series is much like that of the Cambrian calc-schists and Cambro-Silurian graptolite-shales of the Kicking Horse (Wapta) valley, west of the summit, on the line of the Canadian Pacific Railway.

Comparison with rocks to south.

The general aspect and association of the rocks to the east of the granite axis of the Cassiar Range, closely resembles that of the Rocky Mountains about the 51st parallel, but differs in the large proportion of metamorphic materials of volcanic origin, which, from the *débris* brought down by streams, must be even more abundant than the exposures along the river would indicate. The difference is paralleled by the similar change which is met with on the 51st degree of latitude, in passing from the Rocky Mountains proper to the interior plateau of British Columbia.

Note on graptolites by Prof. Lapworth.

A small collection of graptolites, made at the point above indicated, has been submitted by Mr. J. F. Whiteaves to Prof. Charles Lapworth, of Mason College, Birmingham, who has kindly examined them, and furnishes the following note:—

"The graptolites collected by Dr. Dawson from the Dease River are identical with those examined by me from the rocks of the Kicking Horse Pass, some time last year. The species I notice in the Dease River collection are:—

Diplograptus euglyphus (Lapworth).
Climacograptus, comp., *antiquus* (Lapworth).
Cryptograptus tricornis (Carruthers).
Glossograptus ciliatus (Emmons).
Didymograptus, comp. *sagittarius* (Hall).
New form allied to *Cœnograptus*.

Age of the fauna.

"The graptolite-bearing rocks are clearly of about middle Ordovician age. They contain forms which I would refer to the second or Black

River Trenton period, *i.e.*, they are newer than the Point Lévis series and older than the Hudson and Utica groups. The association of forms is such as we find in Britain and Western Europe, in the passage-beds between the Llandeilo and Caradoc limestones. The rocks in Canada and New York with which these Dease River beds may best be compared are the Marsouin beds of the St. Lawrence valley and the Norman's Kill beds of New York. The Dease River beds may, perhaps, be a little older than these.

" Mr. C. White described some graptolites from beds in the mountain regions of the west, several years ago, which may belong to the same horizon as the Dease River zones, though they have a somewhat more recent aspect.

" The specific identification of the Dease River fossils I regard as provisional. While the species correspond broadly with those found in their eastern equivalents, they have certain peculiarities, which may, after further study or on the discovery of better or more perfect specimens, lead to their separation as distinct species or varieties.

" It is exceedingly interesting to find graptolites in a region so far removed from the Atlantic basin, and also to note that the typical association of Llandeilo-Bala genera and species is still retained practically unmodified."

Tertiary strata.

Overlying these old rocks, in several places at about eight miles from the mouth of the Dease, are shaly clays and coarse, soft sandstones, associated with which a thin bed of lignite was observed. These are evidently Tertiary, and referable to the series afterwards found more extensively developed on the Liard, above the mouth of the Dease. Some very obscure remains of leaves were noticed, but none were collected. The beds dip at various angles, sometimes as high as 15°, and thus appear to have been, to some extent, affected by flexure subsequent to their deposition. It is not improbable that a considerable part of the higher plateau by which the river is here bordered on both sides, is composed of these newer rocks resting upon the upturned edges of the schists.

Drift deposits and terraces.

Some notes respecting the superficial geology of the Dease have already been given in connection with the general description of the river. It now only remains to add the following general observations.

The scarped banks along the upper part of the river, to the first great bend, generally show stratified sands and gravels only, all or most of which may be classed as old river-gravels. Between the first and second great bends, well bedded, yellowish-white silts appear and are frequently exposed. The bedding is sometimes inclined and large boulders are occasionally enveloped in the silts, which are in some places seen to rest upon and pass into true boulder-clay, while they are generally capped by a variable thickness of stratified gravels. The silts, occasionally, rest directly upon the underlying rocks, and in other places have been removed, so that the gravels lie upon the boulder-clay or upon the underlying rocks. Below the second great bend, the silts still occur, but are not so important, being largely replaced by stratified sands and gravels. The approximate level of the highest observed beds of the silt formation may be stated at 2400 feet above the sea. The highest observed terraces on the sides of the mountains have an estimated elevation of about 4600 feet. Glaciated rock-surfaces were observed in a single locality, a few miles below the mouth of McDame Creek. They appeared to indicate a flow of ice eastward or down the valley, but were not sufficiently distinct to afford completely satisfactory evidence on this point.

UPPER LIARD RIVER.

Proceedings at mouth of Dease.

We arrived at the little post at the mouth of the Dease on June 23rd, in rain, which continued during the whole of the next day, rendering it impossible to obtain observations, which were here necessary. On the morning of the 25th, however, I secured a fair series of observations, and having completed such arrangements as we had to make before entering the entirely untravelled country to the north, left the same afternoon. Mr. McConnell was here detached, with two men and a boat, for the examination of the Lower Liard. We had arranged that a couple of local Indians should accompany each party for the purpose of assisting at portages and acting as guides, but those who went with us deserted after a few days, and we afterwards learned that Mr. McConnell's Indians behaved in the same manner.

Country near the confluence.

The country about the confluence of the Dease and Liard is low and uniform, rising from the rivers, in a series of more or less 'regular terraces, to a plateau 400 feet or more above the water-level, or approximately 2500 feet above the sea. The extent of this low country is considerable.

The name Liard.

The name of the Liard River, or Rivière aux Liards, refers to the abundance of the cottonwood or poplar, and was no doubt originally given to its lower portion. This name has been corrupted to "Deloire," in which form it is generally in use by the miners of the Cassiar country. It is often spoken of as the West Branch by traders on the Mackenzie, and has also been named the Mountain River, and sometimes the Great Current River or Courant-fort. It is called Too-ti' by the

Indians of the country along its upper part, while, according to Petitot, the Indians nearer the Mackenzie name it Eréttchichié and Thètta-déssè.*

Rivers hitherto unsurveyed.

The Liard River, though one of the principal affluents of the great Mackenzie, has remained up to the present time practically unknown, or at least undescribed, though sketched from observations by officers of the Hudson's Bay Company on Arrowsmith's maps, and copied from those on other maps. It has long been in use as an avenue of communication by the Company, but since the abandonment of the posts to the west of the Rocky Mountains, its upper part has been traversed only at rare intervals by a few prospectors and miners from the Cassiar district. With Mr. McConnell's work on the lower part of the river, and the examination of its upper part here reported on, we now have a survey extending from Fort Simpson, at its mouth, to one of its furthest sources, in Finlayson Lake.

Previous knowledge of the Liard.

This river and the Frances appear to have been ascended by McLeod, about 1834, as far as Simpson Lake, but in 1840 Mr. R. Campbell explored the same route to Frances and Finlayson lakes (as subsequently mentioned in greater detail), and obtained the most accurate geographical information available to the present time. Sir J. Richardson, however, in his Arctic Searching Expedition (1851) gives such particulars of the Liard as he was able to gather from hearsay (Vol. I., p. 167 ; II., p. 203), and mentions having received in 1848, while on the Mackenzie, Honolulu papers of late date by this route from the Pacific. On the older maps, the Black or Turnagain River is designated as the main continuation of the Liard, but it is much smaller than the "North-west Branch" of these maps, to which the name is now applied, In the present report that part of this branch above the confluence of the Dease is, for purposes of description, distinguished as the Upper Liard.

Size of the river.

The Upper Liard, just above the mouth of the Dease and opposite the post previously referred to, is 840 feet in width, and on the 24th of June, 1887, was found to have a maximum velocity of 4·54 miles per hour. The river was not cross-sectioned, but, with an estimated depth of six feet for one-third of its width, the quantity of water carried would amount to about 19,000 cubic feet per second.† This may be regarded as a rough approximation for the mean stage of the river, which, when in flood, probably carries at least double this volume of water. It is a turbid yellowish stream, and contrasts in this respect with the clearer water of the Dease, which river, at its confluence with the Liard, probably carries about half the volume of water above assigned to the latter.

---

* Bulletin de la Société de Géographie, vol. X., p. 152.

† Estimated by approximate formula, Trautwine's Engineers' Pocket-book, 1882, p. 562. The depth above assigned to the river is probably too small.

Character of Liard and Frances Rivers.

From the mouth of the Dease River to the confluence of the Frances River, the general bearing of the Liard is nearly due north-west, the distance, in a straight line, being thirty-three miles, or following the course of the river, forty-five miles. The Frances River, which was followed from the last-named point, disregarding its minor flexures, has a nearly direct north-and-south course. A straight line drawn from the mouth of the Dease to the lower end of Frances Lake is ninety-four miles in length, but the distance between these points, following the flexures of the river, is one hundred and thirty-five miles. Almost every foot of this distance had to be made by poling or tracking against the rapid stream, and as our boats were heavily laden and not as well suited in build as they might have been for the work, the ascent to Frances Lake occupied twelve days, or an average distance of about eleven miles a day only. As the river was entirely unknown to us and some time was unavoidably lost in reconnoitering rapids and selecting portages, besides the delays incident to surveying work and geological examination, I believe that, with a good boat and crew, the ascent to the lake might be made in about half the above time at the same stage of water. In very high water it would be extremely difficult to pass through some parts of the cañons, while at exceptionally low stages of water, when it would be possible to substitute tracking for poling in many places, the distance might be accomplished in even less time.

Lower Cañon.

Six miles above the mouth of the Dease, by the course of the river, the entrance of the *Lower Cañon* is reached. The full height of the plateau through which the river here cuts is about 500 feet, but banks of this height seldom abut directly on the river. The upper parts of these banks are composed of stratified sands and gravels, but the lower part of the gorge is cut through shaly and slaty rocks, which are perpendicular or form very steep slopes, averaging about a hundred feet in height. The cañon is three miles in length, and at high water it is said to be necessary to portage the whole of this distance. We were obliged to lighten the boats and make four small portages over rocky points, where the current was dangerously swift. The latitude, observed at noon near the middle of the cañon, was 60° 01′ 06″. Finding that we were so near the northern boundary of British Columbia (Lat. 60°), we made a small cairn of stones on a prominent rocky point, in the centre of which a post was erected, on which the latitude was marked. The 60th parallel may be said to coincide almost exactly with the lower end of the cañon.

Rocks of Lower Cañon.

The rocks seen in the Lower Cañon resemble those described as characterizing the lower part of the Dease River and Dease Lake, being shales or schists, which in some places show slaty structure. They are generally dark with plumbaginous matter. With these are associated gray, somewhat glossy schists, and calcareous schists which pass in some places into pretty pure, thin-bedded limestones. Quartzites are also present, and all the rocks are occasionally locally silicified. The whole series is much disturbed and contorted, and is broken by innumerable small, irregular seams and veins of quartz and calcite, with some dolomite, though no well marked or important lodes were seen. Galena is reported to have been found in some of the veins, and to have yielded a small return in silver on assay.

River from Cañon to Frances.

Above the Lower Cañon the river continues swift, the current averaging about four miles an hour, and much exceeding this rate in many reaches. It is wide and shallow, and in places becomes a complete maze of islands and gravelly, half-submerged bars, causing much difficulty and loss of time from the frequent necessity of crossing from one to another of these to avoid under-cut banks, with water too deep for poling. Our actual travelling time from the Dease to the mouth of the Frances, deducting all stoppages, was thirty-eight hours and a quarter.

The river-valley averages about two miles in width, and is cut out to a depth of 300 feet or more in the plateau, which occasionally rises directly from the river-bank to its full height, though the stream is usually bordered by terraces of inferior height, alternating with low flats, which occupy the concave sides of the bends. The higher ground is generally wooded with spruce, while the black pine *(Pinus Murrayana)* is abundant on dry terraces, and groves of cottonwood of medium size often occur on the flats. Aspen poplar is not uncommon, and a few birch and larch trees were seen. Little of the timber is of useful size or quality. The dry bars and gravelly flats were, when we passed, gay with *Epilobium latifolium*, *Oxytropis campestris*, *O. Lamberti* and *Dryas Drummondii*, and the wild roses were rapidly coming into flower.

Rancheria River.

About midway between the Dease and Frances a small river enters from the south-westward, which has been called the Rancheria River, but of which I do not know the native name. It appears to debouch by several mouths when in flood, and apparently rises in the eastern slopes of the Cassiar Range. A few miles above this, on the opposite side of the river, a small lake, reputed to be well stocked with fish, is reported. About seven miles below the mouth of the Frances, on the south-west bank, is an old Indian camping place, which is said to be frequented at certain seasons by the Tahl-tan Indians for purposes of trade. It is reached by these people by some overland route which crosses the Cassiar Mountains to the north of the Dease River.

Confluence of Liard and Frances.

The Liard is full of islands at its confluence with the Frances, rendering it difficult to estimate the relative importance of the two streams, but they appeared to carry about an equal quantity of water. The Liard is, however, evidently more subject to freshets; Frances Lake doubtless serving to regulate the flow of the Frances River, the water of which is a clear, pale, amber colour, and does not thoroughly mingle with the yellowish, turbid water of the Liard for some miles. Above the confluence, the Liard valley is seen to trend off in a south-westerly direction for ten miles or more, after which it again turns to the north-westward, and, from the scanty information available concerning it, seems to flow along the eastern side of the northern continuation of the Cassiar Range, from which it receives most of its water.

Sayyea Creek.

On comparing the statements of the few miners I have seen who have ascended this river, it appears that Sayyea Creek, which is an inconsiderable stream, flows in from the west about fifty-five miles above the mouth of the Frances. Good gold "prospects" were found on this creek in 1875, a number of pieces worth ten dollars having been obtained, but little work has ever been done. Of a party of miners who spent the winter of 1874-75 in its vicinity four died of scurvy. Of the other tributaries of the Liard, which must be numerous, I have been unable to ascertain anything authentic.

Names of Liard and Frances rivers.

Respecting the names of the Liard and Frances rivers, it should be mentioned that Campbell called that which is now known as the Liard the "Bell River," after Mr. J. Bell of the Hudson's Bay Company. Under this designation it appears on Arrowsmith's map of 1854, the name Liard being applied to the branch now known as the Frances. Usage has, however, changed the first nomenclature, and it is undesirable to attempt to revert to the original names, as, irrespective of the question of relative size, the physical characteristics of the Liard below the confluence are undoubtedly continued on the west rather than on the east branch above that point. The Indian name of the Frances is identical with that of the Dease, being Too-tsho-tooa', or "big lake river."

Rocks above the Cañon.

Rocks like those of the Lower Cañon are seen at intervals for about two miles above its head, beyond which, for about three miles, stratified gravels and sands only appear in the banks. Six miles from the cañon Tertiary clays of whitish and gray colours, and associated with impure lignite, are first met with, and these continue to appear here and there along the river as far as the Frances. The thickest bed of lignite observed was about three feet, four miles below the Frances. The lignite is generally impure and often very distinctly laminated. It resembles in character the lignites of the Miocene of British Columbia, and the associated clays and soft shales are similar in character to those of that formation. Numerous boulders of basalt are found along this part of the river, and the basalt was observed to form a mural cliff, at a height of about 300 feet above the river, at a place just below the mouth of the Rancheria River. This rock evidently overlies the lignite-bearing beds. The shaly clays and lignites show evidence of considerable disturbance, and dip in some places at rather high angles. This may be due to the action of old land-slides along the banks of the river, but appears to be rather too constant to be satisfactorily accouted for in this way.

Lignite.

Basalt.

Near the mouth of the Frances the white silts again become a prominent feature, though scarcely seen lower down the river. They overlie the Tertiary rocks and hold concretions of various forms here and there. They are capped by the usual stratified sands and gravels, which generally have a yellowish or rusty colour.

White silts.

The gravel bars and the shores of this part of the Liard are almost half composed of rolled quartz pebbles, which have evidently been derived from veins traversing relatively soft schistose rocks like those of the cañon. The great quantity of such vein material present in this district may be regarded as a favourable indication in respect to mineral development. Some small bars have paid to work along this part of the river, and gold is also found in some layers of the gravel deposit which overlies the older rocks along the cañon and above it, where "wages" at $4 a day can be made. The amount of cover which it soon becomes necessary to remove in following the paying layers, has prevented extensive mining, but probably these gravels might be advantageously worked as a whole, by sluicing or by the hydraulic method.

Gold.

No general view of the country can be obtained from the river, owing to woods and the depth of the valley, but from high points of banks above the river, near the Frances, a large area may be overlooked. Thus seen, the country is found to be a wide, rolling plateau, with an average elevation of about 500 feet above the river, or say 2700 feet above the sea. It rises here and there, however, in broad, rounded swells, or flat-topped higher plateaux with steep edges, anda considerable part of this higher ground is at an elevation of about 1000 feet above the river. The plateau is everywhere wooded, except where intersected by grassy or mossy swamps of small area. There is a large triangular region of country of this kind between the Upper Liard and Dease, bounded to the westward by the front of the

General appearance of the country.

Cassiar Range Cassiar Range, the sharp, rocky peaks of which carry a considerable quantity of snow and run along the horizon line for many miles, but which, with the exception of a few outlying summits, is at a minimum distance of about twenty-five miles from the mouth of the Frances. The same low country runs in a north-northwestward direction, without apparent limit, forming the upper part of the Liard valley. To the eastward it is bounded, at a distance of about ten miles, by a comparatively low range of rounded mountains and hills, which, from the Indian name of one of its salient points to the northward, may be called the *Tses-ī-uh Range.* The part of this range nearest to the confluence of the Frances and Liard has an elevation estimated at about 3500 feet above the sea. Like other main features of the country, it runs in a north-northwest by south-southeast direction, but dies out completely before reaching the Upper Liard River, which, if continued, it would do at the Lower Cañon. It is probable, indeed, that the cañon is produced by the river cutting across the extension of the same ridge of rocks which produces these hills. The general uniformity of the plateau appears to be largely due to the Tertiary rocks, which doubtless underlie almost its entire area. The appearance of some of the flat-topped hills above alluded to is suggestive of the occurrence of sheets of basalt overlying the softer rocks. The forms of the Tses-ī-uh Mountains show that they are not thus composed, but Tertiary rocks may again occur beyond them, in the valley of the McPherson or Highland River, which is not far off.

Mountains in the east.

Tertiary plateau.

FRANCES RIVER.

Mouth of Frances to Middle Cañon

The general direction of the Frances, for nine miles from its mouth, is north-northwest. It then bends to the north-eastward, and in four miles the lower end of the Middle Cañon is reached. For the first few miles above its mouth the Frances is extremely tortuous, so much so that the distance following the actual course of the river to the foot of the cañon is twenty-two miles. This river, like the Liard, was at a medium stage near the end of June, 1887. Marks along the banks showed that it had been about six feet higher in the spring, and that it had since been falling. Its average width in this part is about 600 feet, and the rate of the current, at the medium stage above referred to, about four miles and a-half an hour.

Terrace.

The highest land immediately bordering on this part of the river is a terrace at a height of about 160 feet above it, the surface of which is in some places composed of almost pure sand, upon which open woods of *Pinus Murrayana* grow. Larch was observed to be moderately abundant in damp, shady localities and the banks were in some places diversified with flowers, of which *Potentilla fruticosa* and *Primula mistassinica* were specially noted.

Exposures in the banks. Numerous small exposures of Tertiary shales and clay, of gray, blackish and yellowish tints, occur along this part of the river. Lignite is strewn in great quantities over some of the bars, and though thin seams occur in places in the banks, it is probable that thicker ones exist in the bed of the river. The lignite often holds drops of fossil resin or amber. The Tertiary rocks are very generally covered by silts, like those already several times alluded to. In a bank near the mouth of the river, which gives a complete section from the top of the terrace above described, the lowest deposit consists of roughly stratified gravel and clay, with some glaciated boulders. This is followed by the silts, which are again in turn covered by stratified sands and gravels. The lowest deposit probably represents the boulder-clay, and resembles that of the Upper Pelly River, subsequently described.

Quartz is not so abundant a constituent of the gravel of the river-bars on this part of the Frances as it is on the Liard below, and no basalt blocks or boulders were observed here.

Middle Cañon. The *Middle Cañon*, as it may be called for the purpose of distinguishing it, is about three miles in length, the river being hemmed in by broken, rocky cliffs of 200 to 300 feet in height for the greater part of this distance. We took our boats up along the south-east bank, making four short portages of part of the stuff, and two of both boats and load, across narrow, rocky points. One portage of greater length, on the opposite bank, would overcome all the really bad water, but the banks on that side are rougher, and the whole force of the current sets against the cliff in one place in a dangerous manner. The total fall in the cañon is estimated at about thirty feet.

This cañon is evidently produced by the southern extremity of a second range of mountains parallel to the Tses-ī-uh Mountains, but to the west of that range. This southern spur, though submerged in the Tertiary and drift materials by which the general surface of the country is covered, nevertheless presents a rocky barrier to the passage of the river, and in this place constitutes the eastern margin of the Tertiary basin, no beds referable to which are seen further up the Frances. The range of mountains here referred to may, for convenience, be named the *Simpson Mountains.*

Rocks of the Cañon. The exposures in the lower part of this cañon show limestones, some of which are moderately pure, but others are nearly half composed of small, more or less rounded fragments of siliceous and schistose rocks. These weather to rough surfaces, and have a very peculiar aspect, as an intense pressure appears to have flattened the contained fragments parallel to a single direction. These limestones are associated with several varieties of calc-schists, with hard, grayish-blue, cherty quartzite, with schistose breccia, which appears to have been originally of volcanic origin, and with some pretty evident volcanic agglomerate. Further up, the rocks have been completely shattered and variously changed in appearance by solfataric or some similar action, some parts being bleached, while others are reddened by the deposition of iron, forming cliffs of a remarkably varied appearance. The upper gate of the cañon is composed of white cliffs of marble and quartzite, all much shattered. The marble and limestones are in places associated with red shales, resembling those found in a similar association on the Dease, near the eastern edge of the Cassiar Range, and the rocks of this part of the section are probably like those, of Carboniferous age. Specimens of

Fusulina.

Fusulina, with polyzoa, etc., are found in some of the limestones on microscopical examination. Stratigraphically, the rocks seen in the sections are all much confused and broken, and the angles of dip are very varied, though the strike may, in a general way, be given as north-northwest. The Simpson Mountains which are upon this line of strike are doubtless composed of rocks of the same character.

Beginning of mountainous country.

Above the Middle Cañon, the general course of the river is again north-northwestward for about twelve miles. It is here usually bordered by quite low land on both sides, and the valley between the southern end of the Simpson Mountains and northern part of the Tses-i-uh Range is about three miles in width. The wide, uniform plateau country is now, however, left behind, and we enter a generally mountainous region, though the highest summits in this immediate vicinity scarcely exceed 3000 feet above the river. Their forms are rather rounded and flowing, and the slopes of those on the east bank are nearly bare of trees, while the opposite range is generally wooded, but evidently with trees of small growth. The river itself is wide and deep with a rather slack current. A single exposure only, composed of gray-green, silvery schist, was seen along this part of the river.

Simpson Lake

Near the end of this reach of the river, two considerable streams enter on the west side, and on one or other of these, at no great distance from the river, Simpson Lake of McLeod and Campbell is situated. As the Indians who had accompanied us up from the mouth of the Dease had deserted before we reached this place, I was unable to ascertain any definite particulars respecting the lake, though it is reported to be a good one for fish. The position of Simpson Lake, as indicated by broken lines on the map, must therefore be regarded as quite uncertain. The same doubt applies to the Indian names of

Tributaries of the Frances.

several rivers tributary to the Frances above this point, for although one of the local Indians had made for us, upon a sheet of canvas used as a boat cover, an elaborate charcoal drawing of the whole system, it proved to be extremely difficult to recognize the features represented. The Indian map, such as it is, serves to show that the streams tributary to the Frances River rise in a number of lakes, some of which are reported to be of considerable size, and offer a most attractive field for further exploration. We were told, however, that none of the lakes in this region are equal in size to Frances Lake, for which we were heading, a statement borne out by the circumstance that both this and Dease Lake are known in their respective districts as Too-tsho, or "big lake," while the Frances and Dease rivers are, as already mentioned, both similarly named Too-tsho-tooa′, or "big lake river."

From the point just noted, the direction of the river changes to north-east, cutting across the direction of the Tses-Ī-uh range, which terminates at the edge of the river in low, wooded hills. The current is moderately swift throughout, and in one place the river is bordered on both sides by low, rocky banks, but no rapids are met with. This we named the *False Cañon.* One or possibly two streams enter from a valley which runs to the east of the range just mentioned, but they are not of large size. Grayish-green, quartzose mica-schist and greenish silvery schists were seen in one or two places, and in the low rocky banks above alluded to, blackish argillites and gray quartzites, of a less altered appearance than usual, but from which no fossils were obtained, occur.

False Cañon.

River above False Cañon.

From the end of this reach the general course of the stream again becomes north-northwest for about thirteen miles, running for the greater part of this distance parallel to, and a mile or two miles from the base of a mountain range, which comes in to the east of Tses-Ī-uh Range. The country to the west of the river is here either flat or characterized merely by low, rounded and wooded hills for many miles back, the eye ranging across this country to the continuation of the Simpson Mountains, which, with generally rounded forms and no striking summits, reach elevations of 6000 to 6500 feet. These mountains do not form a strictly connected range, but appear rather as a series of mountainous areas, separated by wide, low passes. The Indian map above referred to shows three or four lakes in this region, supplying a stream named *Too-tshī-too-a*, which flows into the Frances, reaching it probably just above the Upper Cañon. None of these lakes were visible from any point reached by us. On the opposite side, one stream of considerable size joins the Frances. This is supposed to be the *Agă-zi-za* of the Indians, and, if so, is represented as rising in

Lakes.

a chain of small lakes, some of which drain in an easterly direction to the Macpherson (*Eg is-e-too'-a*) River. The valley occupied by these lakes is a travelled route employed by the Indians.

Granite rocks.

The current is swifter in the upper than in the lower portion of this part of the Frances, and there are numerous islands in the river, but no rock-exposures occur. The mountains to the east of the river are high, but have blunt, rounded forms. Much bare rock shows in their sides, but there is no appearance of stratification, and this, with their form and colour, and the great abundance of that material found in the streams in this vicinity, renders it nearly certain that they are composed of granite.

Character of the mountains

The mountains so far met with in the vicinity of the Frances form rather isolated ranges or masses, which rise somewhat abruptly from generally low country, or are separated by wide valleys, the appearance being that of a mountain system partly buried in later deposits; though no Tertiary rocks, either in place or as loose fragments, are met with above the Middle Cañon. The granitic mountains last referred to form an outlying spur or buttress of the most important range of the district, the axis of which is here about twelve miles east of the river. This it is proposed to designate the *Too-tsho Range*.* The southernmost high summit observed was named, from its form, *Tent Peak*. It is situated in latitude 60° 52′ 45″, and has an altitude of 7860 feet above the sea.

Upper Cañon.

The river next makes an abrupt turn to the west for four miles, a mile and a quarter of this distance being occupied by a series of rapids, which are rocky and rather strong, and have a total fall of about thirty feet. The banks rise steeply from the river to heights of 100 to 200 feet, though the rocky cliffs along the water are of inconsiderable height, scarcely anywhere exceeding fifty feet. This place may be named the *Upper Cañon*, and is the last serious impediment to the navigation of the river. We found it necessary to make several short portages, but with a large boat and at a good stage of the river, it is probable that one portage of about 1000 feet in length, on the south bank, would overcome all the dangerous water, while the boat might be tracked up light. A stream, with moderate current at the mouth and about fifty feet wide, enters a short distance below the cañon, coming from the mountains to the north of Tent Peak. The rocks of the Upper Cañon comprise black, glossy calc-schists, black quartzite or chert, bluish limestone, and some green-gray, silvery schist. Similar rocks are seen again a couple of miles up the river, above the cañon,

Rocks of Upper Cañon.

---

* From the native name of Frances Lake. I was unable to ascertain the Indian name of the range, if indeed it has any such.

where a rapid occurs. The dips are all low, and so far as observed, uniformly in a northerly direction. Some of the schists are highly silicified by action subsequent to their deposition, and parts of all the rocks, including the limestone, are reticulated with narrow quartz seams. Near the upper part of the cañon some hard conglomerates occur, holding schistose fragments, as well as limestone pebbles in which crinoidal joints are observable. It is not improbable that two unconformable series of rocks occur here, but I was unable to find means of distinguishing them in the sections.*

Upper Cañon to Frances Lake.

From the Upper Cañon to Frances Lake, a distance of twenty-one miles and a-half in a straight line, the river maintains a northerly direction with considerable uniformity. It is deep, with a moderate current, for about eight miles, or to *Moose Island*, above which for ten miles the current is again swift, averaging from four and a-half miles to five miles an hour. It again becomes slack for a short distance below the lake. Some portions of this part of the river are much broken up by islands and gravel bars. The river-valley averages about ten miles in width, extending to the slopes of Too-tsho Range on the east, and being bounded to the westward by a series of rounded mountains, which diverge to the northward from the direction of the first-mentioned range, and run to the west of Frances Lake. These I propose to name the *Campbell Mountains*, for Mr. R. Campbell, whose initial exploratory trip through this country for the Hudson's Bay Company is elsewhere referred to at length.

Too-tsho Range.

The valley is partly occupied by terrace-flats, and partly by wooded hills or ridges with rounded or flowing forms, but which rise in some places to heights of several hundred feet. The Too-tsho Range is here very compact and regular, and runs due north-and-south, the higher summits reaching 6500 to 7000 feet, and carrying some snow, though nothing like true glacier-ice was anywhere seen. The lower slopes of the range toward the river-valley are singularly uniform and light. Two or three streams of some size enter the river from the eastward in this part of its course. All that could be gathered respecting these is shown on the map. The furthest north was named Tyer's River by Campbell, and is known to the Indians as *Pas-ka'*. The exact position of its mouth was not definitely ascertained.

Morainic ridges.

On approaching the lake, low ridges and irregular mounds begin to appear in the vicinity of the river, projecting through the lower terraces and suggesting the existence of morainic deposits. Large boulders also become abundant in the river-bed. No rock-exposures whatever were seen along this part of the river.

---

*If so, the rocks noted may represent the Cretaceous to which they are lithologically similar.

Travelling time on Frances River

Our actual working time on Frances River, from its mouth to the lake, was sixty-seven hours and a-half. The difference of level between Frances Lake and the mouth of the Dease is 477 feet. By assigning ninety feet of this to the fall in the three cañons, and dividing the remainder by the total length of the river (less the aggregate length of the cañons), we obtain an average rate of descent very slightly exceeding three feet to the mile, which is about what might be anticipated from the current met with in the river, as compared to that of other streams in the district.

FRANCES LAKE AND VICINITY.

Frances Lake.

The elevation of Frances Lake above the sea, as determined by a series of barometer observations extending from the 8th to the 16th of July, is 2577 feet. Three miles from its lower end, the lake bifurcates, forming two approximately equal and nearly parallel arms, with lengths of about thirty miles. The two arms are about eight miles apart, and are separated by a group of low, rounded mountains, the culminating point of which, with an elevation of 5230 feet, was named Simpson's Tower by Campbell, the lake itself receiving its name at the same time in honour of Lady Simpson. The eastern side of its east arm is bordered by the Too-tsho Range or hills attached to it, while the country to the west of the west arm rises more gradually to the bases of the Campbell Mountains, some miles distant. Though so far referred to as a single lake, this body of water is in reality entitled to be considered as a group of lakes. The upper end of the west arm, with a length of five miles and a-half, is separated from the main portion of the same arm by a river-like constriction over a mile in length, while the east arm is entered by a narrow and inconspicuous opening with a strong current flowing out, and the real extent of this arm is seen only after passing, for about seven miles, through a series of irregular basins and small lake-like expansions connected by narrows, in which a very perceptible current is found. It appears best, however, to retain Campbell's original name for the whole body of water, rather than to multiply names for which there is no immediate call.

Character of its valley.

Except in its bifid form, for which there are several parallels, and which results merely from the convergence of two valleys of similar characters, Frances Lake closely resembles a large number of lakes in the mountainous regions of British Columbia, and has the long narrow parallel-sided outline characteristic of lakes which occupy old valley-excavations, the drainage of which has become interrupted in various ways. In this case, as in a number of others, there can be little doubt, that the lake is held in by morainic accumulations. The great number of boulders near its outlet has already been referred to, and the lumpy, irregular mounds and ridges composed of detrital matter, on the lower seven miles of the east arm, as well as on the corresponding portion of the west arm, appear without doubt to represent moraines in a more or less degraded condition. The average width of the upper portions of both arms, above these interruptions, is pretty uniformly maintained at about a mile and a-half, such irregularities as occur being produced by gravelly and sandy flats a few feet above the water-level, which have been formed at the mouths of entering streams. The extent and uniformity of these points, is such as to show that the lake must have remained, during a long period, approximately at its present level. The most important of these low points is that which separates the upper part of the west arm, already referred to, and is due to the Finlayson River.* The next is produced by a second stream which enters on the same side five miles and a-half below. This stream is somewhat smaller than the Finlayson, and is known to the Indians as the *Il-es-too'-a.*

Country surrounding the lake.

Except along the upper part of the eastern side of the east arm, the mountains do not slope down abruptly to the shores of the lake. Elsewhere, the lake is almost continuously bordered by a terrace-like plateau, which is widest to the west, and has an average elevation of about 300 feet. This resembles the low country found about Dease Lake, though even more uniform and less sloping in character, and is not far from the same actual elevation above the sea in both cases. The streams entering the lake generally cut down through the edges of this plateau-like margin in deep narrow gorges, the sections in which show that it is composed largely of rock, though levelled up to some extent by the addition of superficial gravelly deposits. This fact appears to indicate that the lake, or the drainage level of the country was maintained for a very prolonged period at or near the height of this plateau before the base-level of erosion was so lowered as to permit of the excavation of the lower valleys in which the lake now lies. There is, in addition to this, a second lower terrace, not so well marked, and not often of great width, at an elevation of ninety feet above the lake. This is seen on both arms, and is composed of gravel and other detrital deposits. It is specially conspicuous about the mouths of the entering streams, and marks a later stage at which the water of the lake stood, for a relatively short time, subsequent to the glacial period.

Origin of terraces.

---

* So named by Campbell after Chief Factor Duncan Finlayson, afterwards a member of the H. B. Co. Board of Directors.

Picturesque scenery.

Few lakes which I have seen surpass Frances Lake in natural beauty, and the scenery of the east arm, bordered on the east by the rugged masses of the Too-tsho Range, is singularly striking. The mountains of this range are very varied in form, and a number of points surpass 7000 feet in height, while one was found to attain an elevation of about 9000 feet. This is named *Mount Logan*, for the late Sir W. E. Logan. Heavy masses of snow rest in some of the valleys, but no true glaciers are produced, a fact indicating a comparatively small snowfall. The broken outlines of this range contrast strongly with the rounded forms of the mountains to the west of the west arm, with which Simpson's Tower and associated hills, separating the two arms, also conform.

Terminations of the lake.

The west arm terminates in a nearly circular basin about a quarter of a mile in diameter, at one side of which a fair-sized river, easily navigable for boats, flows in. The east arm was not followed to its head, though its termination in low land was seen. Here also, according to Campbell's sketch, a considerable river, which he has named Thomas River, enters.

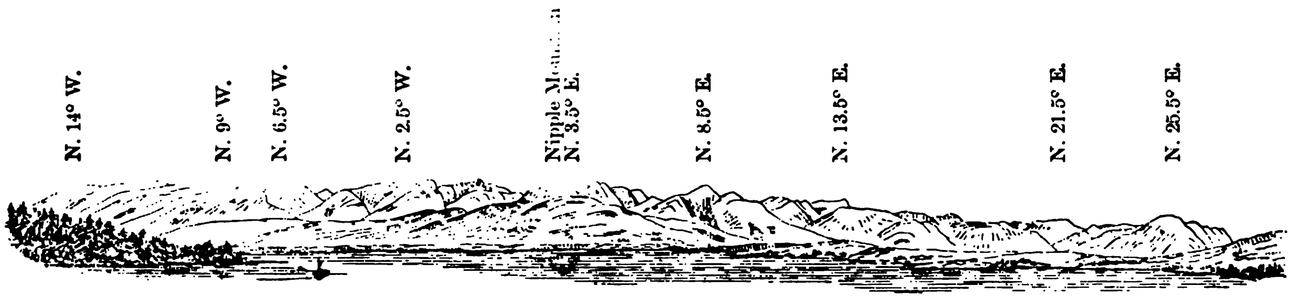
Upper parts tributary valleys.

The two valleys, the lower parts of which are occupied by the east and west arms of the lake, run on far beyond the heads of these arms. Each of the rivers flowing in these valleys (according to the Indian sketch already referred to) eventually bifurcates, and all four streams thus formed rise in lakes. The river flowing into the head of the west arm is named *Yus-sez'-uh*, and the lake on its western branch is known as *Us-tas'-a-tsho*. No name was obtained for the lake on its eastern branch, which is evidently, however, Macpherson Lake of Campbell.

Henry Thibert, who made a prospecting expedition up the west arm of Frances Lake and far up the river in question, some years ago, has kindly supplied me with some notes on it. He estimated the river, from the head of the arm to Macpherson Lake, to be about thirty-six miles in length, while Macpherson Lake is ten miles long. The first distance was, however, intended to include the windings of the stream. He did not visit Us-tas'-a-tsho, which, however, from the termination tsho (= big) is probably large. Us-tas is the name of the mythical culture-hero of the Tinné. The Indian name of Thomas River is *Too-tlas'*, the lake in which its eastern branch rises being named *Tus-tles-to*, the source of its western branch *Til-ĕ-i-tsho*. These lakes and connecting rivers are indicated by broken lines on the map, from Thibert's account and the Indian sketch of the country, combined with the observed positions of several of the mountain ranges.

Mountains to the north.

The mountains to the north in which these rivers rise, were too distant to enable us to fix them with any great accuracy from points occupied by us on Frances Lake, but the whole country in that direction,


N. 14° W.
N. 9° W.
N. 6.5° W.
N. 2.5° W.
Nipple Mountain
N. 3.5° E.
N. 8.5° E.
N. 13.5° E.
N. 21.5° E.
N. 25.5° E.

G. M. D. delt.

FIG. 5. OUTLINE SKETCH OF PART OF THE TOO-TSHO RANGE, FROM WEST SIDE OF FRANCES LAKE, AT ITS OUTLET.

(The figures placed above the various summits are true bearings.)

from such views as were obtained of it, appeared to be rugged and high. It was with great regret that we were obliged to abandon the idea of exploring these rivers further, but the summer was already so far advanced, that this was impracticable, in view of the journey still before us.

Rock exposures.

The water of Frances Lake is clear and of a pale brownish tint, and the lake is evidently very deep in its upper portions, though rather shallow where encumbered by the morainic accumulations already alluded to. Rock exposures are, as a rule, quite unfrequent along its shores, which are generally composed of gravel and sand. At the time of our visit it was about six feet below its extreme high-water level, and it does not appear to be subject to very great fluctuations. Driftwood is very abundant along some parts of the shores, particularly in the west arm, and it is probable that much of this is brought down by the river entering at the head of this arm. Lake-trout, whitefish, pike and suckers were found in the lake in considerable abundance.

Old Hudson's Bay post.

The site of the old Hudson's Bay post is just above the narrow entrance to the east arm, on the edge of the bank, facing westward. Though Mr. Campbell had given me an accurate description of its position, it was so completely overgrown with bushes and small trees, that it was discovered with difficulty. The outline of the old stockade, with bastions at the corners, is still visible, though all traces of the structure itself has disappeared. This post has been abandoned since 1851.

Forest.

All the lower country about Frances Lake is well wooded, and the mountains are also covered with forest, save where exceptionally steep and rocky, to a height of at least 1500 feet above the lake, while trees of smaller growth extend in the valleys considerably higher. The most abundant tree, here as elsewhere in the region, is the white spruce *(Picea alba)*. It frequently attains a diameter of two feet, growing tall and straight on low ground and in sheltered places. The black spruce *(Picea nigra)* is also abundant. The larch *(Larix Americana)* is characteristic of damp, cool, northern slopes, and birch *(Betula papyrifera)* is moderately abundant, though not large. The shores, and particularly the delta-flats at the mouths of streams, are characterized by groves of cottonwood (probably all referable here to *Populus balsamifera)* and black pine *(Pinus Murrayana)*.

Burnt country

Large tracts of country have been burnt over, many years ago, and extensive recent fires have swept the western side of the upper part of the east arm. Where a second growth has had time to spring up, it consists generally of mixed spruce, aspen and birch. Alders are common, but scarcely arboreal, along the borders of the lake. In the middle of July thickets of wild roses were seen in many places in full bloom.

General aspect of country.

Taken as a whole, the growth of the forest and appearance of the country is remarkably pleasing, considering the high and northern position of the lake. The only characteristic difference of the woods here, as compared with those of the interior of British Columbia about the 54th parallel, is the great abundance and depth of the soft, mossy and lichenous floor, which is everywhere found in them. The trees are also often well bearded with moss, affording evidence of a continuously moist atmosphere, to be accounted for by the almost daily occurrence of light showers and the great prevalence of clouded skies, which was found throughout this part of the country. As before noted, however, the snowfall cannot be great, nor is there any indication that the total annual precipitation is very considerable.

Geology of shores.

The infrequency of rock exposures along the shores rendered it difficult to obtain any connected idea of the geology of the lake, both arms of which appear, however, to occupy valleys excavated along the strike of comparatively soft black and grayish glossy schists, which are often calcareous and frequently interbedded with bluish limestone. In lithological appearance these rocks resemble those of the Cambro-Silurian, in which graptolites were found on Dease River, though no fossils were obtained here. The strike is parallel, so far as observed, to the directions of the arms, the prevailing dips being westward on the west arm, eastward on the east arm. The character of the harder and doubtless older rocks which occupy the centre of the anticline thus formed and compose Simpson's Tower and connected hills, was not ascertained.

Quartz veins numerous.

The high rugged central parts of the Too-tsho Range are composed largely or entirely of gray granite, pebbles and boulders of which are everywhere abundant, and particularly so along the beaches of the east arm. There is, too, a notable abundance of quartz along all the beaches of the lake, this material being derived from innumerable veins which traverse the schists in all directions, though most often found parallel to the bedding-planes, and generally assuming forms more or less lenticular. The largest of these are often several feet in width, and those seen in the cañon of the Finlayson, near its mouth, are of workable dimensions, if only moderately rich in gold. Specimens of quartz veins, containing some iron and copper pyrites, from the east side of the east arm about midway up it, were found to contain traces of gold on assay by Mr. Hoffmann.

Prospects for gold mining.

In general appearance the rocks of Frances Lake very closely resemble those from which the rich placer gold deposits of Dease Lake are derived, and they are probably of about the same age. Several "colours" to the pan were obtained from surface gravel at the mouth of Finlayson River, which struck me as specially promising in aspect, and there seems to be no reason why some of the streams flowing across the schistose rocks into the lake or in its vicinity should not prove to be richly auriferous. This entire district well deserves careful prospecting. After my return to the coast, in the autumn, I ascertained from Charles Monroe that he and some other miners had actually done some prospecting in the vicinity of the lake at the time when the Cassiar mines were yielding largely, and the more enterprising men were scouring the country in search of new fields. He reached the lake from Cassiar by the same route we had followed. On comparing notes we found that he had worked for a short time at the mouth of the Finlayson, where he found the gravel to pay at the rate of from $8 to $9 a day.

COUNTRY BETWEEN FRANCES LAKE AND PELLY RIVER.

Proceedings at Frances Lake.

We reached Frances Lake on the morning of the 8th of July, and had we been able to find any local Indians to serve as guides and assist in carrying over our stuff, we should have proceeded at once to the best point for that purpose and continued our journey overland toward the Pelly. As it was, it became our first object to endeavour to find the trail used many years previously by the Hudson's Bay Company, of which a general description had been furnished by Mr. Campbell. This necessitated a careful examination of the west shore of the west arm to its head, which enabled us to identify, with tolerable certainty, the stream which Campbell had named the Finlayson. It was supposed that the Indians might have employed the same route in the periodical journeys which they were known to make from the Pelly down the Frances to the little trading post at the mouth of the Dease; but though the remains of an old log *câche* of the Hudson's Bay Company were eventually found, together with the nails and iron work of a large boat which had evidently been burnt on the beach near it, no sign of a trail could be discovered. It thus appeared very doubtful whether we should be able to make our way across to the Pelly, with sufficient provisions and the necessary instruments for the continuation of our survey in the Yukon basin.

Search for Indians.

In order to exhaust the possibility of obtaining further assistance before making the attempt, I made a light trip in one of our boats round into the east arm, which was known to exist from Campbell's report, but the narrow entrance to which had not even been observed on our way up the lake. This also enabled me to sketch the east arm; but no Indians were found, in fact, we discovered traces of only a single camp which had been made during the same summer, most of the Indian signs being two or more years old.

Arrangements for journey to Pelly.

All that now remained to be done was to make the best of our own resources. We, therefore, went carefully over all our stuff, separating out everything which was not absolutely essential, and making up the remainder in packs, together with as much food as could be carried. This done, we stowed a great part of our camp equipage, together with some provisions, in a strong log *câche*, which was constructed for the purpose in the bay immediately south of the mouth of the Finlayson, and moved round to the north side of the delta of that stream, to what we believed to be the best point from which to start. We then hauled out our two boats, and on the 17th and 18th of July carried our remaining stuff to a point some miles up the Finlayson and above the cañon and cascades, which render its lower part utterly impassable. Here we set up the Osgood canvas boat, which we had also carried over. Into this a portion of our stuff was put, and two of our Coast Indians were instructed to endeavour to track it up the shallow and winding stream, while the rest of the party found their way as best they could along the valley, with heavy packs. The walking was extremely fatiguing on account of the deep moss, alternating with brush and swamp, and as in addition the weather was very warm and the mosquitoes innumerable, our rate of progress was slow. On arriving at the forks of the stream we unfortunately took the wrong branch for several miles, leading to some loss of time, but we eventually reached a lake which we recognized as Finlayson Lake, on July 24th. The canvas boat did not arrive till the evening of the next day, as great difficulty was met with in getting it up the shallow stream, which was badly blocked with fallen trees. In the meantime, observations for latitude and time were taken, and a raft was constructed on which the stuff might be floated to the head of the lake, which lay in the general direction of our route.

Difficult land carriage.

Reach Finlayson Lake.

The lake proved to be nine miles and a-half in length, and near its head we again found the ruins of a Hudson's Bay *câche*, but no appearance of a trail. Having selected the most promising looking place from which to continue our journey, we took out the raft-sticks, in order that they might remain dry and serviceable for our Indians on their return, and made a second small *câche* of provisions. The Osgood boat being almost worn out by its hard usage on the Finlayson, and being besides quite too heavy to carry overland in addition to our other stuff, was also drawn up and abandoned.

Reach the Upper Pelly.

Soon after leaving the lake we fell upon small streams which evidently drained toward the west, and about noon on the 29th of July we had the satisfaction of reaching the bank of the Pelly River. From this place our five Coast Indians were sent back, with instructions to take back to Mr. Reed, at Dease Lake, the articles left in the *câche* on Frances Lake, and this duty, we subsequently learned, they faithfully performed.

Having constructed a canoe from the canvas brought over for that purpose, we began the descent of the river on the 1st of August.

Probable better route.

The above is a summary of our proceedings from Frances Lake to the Pelly. I now feel convinced, that if we had had Indian guides, we might in all probability have shortened the land carriage and possibly have found a travelled Indian trail, by following up the waters tributary to the west arm of Frances Lake. It remains to give some notes of the country actually traversed.

Mountains.

Though the region between Frances Lake and the Pelly may be described as a mountainous one, no very high summits were seen, the elevations being, as a rule, rounded and regular in outline, and forming broad, plateau-like areas above the timber-line in some places. The Too-tsho Mountains, which run along the east arm of Frances Lake nearly due north, appear to turn more to the westward beyond the head of the lake, but the line of travel followed toward the Pelly still diverged rapidly from this, the culminating range of the district, and the general direction of the principal ridges in the vicinity of the Finlayson River is not far from east-and west.

General character of the country.

It is probable that the general character of the country here met with fairly represents that of a wide belt to the west of the Frances River and north of the Liard, including the Campbell and Simpson Mountains and their vicinity. The mountains are about equal in altitude to those last mentioned, averaging from 5000 to 6000 feet. The country is traversed by wide, wooded valleys, of which that occupied by the Finlayson is here the principal. The climate evidently becomes less moist as Frances Lake and the vicinity of the Too-tsho Mountains is left, and dry, gravelly terrace-flats, with *Pinus Murrayana*, are not uncommon on the upper part of the Finlayson. Larch was observed in places for about half the distance up the river toward Finlayson Lake, but was not seen further west. White spruce is still the most abundant tree, and grows as large as along Frances Lake. The black spruce also, however, occurs, and *Abies subalpina* becomes the common and characteristic tree near the upward limit of forest growth on the mountains, which here occurs at about 4200 feet. Grassy swamps are found in a number of places, and a good growth of grass is also met with where areas have been denuded of forest by successive fires, so that should it ever become desirable to use horses on this portage, they might be maintained without difficulty.

Character of Finlayson River.

The lower part of the Finlayson, for about four miles near its mouth, forms a series of rapids and small cascades in a narrow, rocky gorge, making in this distance a total descent of 300 feet to the lake. Above this cañon it is rapid for several miles, with gravelly bars, and quite shallow, but further up it becomes a narrow and often deep stream, flowing between muddy and sandy banks. At twenty-two miles from its mouth, it divides into two nearly equal branches, the northern of which comes from *McEvoy Lake*, the southern from Finlayson Lake. Each of these streams, at their confluence, is from twenty-five to thirty feet in average width and about two feet deep. The northern branch, however, soon becomes shallow, rapid and stony, while that coming from Finlayson Lake is extremely crooked, winding in all directions in a flat valley about a mile in width, and is besides, as already mentioned, very badly blocked by fallen trees.

View from a mountain.

From the summit of an isolated, bare-topped hill, which occupies the angle between the two streams, and rises about 1200 feet above the valleys, an excellent view of the surrounding country was obtained. To the north-eastward, broken masses of high, rugged mountains, patched with snow, limit the horizon. These are evidently connected with the Too-tsho Range, but appear to form an irregular western spur, which is not continued to the west of north. The intervening district, as well as the whole country to the south, is occupied by bare-topped, rounded mountains and ridges of less elevation. Amid these hills the round or flat-bottomed valleys of the streams extend, showing here and there the paler green of a patch of meadow. The most remarkable feature is, however, a tract of low, level country, in which McEvoy Lake and the head of Finlayson Lake lie. This runs nearly due east-and-west, and appears to continue in the former direction till it intersects the northern continuation of the valley of the west arm of Frances Lake, and is also observable to the west of the head of Finlayson Lake. It is intersected throughout by numerous small lakes or ponds and by swampy meadows.

Character of Finlayson Lake.

Finlayson Lake (*Tle-tlan'-a-tsoots* of the Indians) is nine miles and a-half in length and rather irregular in form. Its elevation above sea-level is 3105 feet, as determined by our barometer readings, and it may be regarded as occupying the summit of the watershed between the Mackenzie and the Yukon, as no stream of any importance enters it. The country about it is all rather low, but is diversified, to some extent, by wooded ridges and hills, which rise highest near its upper end. The water is apparently shallow throughout, and had, in consequence, a much higher temperature than that of Frances Lake. It is well stocked with white-fish and lake trout, and also, no doubt, with the other species found in Frances Lake. A dead ania, eighteen inches long, was also found on the shore.

The immediate shores of the lake are generally quite low and often swampy, and the country is covered with small, poor timber, much of which has been killed by fire. A pretty well marked terrace, at 100 to 150 feet above the water, runs nearly all round the lake, and at the head are irregular, low, lumpy ridges and islands, which evidently represent moraine accumulations. No rock-exposures were anywhere seen along the lake-shore.

The watershed.

The distance from the head of the lake to the nearest point on the Pelly, in a straight line, is about fifteen miles, but the low tract of country already referred to, runs some miles to the south of such a line for the greater part of the way. The actual watershed in this low country is probably not fifty feet above the lake, but there is no evidence that the lake ever discharges toward the Pelly. Its height above sea-level is about 3150 feet. Small streams rising to the west of the lake, flow together to form a respectable brook about half way across. This occupies a wide, terraced valley, the ridges bordering which gradually diverge as the Pelly is approached, and the river itself is bordered by undulating terrace-flats several miles in width.

Country west of Finlayson Lake.

On ridges west of the head of Finlayson Lake *Abies subalpina* becomes moderately abundant, but the white and black spruce are still the characteristic trees, and the former is well grown in sheltered valleys. No larch or black pine were seen on this part of the portage. The western yellow pond-lily (*Nuphar polysepalum*) was observed in great abundance in a small inlet of Finlayson Lake, and on the hills beyond *Polymoneum pulchellum* and *Mertensia paniculata*, with *Potentilla fruticosa*, were noted as specially abundant flowering plants. The vegetation in the vicinity of the Pelly was much further advanced than any we had yet seen, and the climate of the valley is evidently more favourable than that of the watershed region. The soil of the river-terraces is a fine, silty material, which, judging from the luxuriance of plant growth, must be very fertile.

Geological notes.

In consequence of the width of the valleys and the mantle of drift deposits, few rock-exposures were met with along the whole route from Frances Lake to the Pelly, and those examined consisted wholly of schists or schistose argillites, associated with cherty quartzites in some places, and generally of blackish or gray colours. The gravel wash in the various smaller streams and the rock *débris* met with on slopes of hills and elsewhere, consisted also predominantly of similar materials, and it would appear that the whole of this country is underlain by rocks resembling those described on Frances Lake and part of the river of the same name. A reddish argillite was noted as locally abundant in some streams entering the Finlayson on the south. Pebbles and small boulders of gray granite are not uncommon, but all appear to have been transported from a distance. In addition to the rocks above described, the gravel beaches on Finlayson Lake show numerous fragments of gray-blue limestone, some of which contain obscure fossils. Green serpentine, like that of the vicinity of Dease Lake, and exhibiting minute veinlets of serpentine-asbestos, with a few pebbles of reddish serpentine, were also noted here, and fragments of a peculiar white quartz-porphyry are not uncommon. Large pieces of the same stone were afterwards found on the hills to the west of the lake, but it was not anywhere seen in place. Quartz vein-stuff is everywhere very abundant, and on the terrace overlooking the Finlayson, on the north side, three miles below the lake, a large mass of quartz occurs in place. The extent of this mass of quartz could not be ascertained, as it protruded from the soil only in isolated spots over an area several hundred feet in length and breadth. A few specimens were collected, but on assay proved to contain neither gold nor silver.

Rocks of Finlayson Lake.

Massive quartz.

One of the most notable features of this watershed region is the great quantity of detrital material or drift with which the whole is covered. On the lower part of the Finlayson, irregularly bedded, clayey, gravel deposits, containing large glaciated stones and resembling boulder-clay, were seen; but elsewhere stratified gravels and sands are generally shown in any scarped banks which occur. Well rounded gravel was found scattered over the very summit of the isolated mountain at the forks of the Finlayson, above referred to, at a height of 4300 feet above the sea, the material being of varied origin and including granite. No distinct terraces were found on this mountain, but terraces were noted further down the valley on the slopes of higher hills, at a height equal to, or greater than, that of this place. The evidence appears to be conclusive that a body of water, in later glacial times, extended quite across the Pacific-Arctic watershed in this region, standing at a level more than 1000 feet above it. Glacial striation, in a bearing parallel to that of the valley, was noted on the surface of the quartz mass previously alluded to, but the direction of motion of the ice could not be determined.

Superficial deposits of the watershed.

UPPER PELLY RIVER.

Our first camp on the Pelly was situated in lat. 61° 48′ 52″, long. 131° 01′ 06″, the height of the river being at this place, as approxi-

Upper Pelly River.

mately determined from the mean of a number of barometer observations, 2965 feet. The river is here 326 feet wide, with a current slightly exceeding two miles and a-half an hour, and a middle depth of seven feet. An approximate estimate of the discharge placed it at 4898 cubic feet per second. The river had evidently fallen very considerably since the early summer and was probably at or below its mean stage. The water is here nearly clear, with a light brownish tinge. From explorations made at the time of the existence of the Hudson's Bay post, as well as from Indian report, the river is known to be navigable by boats for a considerable distance above this point, and to rise in two lakes, the position of which is approximately indicated on the map, according to Mr. Campbell's sketch.* Our camp was about two miles above the mouth of the stream which has already been mentioned as rising on the portage near Finlayson Lake, at the angle between which and the Pelly the old post named "Pelly Banks" was situated. We saw no trace of the buildings which formerly existed, though the old site might, no doubt, have been determined by a little search, had we thought it worth while to devote the necessary time to it.

" *Pelly Banks*" *to Hoole Cañon.*

Appearance of the country. From our initial point, above mentioned, to Hoole Cañon and Cañon, is a distance of thirty-one miles in a straight line, the direction of which is a few degrees north of west. The river, however, forms a wide curve to the south of this line, and is besides very tortuous in detail, the actual distance, following its course, being fifty miles. The main orographic river-valley is here not confined, as is so often the case, between parallel ranges of mountains. There is on the contrary a wide tract of irregularly hilly country, which is bounded to the south by a well-defined mountain range at a distance of ten to twelve miles. This range is crowned by a series of square-outlined pyramidal peaks, which are probably composed of stratified rocks. It is proposed to distinguish it as the *Pelly Range*. To the northward, no definite boundary to the low hilly region can be seen. The actual trough in which the river meanders, however, is scarcely more than a mile in average width, and is generally bordered by terraces a hundred feet or more in height.

Hoole River. Thirty-three miles, by the course of the river, below our starting point, a tributary comes in from the mountains to the southward, about fifty feet wide by one deep, and very rapid. This is identified

---

[*Corrected on the map now published by Mr. Warburton Pike's later observations.]

as Hoole River.* Its water is bluish in tint, and clearer than that of the Upper Pelly, which by this time has become slightly turbid from material derived from its soft, silty banks. The river, between our first camp and Hoole River, has a rather moderate current, scarcely exceeding four miles and a-half an hour, though with several little "riffles" or small rapids.

Rapid.

Just below the mouth of Hoole River is a rapid about 600 feet long, with a total fall estimated at about ten feet. There is an easy portage on the right or north bank, but a fair-sized boat might run through without danger at most stages of the water. As a precautionary measure, we lightened our canvas canoe, of the behaviour of which in bad water we had had at the time no experience. From this rapid to Hoole Cañon the water is swift, and there are several little rapids.

The banks and beaches of the Pelly above Hoole River, are generally silty or muddy, though the strength of the current is sufficient to produce well-washed gravel-bars in mid-stream. Below that point the banks and beaches are also as a rule gravelly, in conformity with the swifter flow of the stream.

Vegetation.

The banks along the south side of this part of the river, are for the most part densely wooded, and where shady and damp the growth of timber is small and scrubby, with much black spruce. The banks on the opposite side are very different in appearance. Those above Hoole River show numerous open, grassy patches, and below that place grassy slopes preponderate over the wooded area, the grass having the characteristic growth and dry, tufted appearance of "bunch-grass." The trees are similar to those found along the rivers previously described, except that *Pinus Murrayana* and larch do not occur, and but a single white birch was noted, near the mouth of Hoole River. Groves of cottonwood of medium size cover some of the flats. In one or two banks into which the river was cutting, and where the surface was covered with a dense, mossy growth, frozen soil was observed. The depth to which it extended could not be ascertained, as it went below the water-level of the stream.

Frozen soil.

Rocks represented.

Above the mouth of Hoole River the rock-exposures are few and inconsiderable. Near the mouth of Campbell Creek, a yellowish-weathering irregularly silicified dolomite was observed in several low outcrops, together with green-gray, slightly lustrous schists, and similar schists were seen in one or two other places on this part of the river. The composition of the gravel of the river-bars may be accepted as indicating in a general way the character of the formations of the drainage-area of the upper river. These include fragments of schists, quartzites and argillites of the same kind as before described on the Frances, with gray, fine-grained limestone, some pieces of coarse white marble, and occasional small pebbles of the same peculiar quartz-porphyry seen on Finlayson Lake. There are also represented several varieties of granitoid rocks, the most abundant of which has a coarse gneissic lamination, with whitish or greenish mica and large, white, porphyritic felspar crystals, round which the layers of the rock bend. This peculiar granite or gneiss is probably derived from the head-waters of the main river, and often occurs in large boulders, which can scarcely have been carried by the stream, and have probably been transported during the glacial period.

---

* So named by Mr. Campbell after his interpreter. Mr. Campbell, on his original sketch and on Arrowsmith's map, in the construction of which it was used, has named a number of the tributaries of the Pelly. It has been found difficult to identify some of these, but all have been placed on the accompanying map, after a careful comparison.

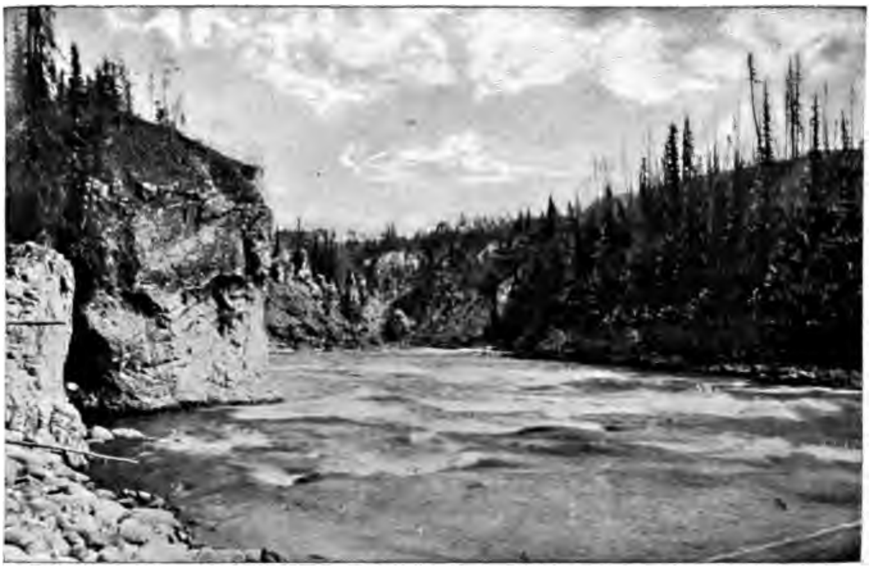
Basaltic area. At the rapid at the mouth of Hoole River, low bluffs of dark-brown basalt appear, and the same rock crops out in several places further down the river, extending probably to within two miles of Hoole Cañon, though the lower exposures have rather a dioritic appearance, somewhat different from those first noted. The horizontal extent of this local development of basalt is approximately indicated on the map, but as the country to the north is here all low, its limit in that direction is entirely hypothetical. This is probably the first occurrence of basalt on the river, as no basalt pebbles were seen above this place. The basalt is often amygdaloidal or vesicular and contains chalcedony, calcite and some fibrous zeolite, but is scarcely at all columnar.

Scarped banks Above the mouth of Hoole River, frequent scarped banks exhibit white or gray bedded silts, associated with or underlain by stratified gravels, with a dark-gray, earthy matrix. These latter deposits often hold large boulders, and observations made further down the river appear to show that they represent the boulder-clay.

Between Hoole River and the cañon, the silts are scarcely seen in the banks of the Pelly, being replaced by gravelly and coarse sandy deposits.

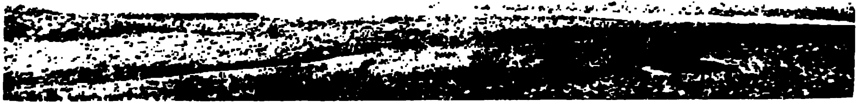
Hoole Cañon to Ross River.

Hoole Cañon. At Hoole Cañon, the river makes a knee-like bend to the north-eastward, and is constricted between rocky banks and cliffs about a hundred feet in height (see Plate IV). These render it impracticable to use the line, and as the water is very rough and dangerous, it was found necessary to carry not only all our stuff, but the canoe as well, to the lower end of the cañon. The distance by the river is about three-quarters of a mile, by the portage half a mile, the highest point



G. M. D.—Photo, Aug. 3, 1887.

ENTRANCE TO HOOLE'S CAÑON, PELLY RIVER.



G. M. D.—Photo., Aug. 4, 1889.

LOOKING DOWN PELLY RIVER, FROM GRAVEL BARS AT MOUTH OF LAPIE RIVER.

being one hundred feet above the river. The portage is on the south side of the river, and we found traces on it of skids which had been laid by the Hudson's Bay Company many years ago, but no sign of its having been employed by the Indians, who in all this district generally travel by land, making rafts when they are obliged to cross any of the larger rivers.

Ross River.

Character of county.

Sixteen miles and a-half below the cañon in a straight line, or twenty-three miles by the course of the Pelly, is the mouth of a river which is identified as the Ross River of Campbell.* This stream, which comes from the north-eastward, is to all appearance as nearly as possible equal in volume to the Pelly, having a width of 290 feet, with a current of four miles and a-half an hour. Its water is turbid and milky, and colder than that of the Pelly, leading to the belief that it is not derived from lakes like that stream, or that if lakes do occur on its upper waters, they are much less in area than those of the Pelly. Its size would indicate that it may rise in the same distant range with the Pelly, but no long view was obtained up its valley, which is narrow and bordered by high, steep hills at its mouth. Midway between the cañon and the Ross, Ketza River,† a swift stream, about forty feet by one foot, joins from the south. Like other streams from that direction, it carries clear, blue, mountain water, and brings down quartzites, argillites and schists of the usual character, together with a great abundance of quartz-gravel.

Rocks.

The Pelly, between the cañon and Ross River, is swift throughout, with numerous little rapids. To the south of the river there is still a wide extent of low, wooded country between it and the continuous range before referred to as the Pelly Mountains. To the north the view is more limited, particularly near the mouth of the Ross River, owing to the existence of a long, steep ridge, parallel to the course of the Pelly, and from 600 to 800 feet in height above it. The southern face of this ridge, which is cut through by the Ross River, is more than half, open grass land, and would afford excellent pasturage.

The rocks of Hoole Cañon and its vicinity are chiefly white marble, associated and interbedded with gray and black cherty-looking quartzites, which are often thin-bedded and sometimes rather schistose, and precisely resemble the Cache Creek quartzites of southern British Columbia. Further down the river are occasional exposures of greenish and gray schists and schistose argillites. The rocks along this part of the Pelly strike nearly parallel to its main direction, or about north-west by south-east, and are either nearly vertical or have dips to the south-westward. Stratified gravels are seen in a few places in scarped banks, but silts are not here specially characteristic.

---

*So named after Chief Factor Donald Ross.

† So named by Campbell, after one of his faithful Indian companions; not Kelzas, as shown on Arrowsmith's map of 1854.

Ross River to Glenlyon River.

From the mouth of Ross River to the Glenlyon River, the general course of the Pelly is almost direct, on a bearing of N. 50° W., the distance being sixty-four miles. In consequence of the number of minor flexures in the stream, this is, however, increased by the river to eighty-two miles. Ten miles below the Ross, following the river, a stream, *Lapie River*,* sixty feet wide by one foot deep, and resembling in its general character and colour of water Hoole and Ketza rivers, comes in from the south. Twenty-three miles from the same point a smaller tributary joins from the north, which is supposed to be the Orchay of Campbell. This is about twenty feet wide by six inches deep, and carries clear, brownish water, doubtless derived from a lake or lakes. Ten miles further, on the same side, is a valley running to the north, which probably brings in a moderate sized stream. But this falls into a slough, behind islands, and was not seen.

Lapie River.

Orchay River.

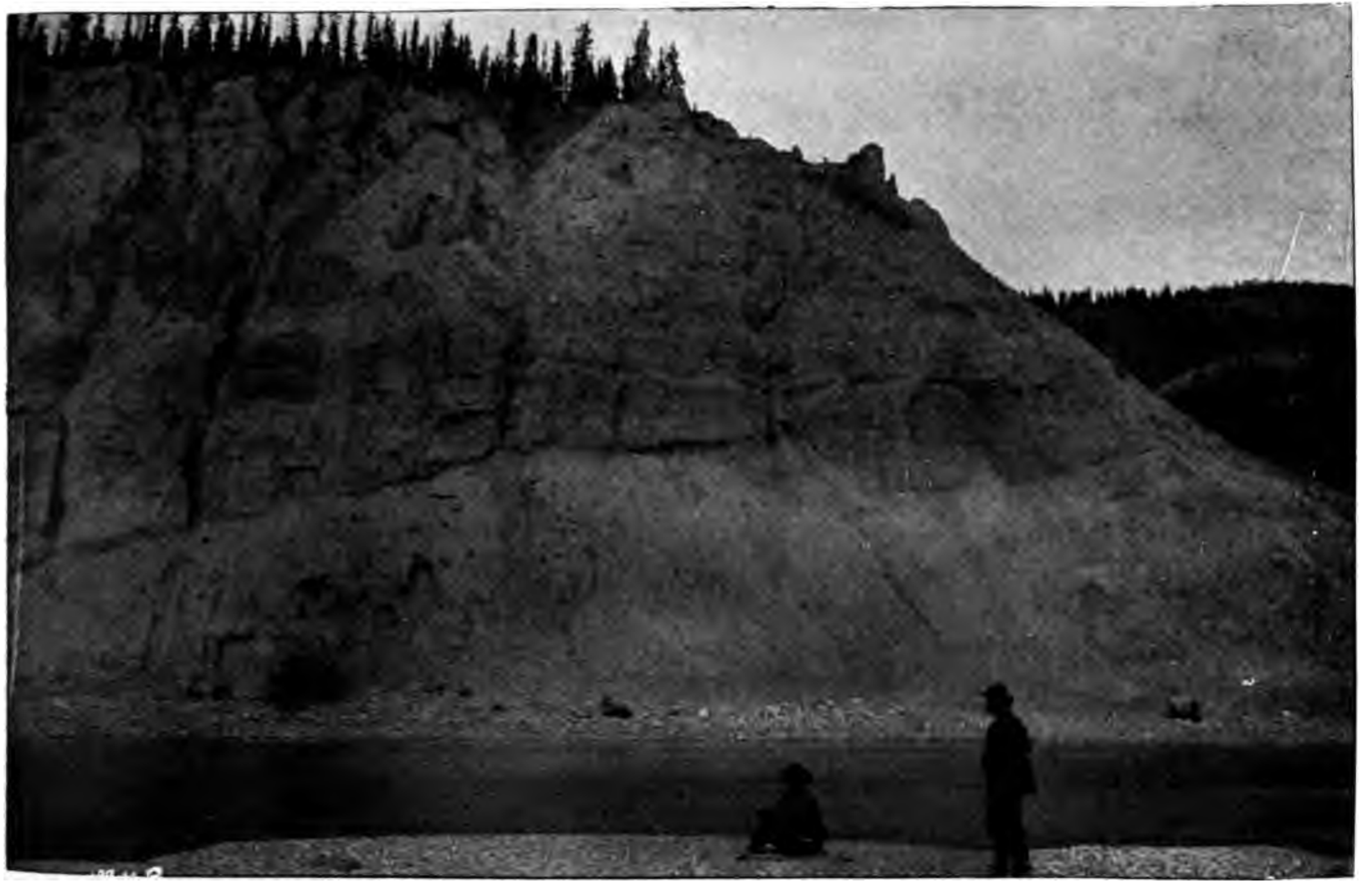
Features of the country.

All the way from the Ross to the Glenlyon the Pelly is closely bordered on the north by ridges and hills of considerable height, which become mountains of 4000 to over 5000 feet before the last-mentioned stream is reached. These entirely preclude any outlook over the country on that side. To the south, the important and well-marked Pelly Range is continued to a point opposite the Orchay River, where it appears to terminate in a group of mountains lower than those of its eastern part, but still from 5000 to 6000 feet in height. These are situated at a distance of about six miles back from the river, the intervening country being occupied by lower, wooded hills and broken country. The forms of the mountains are rather bold, consisting of steep crests and ridges, with intervening narrow, V-shaped gorges, and they appear to be grassed or covered with low, herbaceous growth, giving them a general greenish tint. There are few bare, rocky summits, and the whole appearance is that of a range shaped by normal processes of denudation from schistose or other crumbling rocks of a stratified character and nearly uniform hardness. They still carried a few patches of old snow on the 4th of August. The higher portions of this range to the eastward, present a rougher and almost serried outline, but there are not even there any exceptionally high points, and the slopes of the peaks are extremely uniform. Beyond the west-

Pelly Range.

---

* This stream was not named by Campbell. I call it Lapie River, after one of his Indians, he having given the name of the other (Ketza) to a neighbouring tributary.



G. M. D.—Photo., Aug. 4, 1887.

DRIFT BLUFF, UPPER PELLY RIVER, AT MOUTH OF LAPIE RIVER.

Lower part of bluff boulder-clay, irregularly overlain by earthy stratified gravels, these followed in ascending order by stratified silts.

Gap to the southward.

ern termination of this range, for a distance of about twenty miles, no mountains were seen to the southward from the river-valley. From the fact that evidences of a more humid climate were found along the corresponding length of the river, it is highly probable that a somewhat important gap occurs in this direction, of sufficient width to admit the entrance of the moisture-bearing winds. The greater humidity of this part of the valley is particularly marked by the densely wooded character of the slopes on the north side of the river.

Beyond the gap above referred to, a low mountain-range appears on the south side of the river, not in line with that last described, but quite close to the river, which here, for a number of miles, flows in a valley between two mountain axes.

Notes on the river.

The Pelly, for rather more than half the distance between the Ross and Glenlyon, continues to be pretty swift, and is much divided among islands and gravel-bars; the remaining part is comparatively tranquil, with the exception of the rapids in the immediate vicinity of the Glenlyon. The forest growth throughout is much like that previously described, save that the birch is now moderately abundant, and the black pine (*P. Murrayana*) appears, coming in first on dry northern slopes thirteen miles eastward from the Glenlyon. Cottonwood, aspen, alder, spruce and willows are the prevailing trees on the river-flats, which are usually about ten feet above low-water level. Frozen soil was again seen in several places along the shady side of this part of the river, extending from about eighteen inches below a mossy and peaty sod to the water-level, with a depth of ten feet or more. Some of these banks were being rapidly undercut by the water, which thaws the soil wherever it comes in contact with it, and causes large masses, with the superincumbent sod and trees, to fall into the stream.

Black Pine.

Frozen soil.

Rapids.

The rapids above alluded to as near the Glenlyon are two in number. The first occurs in an S-shaped bend about two miles east of the Glenlyon; the second just below the mouth of that stream. The upper rapid is wide and rather shallow, with some rocky impediments. It is easily run with a canoe, but at low stages of the river, doubtfully passable for a steamer, unless of light draught. The current in the second rapid strikes full on the face of a rocky bank on the right of the river, and forms a heavy confused wash in consequence, but is otherwise unimpeded and deep.

Geological features.

The rocks seen along the Pelly between the Ross and Glenlyon, while resembling in a general way those previously described, differ in their greater alteration and in the evident importance in their composition of products originally of volcanic origin. The most abundant are blackish-gray and greenish quartzites and schists, often more or less micaceous, and in places passing into true mica-schists. Three and a-half miles west of the Ross River, on the left bank, are exposures of massive, dark leek-green serpentine, associated with green serpentinous and quartzose schists, and a spotted white and green rock, which may be a much decomposed diabase or diorite. One portion of the bank shows at least a hundred feet in thickness of nearly pure serpentine, but no asbestos veins were seen here. Thirty-six miles west of the Ross a very peculiar purplish felsite was noted. It is schistose and slightly micaceous in the division planes, besides being porphyritic with irregular white felspar masses. Four miles east of the Glenlyon, a close-grained, banded, white-and-gray felsite occurs, in a much shattered exposure, and is probably a fine, altered volcanic ash. All these rocks evidently form members of a single series, and though with numerous local irregularities, strike in a general way parallel to the course of the river. The circumstances tend to show that they are on the whole stratigraphically higher than those seen further up the river, but it is not certain that the dips are normal.

Laramie or Cretaceous rocks.

The most interesting fact developed on this part of the Pelly is, however, the occurrence of rocks of Laramie or Cretaceous age. These were noted in a single low exposure on the south side of the river, twenty-seven miles and a-half west of the mouth of Ross River. They consist of black carbonaceous or possibly plumbaginous shales, rather hard, and interbedded with gray-brown sandstones, the whole dipping nearly due south at an angle of forty-five degrees. But this single occurrence of rocks of this character was found, and no rocks are seen for several miles up or down the stream, so that the area characterized by the formation to which they belong is uncertain. Sir William Dawson writes as follows of the fossils obtained here:—"The few specimens examined are full of impressions of dicotyledonous leaves, much crushed and imperfect. One has the venation of *Corylus MacQuarrii* (Forbes). Another seems to be a *Juglans*, near to *J. acuminata* (Braun). Both of these species are said by Heer to occur at English Bay, Alaska, and also on Mackenzie River. The determinations cannot, however, be considered as a certain."

Fossil plants.

Superficial deposits.

Fine sections of the drift deposits frequently occur along this part of the Pelly River, forming scarped banks from eighty to a hundred and fifty feet in height, and at times a quarter of a mile or more in length. The stratified gravels, with gray or brownish earthy matrix, which have previously been described, were seen just above the mouth of Ross River to be interbedded with and overlain by silts of the usual character. A few miles below the Ross they were first seen in association with indubitable boulder-clay, and thence down stream, the earthy

Peculiarities of boulder-clay

or clayey gravels and boulder-clay form the lower portion of most of the scarps, being capped by bedded silts, which in some places are fifty feet in thickness. The stratified earthy gravels and boulder-clay are interchangeable and may be considered as constituting a single formation. These gravels are sometimes interbedded with rude layers of boulder-clay, while in other sections they occur in the bottom of the bank, with massive-looking boulder-clay above them, and in yet other instances these conditions are reversed, and the gravels pass above into the bedded silts, which everywhere constitute the upper member of the glacial series. When the matrix of the gravels becomes clayey, they closely resemble boulder-clay in composition, but do not often hold such large stones as the latter occasionally does. The stones of both the gravel and the boulder-clay are more or less completely water-rounded, and striated stones were seldom seen along the river. The gravels above referred to are quite distinct from the old river-valley gravels, which also occur at various levels, sometimes as the highest member of the section in scarped banks, in other cases forming the substratum of river-flats. With the appearance of the boulder-clay the scarped banks begin to assume a characteristically castellated appearance, standing often in series of nearly vertical buttresses and pillars, with deep intervening gullies.

Glenlyon River to Macmillan River.

For the purpose of description, the next convenient length of the Upper Pelly which may be taken, is that extending from the Glenlyon to the Macmillan River.* This again naturally subdivides itself into two parts, the first with a general bearing of N. 53° W., twenty-eight miles and a-half, in continuation of the general course of the upper river, the second about N. 77° W. thirty-three miles. The total distance, following the course of the river, from the Glenlyon to the Macmillan, is ninety-one miles. The tributary streams in this distance, again measuring by the course of the Pelly, down stream, are as follows:—Glenlyon River, forty feet by one foot. Eight miles and a-half below, stream on the north, sixty feet by six inches. Twelve miles, tributary from the south, twenty feet by three inches. Seventeen miles, on the south, dry torrent bed. Twenty miles and a-half, on the south, ten feet by three inches. Thirty miles on the north, thirty feet by six inches; the Earn River of Campbell. Forty-seven miles on the south, thirty feet by three inches; probably the Tummel River of Campbell. From this point to the Macmillan no tributary

Tributary streams.

---

* Of Campbell, named for Chief Factor Macmillan.

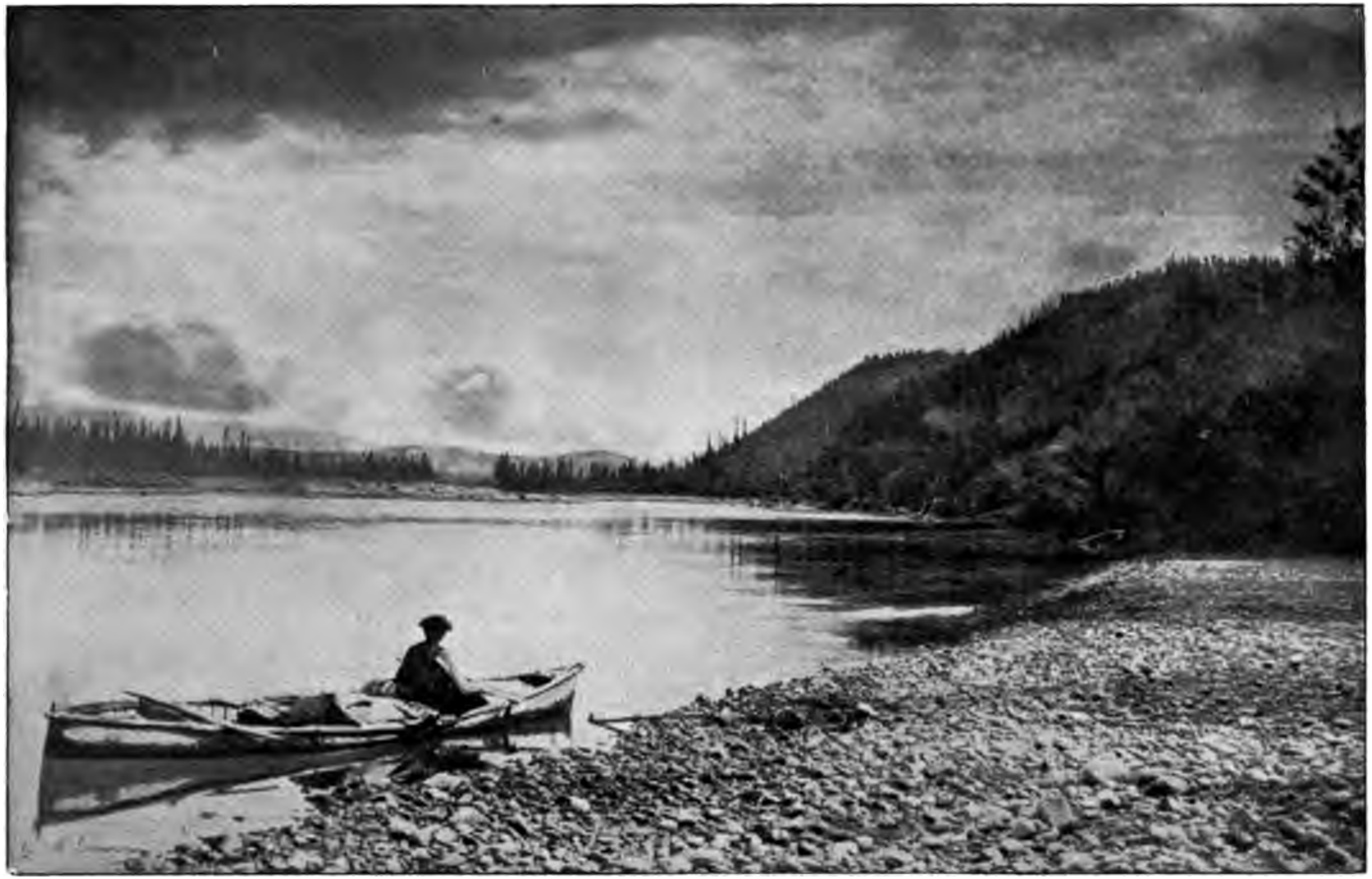
colour of its higher parts is that of the granitic mountains of this region. Its composition is also indicated by the character of the material brought down by the Glenlyon River and other rapid streams which rise on its slopes or in its valleys. This is largely, and in some cases almost exclusively, composed of granite of very uniform lithological character, gray in colour and generally hornblendic. The same rock is met with in place on the Pelly, about half way from The Detour to the mouth of the Macmillan, beyond the termination of the range itself, but precisely in the continuation of the line of its axis.* The rocks exposed along the Pelly itself, between the mouth of the Glenlyon and the granitic exposure just alluded to, and which may be regarded as a whole as occupying the northern flank of this granitic range, are more varied in character than those met with on the upper part of the river. Nothing can be said as to their order of superposition, for while the river nearly follows the main direction of the strike, the locally observed attitudes of the strata of the several isolated places where they were noted are very irregular. This is particularly the case in the vicinity of The Detour. The rocks comprise greenish and blackish schists and schistose quartzites, of varied aspect, generally somewhat more altered in appearance than usual. These are interbedded, at the east end of The Detour, with finely-banded white marble and quartzite; and at ten miles west of The Detour, are somewhat extensive exposures of blackish and bluish-gray, rather flaggy and little altered limestones, in which, however, no fossils could be found.

Second range of granite.

The range of hills which has been referred to as bordering the Pelly on the south near the mouth of the Macmillan, is likewise composed of granite, which appears in several places on the river. This is of grayish and greenish-gray colours, and similar to that of the Glenlyon Range, though it apparently forms a distinct though parallel granitic axis. The rocks which immediately border this granitic axis to the north, though not seen in actual contact with the granite, have a more highly altered aspect than almost any of those seen further up the river, but the impression gathered from their examination is that they owe this alteration to the influence of the granite rather than that their character is an evidence of greater age. They comprise several varieties of rough, micaceous schists, which are highly quartzose, and evidently of clastic origin, as well as a much silicified, coarse grauwacke, and a pale-gray, speckled, silvery mica-schist, which breaks into thin laminæ. The last-mentioned rock is found on the north bank immediately below the Macmillan. Some distance further down,

---

*Upper Pelly, No. 53.



G. M. D.—Photo., Aug. 8, 1887.

ON UPPER PELLY RIVER. NINETEEN MILES ABOVE MACMILLAN RIVER.

the river turns sharply to the south, and cuts across the whole width of the second granitic axis in *Granite Cañon*, presenting exposures of gray hornblendic granite for several miles, which, near the lower end of the cañon, becomes much shattered by jointage-planes.*

Granite Cañon.

Drift deposits.

The drift deposits along the part of the river between the Glenlyon and Macmillan, resemble those previously described, the only marked change being in the substitution, in some sections to a considerable extent, of sands for the silts before so characteristic. Stratified clayey gravels and boulder-clay occur, with relations similar to those noted on the upper river, but in some sections gravels and sandy silts are interbedded, the bedding at times being flexuous, and even contorted in character. All these materials are below the ordinary valley-gravels and sands of post-glacial age.

Glacial striation.

Six miles below the Glenlyon, the first distinct case of glacial striation and ice-rounded rock-surfaces met with on the Pelly was noted, and below this place similar evidences were found in a number of localities. The direction of striation in all cases closely accords with that of the main depression of the river-valley, though cutting across it obliquely where it turns north towards the Macmillan. The form of the surfaces is such as to show that the sense of the movement of ice was westward or down stream.

Macmillan River to Lewes River.

Tortuous part of the river.

From the mouth of the Macmillan to the confluence of the Upper Pelly and Lewes rivers is a distance, in a straight line with a general bearing a few degrees south of west, of forty-six miles. A considerable portion of this part of the river is, however, extremely tortuous, and in consequence no doubt of the generally low character of the country, its flexures are not merely short, sharp bends from side to side of a trough-like valley, like those usually met with further up, but lax irregular curves of greater dimensions. The distance from the Macmillan to the mouth of the Lewes measured along the course of the stream is seventy-four miles.

Four miles below the mouth of the Macmillan, on the north bank, is a small log-cabin, the first sign of habitation we had seen. We afterwards ascertained that two miners had lived here during the winter of 1886-87. At five miles and a-half below the Macmillan the Pelly was found to be 754 feet in width, with a current of 2·3 miles per hour; a few miles below this the river turns south-westward and then nearly due south, entering Granite Cañon at thirteen miles from

Granite Cañon.

---

* (Upper Pelly, No. 57.)

the Macmillan. The rocks met with in the cañon have already been alluded to. The cañon is about four miles in length, with steep, rocky, scarped banks and cliffs, 200 to 250 feet in height. In the cañon are several little rapids, but the water is deep, and with the exception of some isolated rocks, the navigation would be quite safe for steamers, even at a low stage of water. As the river is much confined, however, it is probable that pretty rough water may be found here during floods. Just beyond the cañon, or sixteen miles and a-half below the Macmillan, a small stream, about ten feet by three inches, enters from the south-eastward. The bed is wide, and it appears at seasons of flood to become a formidable torrent. At thirty-six miles from the Macmillan another small stream was observed on the south side, but with this exception, the river receives no further tributaries before meeting the Lewes. Judging from Campbell's sketch, this otherwise insignificant stream must be that flowing from Tatlmain Lake, which was probably a source of supply of fish for Fort Selkirk while that post was maintained.

Tatlmain Lake.

Low country

After passing the ridge which is cut through by Granite Cañon, the country on both sides of the river, for about fifteen miles, is quite low. No mountains or high hills are in sight on any bearing to the westward, and wide terraces run far back from the river at heights of 150 to 200 feet above it. These are often lightly wooded, largely with aspen, and are clothed with a good growth of grass presenting a very attractive appearance. The soil is good, and at the time of our visit the country was very dry. *Anemone patens* was seen here for the first time since reaching the Yukon basin, and *Elæagnus argentea* was also noted, both species characteristic of a rather dry climate. For the remaining distance to the mouth of the Lewes, the river is more closely bordered by low hills and ridges, which seldom exceed a height of 400 feet. At one place the stream is confined between high and somewhat rocky banks, but no rapid is met with. The southern slopes of the hills are generally open and grassy, and would afford excellent pasturage. The northern exposures are still pretty thickly wooded. Just above its confluence with the Lewes, the Pelly makes an abrupt turn to the south, and runs for several miles along the eastern base of a scarped cliff of basalt. From Granite Cañon to the confluence, the current scarcely exceeds two miles and a-half an hour.

Appearance of the country.

Rock exposures.

For a number of miles below Granite Cañon, no rocks are met with along the river, but lower down there are frequent exposures, extending for some miles, of highly crystalline schists, which strike nearly east-and-west, parallel to the main direction of the river, with general high northward dips.. These rocks differ considerably from any before seen, including dark, wholly-crystalline schists, holding hornblende or hornblende and mica. With these are associated considerable exposures of a peculiar dark-green chlorite rock, containing large mica crystals.

This rock is interbedded with white, coarsely crystalline marble, in some places, and is quite evidently the alteration-product of some stratified material which has doubtless, however, been of volcanic origin. Nine miles above the confluence, by the course of the river, a great mass of impure serpentine comes out on the bank, and six miles and a-half above the same place, gray granite of the usual character is again met with,* and appears to constitute the hills to the east of the river for the remaining few miles of its course.

Serpentine.

The basalt, which forms a plateau from 200 to 250 feet in height in the angle to the west of the Pelly at its junction with the Lewes, consists of several superposed flows, not always distinctly separable at a distance. It forms a mural cliff, with a long talus of angular fragments sloping down to the river-level, and though not very distinctly columnar where it fronts on the Pelly, becomes so below the confluence. The rock is brown in colour and often vesicular.

Basalt bluffs.

The bedded silts were seen above Granite Cañon, but are scarcely represented below it. Boulder-clay was noted in one place below the cañon, and the old stratified gravels in several places. The scarped banks along this lower part of the river are, however, chiefly composed of well rolled valley- or river-gravels, which become much more important than before, and often constitute entire terraces up to forty feet in height.

Superficial deposits.

A remarkable layer of fine white volcanic ash, which overlies the glacial deposits all along the Upper Pelly valley, as well as in that of the Lewes, has already been described on page 40.

Volcanic ash.

General Notes on the Upper Pelly River.

The total length of the Upper Pelly, following the course of the river, from the point where we first reached it at the west end of Campbell's Portage to its confluence with the Lewes, is 320 miles. The elevation at the first-mentioned point is about 2965 feet, that at the confluence 1555 feet, giving a total fall of 1410 feet or 4·4 feet to the mile, a considerable portion of which, however, occurs in the numerous little rapids and riffles of its course. In Hoole Cañon the estimated fall is about twenty feet. Two hundred and eighteen islands were counted in the river,

Length and fall of the river.

---

* (Upper Pelly, No. 61.)

without including such gravel bars as are submerged at high water, and are consequently without vegetation. The general course of the river is remarkably direct, and it embraces two main directions, the first bearing N. 55° W., the second, N. 87° W. These are parallel to the principal orographic features respectively of the upper and lower parts of the country traversed, and appear to indicate the main slopes of the general surface of the region.

Navigability.

With the exception of Granite Cañon, where warping might have to be resorted to at one place, the river would be easily navigable for stern-wheel steamers as far up as the mouth of the Macmillan, and the latter stream is also navigable for a considerable though unknown distance. Above the Macmillan, I believe, no serious difficulty would be met with in taking a small stern-wheel steamer of good power up to the mouth of Ross River, and possibly as far as the foot of Hoole Cañon. A line might have to be carried ashore at a few of the stronger rapids, but the chief difficulty to be encountered would be from shoal water at low stages. Where the river is widely spread and swift, a depth of three feet could scarcely be found across some of the gravelly bars. The Ross River is a navigable stream at its mouth, but its upper part is quite unknown. Hoole Cañon is, of course, quite impassable for a steamer of any kind, and the rapid met with seventeen miles east of it, at the mouth of Hoole River, might prove to be a difficult one to surmount by warping, its fall being estimated at about eight feet. Above this point, the river is again, however, an easily navigable one for small steamers to the furthest point seen by us, and possibly as far as the lakes.*

Tributaries from the south

All the streams and small rivers flowing into the Pelly from the south and rising in or beyond the Pelly and Glenlyon mountains, are notably swift, and most of them are evidently subject to heavy freshets.

Timber.

Some notes have already been given respecting the character of the timber along the Upper Pelly. On the lower part of the river there are numerous groves on or not far from the banks, with good spruce up to two feet in diameter. Spruce of the same size is found also on the whole upper part of the river, but is relatively less abundant there.

---

* Dall, in his Alaska and its Resources, 1870, p. 278, gives a hypothetical itinerary of the Pelly River, making it head in Frances Lake. The Pelly, as shown on the map which accompanies the work, is evidently in part after Arrowsmith, and where it differs, (as in regard to the connection of Frances and Finlayson lakes with the Pelly), becomes misleading. It is difficult to understand why this part of Arrowsmith's map, bearing intrinsic evidence of proximate accuracy, should not have been followed throughout in the compilation of later maps, particularly as the Pelly had not been further explored since Campbell's time.

As in the case of the Upper Liard and Frances rivers, quartz, derived from veins, is an abundant constituent of the gravel-bars of the Pelly, and numerous small quartz veins were observed in the rocks in many places. Where the granites are approached, the veins are found to cut all the rocks except these, and it appears that the development of the quartz veins is due to the same period of disturbance which has given rise to the uplift of the granite axes or their extrusion. Small "colours" of gold may be found in almost any suitable locality along the river, and "heavy colours," in considerable number, were found by us as far up as the mouth of Hoole River, in the bottom of a gravel-bed there resting on the basalt. The river has been prospected to some extent by a few miners, but no mining of importance has yet been done on it. Thomas Boswell, whom we met on the Lewes, informed me that he had found and worked for a short time, a bar which paid at the rate of $18 per diem. This was on a tributary which, from his description, is probably identified as the Ross River. Two miners only, Messrs. Monroe and Langtry, were at work on this river in 1887, and their operations were confined to the part below Granite Cañon, where they made, on a couple of bars, from $10 to $20 per diem to the hand. The head-waters of the Macmillan and Ross, and those of the Pelly itself yet remain unprospected, as well as the very numerous tributary streams of these rivers, in some of which "coarse" gold may yet be found. From observations subsequently made on the Lewes, coal may be looked for in the Laramie or Cretaceous rocks near the river at the locality described on page 124.

Quartz.

Gold

Coal.

Confluence of the Lewes and Upper Pelly.

The country about the confluence, is generally speaking low, with extensive terrace-flats running back to the bases of rounded hills and ridges, of which none in sight probably exceed 1000 feet above the river. The moderate current which has been described as characteristic of the Upper Pelly for some distance above the confluence, continues to its mouth, but the Lewes is much swifter, and though at the point of junction divided among wooded islands, is evidently the larger stream, carrying a volume of water considerably greater than that of the Pelly, though probably less than twice as great (p. 15). It does not, however, necessarily follow from this that the Lewes is to be considered the principal head stream or continuation of the Yukon. The question of nomenclature and that of the position of the furthest sources of the Yukon, have, however, been referred to at greater length in another portion of this report. (p. 12).

Comparison of the rivers.

The water of the Lewes is of a bluish, slightly milky cast and is easily distinguished from the brownish muddy colour by which the Pelly is characterized below its junction with the Macmillan. The temperature of the water in both rivers was found to be practically identical, on the 17th and 18th of August, at 7 p.m., being 59° F.

Temperature.

Volume of united rivers.

The river below the confluence of the Pelly and Lewes averages about a quarter of a mile in width, and though its appearance is placid and there is no rough water, it is uniformly swift. An approximate cross-section made by Mr. Ogilvie, showed the river to be, at the point in question, 25·76 chains wide, from bank to bank. Of this width about two-thirds had an average depth of ten feet, with a surface velocity of four miles and three-quarters an hour. The remaining third was occupied by shallow bars and slack water. Using the same formula as before (see p. 95) the volume of the flow is found to be approximately 66,955 cubic feet per second. Traces of the passage of flood-water in the preceding spring were found on the river-flat, about ten feet above the low-water level, which, with a velocity no greater than that above stated and assuming the banks to be vertical, would give a flood discharge of at least 167,400 cubic feet per second. It may be, however, that the water-marks observed were caused by the damming back of the river by an ice-gorge.

Ruins of Fort Selkirk.

The ruins of Fort Selkirk, formerly a post of the Hudson's Bay Company, stand on a partly open flat, on the south side, at a short distance back from the river, and about a mile and a-half below the confluence of the Pelly and Lewes. One chimney, built of basalt blocks which must have been brought across the river, and cemented with clay which has been baked almost into brick by the combustion of the ruins of the fort, still stands erect and uninjured. The lower part of a second is near it, and the fragments of several others strew the ground, which is partly overgrown by small aspens. These, and the traces of a couple of excavations which have probably been cellars, are all that now remain to mark the site of the buildings which were pillaged by Indians from the coast in 1852.

Discovery and Exploration of the Liard and Pelly.

Hudson's Bay Company explorers.

Fort Selkirk, of which the ruins alone now exist, was at one time the most important post of the Hudson's Bay Company to the west of the Rocky Mountains in the far north, and with the exception of Fort Yukon, it was the farthest permanent post ever maintained by the Company to the north-west. On previous pages of this report, frequent mention has been made of the former establishments of the

Company in the Liard and Yukon region, and as Fort Selkirk is the last of these with which our route brought us in contact, a note as to the operations of the Hudson's Bay Company may appropriately be given here. When we call to mind that our knowledge of the geography of the region described in preceding pages has been up to the present time almost wholly due to the explorations carried out by the officers of the Company in connection with these establishments, it becomes evident that the history of these explorations and the facts respecting the several posts are well worthy of record.

McLeod.

The circumstances attending the discovery of the Dease and Upper Stikine have already been given on page 80. Mr. J. McLeod, whose explorations in that quarter are there referred to, appears in the same year in which he reached the Stikine (1834), to have ascended the Liard as far as Simpson Lake, and to have brought back the information according to which the river was represented on Arrowsmith's map of 1850. It was to the energy of Mr. Robert Campbell, however, that the exploration of the Upper Liard and Yukon is almost entirely due. The only published account of Mr. Campbell's work, so far as I know, is that which appeared in the Royal Reader, Fifth Book, Toronto, 1883, p. 435, and which was reprinted, with slight alterations at Winnipeg in 1885, as a small pamphlet entitled "Discovery and Exploration of the Youcon (Pelly) River." From this source and from additional facts furnished by Mr. Campbell in answer to questions addressed to him, as well as from allusions in the unpublished journals of Chief Factor James Anderson, which have kindly been placed at my disposal by his son, the following brief account is drawn up.—

Campbell.

After the abandonment of Dease Lake post in 1839, Mr. Campbell was, in the spring of 1840, commissioned by Sir George Simpson to explore the "north branch" of the Liard to its source, and to cross the height-of-land in search of any river flowing to the westward, especially the head waters of the Colville, the mouth of which on the Arctic Ocean had recently been discovered by Messrs. Dease and Simpson.

Expedition to the Pelly.

Mr. Campbell writes :—"In pursuance of these instructions, I left Fort Halkett [on the Lower Liard] in May, with a canoe and seven men, among them my trusty Indians, Lapie and Kitza, and the interpreter, Hoole. After ascending the stream some hundreds of miles, far into the mountains, we entered a beautiful lake, which I named Frances Lake, in honour of Lady Simpson. * * * Leaving the canoe and part of the crew near the south-west [*sic*] extremity of this [the west] branch of the lake, I set out with three Indians and the interpreter. Shouldering our blankets and guns, we ascended the valley of a river, which we traced to its source in a lake ten miles long, which, with the river, I named Finlayson's Lake and River." From this point, Mr. Campbell struck across to the Pelly, which he then named in honour of Sir H. Pelly, a Governor of the Company.

"After reaching the actual bank of the river, we constructed a raft, on which we embarked and drifted down a few miles on the bosom of the stream, and at parting we cast in a sealed tin can, with memoranda of our discovery, the date, etc."

Establishment of Fort Frances.

During Campbell's absence the remainder of the party built a house at the point between the two arms of the lake, which was then named "Glenlyon House," but was afterwards known as Frances Lake House or Fort Frances. Returning down the river, they met a trading outfit which had been despatched for them, at Fort Halkett, and turned back with it to Frances Lake, after sending out a report of their proceedings.

Exploration of the Pelly.

The Company now resolved to follow up those western discoveries, and in 1842, birch bark, for the construction of a large canoe to be used in exploring the Pelly, was sent up from Fort Liard. In the same year Fort Pelly Banks was constructed, or its construction begun, and early in June, 1843, Campbell left that place in the canoe which had been made, accompanied by Hoole, two French Canadians and three Indians.

They saw only one family of Indians ("Knife Indians") till they reached the mouth of the river which Campbell called the Lewes. Here was a large camp of "Wood Indians," and these, after recovering from their surprise at the sight of the party, so discouraged Campbell's men by their stories of the number and ferocity of the people on the lower river, that he was obliged to turn back.

"Pelly Banks"

For some years afterwards the operations of the Company did not extend beyond "Pelly Banks," though during the summer, hunting parties were sent down the Pelly to collect provisions, and in that way information was received respecting the river and the Indians inhabiting its vicinity.

Establishment of Fort Selkirk.

In the winter of 1847-48 boats were built at Pelly Banks, and early in June following Campbell set out to establish a fort at the confluence of the Pelly and Lewes rivers. This was named Fort Selkirk, and was at first situated on the extreme point of land between the two rivers, but this point being found subject to floods during the disruption of the ice, the post was in the spring of 1852 moved to a site a short way below the mouth of the Lewes, on the left bank. The inner work of the new buildings was still unfinished at the time of the Indian raid, noticed further on.

Exploration of Porcupine River.

Meanwhile an entry was being made into the Yukon basin from another direction. Mr. J. Bell had already, in 1842, reached the Porcupine or Rat River, and had descended it for three days' journey. He was in 1846 in charge of the Hudson's Bay post on Peel River, near the mouth of the Mackenzie, and was instructed again to cross the mountains and to further explore the Porcupine River. In pursuance of these instructions, he in that year reached the mouth of the Porcupine and saw the great river into which it flows, which the Indians informed him was named the Yukon. In 1847 Fort Yukon was established at the mouth of the Porcupine by Mr. A. H. Murray.

Identity of Pelly and Yukon shown.

It still remained, however, for Campbell, in 1850, to prove that the Pelly and Yukon were identical. This he did by descending the river from Fort Selkirk, to Fort Yukon, after which he ascended the Porcupine, crossed the mountain portage, and returned to Fort Simpson by the Mackenzie.* One result of this journey was to show that the route from Fort Selkirk by way of the Porcupine River to the Mackenzie was preferable to that originally discovered. The navigation of the Liard was both arduous and dangerous and several lives had been lost in boating on that stream. Added to this was the length of the land transport from Frances Lake to the Upper Pelly and the fact that great difficulty had been found in maintaining the posts in that district.

Abandonment of posts.

In 1849, the post at Pelly Banks, with the exception of the men's house, was accidently burnt. In 1850 it was finally abandoned, and in the spring of 1851 Fort Frances was likewise abandoned.† The abandonment of these posts was not due to any hostility of the natives, who were on the contrary most friendly, but in consequence of the circumstances above noted, and the fact that while these establishments were very expensive to maintain, they merely bought furs which would otherwise have been carried by the Indians themselves to other posts, if these particular, and to them more convenient ones, had not been in existence.

---

* Mr. Campbell states that when again on his way down the river from Fort Selkirk to Fort Yukon, in 1851, he found a great number of the Indians had been carried off during the previous winter by some virulent disease.

He has further informed me, in answer to my inquiries on the subject, that the Stewart River was so named after his "dear and gallant friend and assistant-clerk, James G. Stewart, son of the late Hon. John Stewart, of Quebec." Stewart was sent out in the winter of 1849 to follow the Indian hunters in quest of meat. He found them some distance north of this river, which he crossed on the ice.

White River, Mr. Campbell named on account of its milky colour. Of the other streams entering between Forts Selkirk and Yukon he says, "Antoine River" was named after the interpreter at one time at Fort Yukon, a son of his interpreter Hoole; "Forcier River," after his guide, Baptiste Forcier; "Lolique River," for Forcier's wife; and "Ayonie's River," below the White River, was named after the natives of that quarter.

† Forts Frances and Pelly Banks are erroneously stated in Dall's Alaska and its Resources, to have been burnt and pillaged, p. 115, foot-note and p. 508.

Irruption of the Chilkoots.

The several ruined chimneys of Fort Selkirk still to be seen, with other traces on the ground, are in themselves evidence of the important dimensions and careful construction of this post. The establishment consisted, I believe, in 1852, of one senior and one junior clerk and eight men. The existence of this post in the centre of the inland or "Wood Indian" country had, however, very seriously interfered with a lucrative and usurious trade which the Chilkoot and Chilkat Indians of Lynn Canal, on the coast, had long been accustomed to carry on with these people; acting as intermediaries between them and the white traders on the Pacific and holding the passes at the head-waters of the Lewes with all the spirit of robber barons of old. In 1852, rumours were current that these people meditated a raid upon the post, in consequence of which the friendly local Indians staid by it nearly all summer, of their own accord. It so happened, however, that they absented themselves for a couple of days and at that unlucky moment the Coast Indians arrived. The post was unguarded by a stockade and yielding to sheer force of numbers the occupants were expelled and the place was pillaged, on the 21st August. Two days afterward Campbell, having found the local Indians, returned with them and surrounded the post, but the robbers had flown. Being now without means of support for the winter, Campbell set off down stream to meet Mr. Stewart and the men who were on the way back from Fort Yukon. He met them at the mouth of White River, and after turning them back with instructions to arrange for wintering at Fort Yukon, set out himself in a small canoe up the Pelly River, crossed to Frances Lake, descended the Liard and arrived at Fort Simpson with the tidings of the disaster, amid drifting ice, on the 21st of October.

Campbell's journey of 1852.

Being anxious to obtain Sir George Simpson's permission to re-establish Fort Selkirk, Campbell waited only till the river froze, when he left Fort Simpson on snow-shoes and travelled overland to Crow Wing in Minnesota, where he arrived on the 13th of March. On the 18th of April he reached London but was unable to obtain from the directors of the company the permission he desired. A short account of this remarkable journey appeared in the Perthshire Advertiser and Inverness Courier, but I do not know the precise date of the publication.

News from Fort Selkirk.

In the autumn of 1853, one of Campbell's hunters arrived at Fort Halkett on the Lower Liard by way of the Pelly and Frances. This is the last traverse of Campbell's Portage of which I can find any record, though it may doubtless have been used by the Indians subsequently. From this man it was learnt that the buildings at Fort Selkirk had been all but demolished by the local Indians for the purpose of getting the iron-work and the nails. He also stated that the Chilkats, being unable to carry away all their plunder in the preceding year, had taken merely the guns, powder and tobacco. They had câched the heavier goods, which were afterwards found and appropriated by the local or wood Indians. At a later date the ruins of the post must have been burnt, as their present appearance indicates.*

The United States and Fort Yukon.

Fort Yukon, at the mouth of the Porcupine, was continuously maintained till 1869, when the Hudson's Bay Company was expelled by the United States Government as represented by Capt. Charles W. Raymond, Corps of Engineers, U. S. Army; he having ascertained by astronomical observations that the post was situated to the west of the 141st meridian. He describes his proceedings as follows.—"On the 9th of August, at 12 m., I notified the representative of the Hudson's Bay Company that the station is in the territory of the United States; that the introduction of trading goods, or any trade by foreigners with the natives, is illegal, and must cease; and that the Hudson's Bay Company must vacate the buildings as soon as practicable. I then took possession of the buildings and raised the flag of the United States over the fort." † The fort was afterwards abandoned and allowed to go to ruin.

Pioneers of the Hudson's Bay Company.

The utmost credit must be accorded to the pioneers of the Hudson's Bay Company for the enterprise displayed by them in carrying their trade into the Yukon basin in the face of difficulties so great and at such an immense distance from their base of supplies. To explorations of this kind, performed in the service of commerce, unostentatiously and as matters of simple duty by such men as Mackenzie, Fraser, Thompson and Campbell, we owe the discovery of our great north-west country. Their journeys were not marked by incidents of conflict or bloodshed, but were accomplished on the contrary with the friendly assistance and co-operation of the natives. Less resolute men would scarcely have entertained the idea of utilizing, as an avenue of trade, a river so perilous of navigation as the Liard had proved to be when explored. So long, however, as this appeared to be the most practicable route to the country beyond the mountains, its abandonment was not even contemplated. Neither distance nor danger appear to have been taken into account, and in spite of every obstacle a way was opened and a series of posts established, extending from Fort Simpson on the Mackenzie to Fort Yukon. Fort Simpson may itself be regarded, even at the present day, as a post very far removed from the borders of civilization, but this further route, which nearly half a century ago became familiar to the Company's voyageurs, stretched out beyond it for over a thousand miles. Mr. James Anderson, in 1853, writes thus of the Liard River: "You can hardly conceive the intense horror the men have to go up to Frances Lake. They invariably on re-hiring endeavour to be exempted from the West Branch [Liard]. The number of deaths which have occurred there is fourteen, viz., three in connection with Dease Lake and eleven in connection with Frances Lake and Pelly Banks, of these last, three died from starvation and eight from drowning."

---

* Of Reid House, shown on Arrowsmith's map of 1854, near the Stewart River and to the north of Fort Selkirk, I have been unable to learn anything. Mr. Campbell never heard of it, and if it had any existence it was probably a temporary outpost of Fort Yukon.

† Report of a Reconnaissance of the Yukon River, 1871, p. 16.

Dangers of the Laird.

The "returns."

At the time of the establishment of Forts Yukon and Selkirk, and for many years afterwards, the "returns" from these furthest stations reached the market only after seven years, the course of trade being as follows: *Goods.*—1st year, reach York Factory; 2nd year, Norway House; 3rd year, Peel River, and were hauled during the winter across the mountains to La Pierre's House, 4th year, reach Fort Yukon. *Returns.*—5th year, reach La Pierre's House and are hauled across to Peel River; 6th year, reach depot at Fort Simpson; 7th year reach market.

LEWES RIVER.

Meeting with Mr. Ogilvie.

Our proceedings at the mouth of Lewes River and our meeting there with Mr. Ogilvie have already been noted. We finally left the confluence and began the ascent of the Lewes on the 18th of August, and arrived at Lake Lindeman, where the portage to the coast begins, on September 16th. We were during this time on the one travelled route of the country, and every few days fell in with small parties of miners, generally on their way out, up the river. A few men were still found working on bars, and six or eight passed down stream with the purpose of wintering at or near Forty-mile Creek.

Though my own observations did not extend below the month of the Lewes, Mr. W. Ogilvie sent out by the last party of miners met by him on their way to the coast, a small collection of rocks from places further down the river, as far as Forty-mile Creek. The general character of these has already been noted in the introductory part of this report (p. 32). They are not further described here, as they will be referred to by Mr. McConnell in connection with his geological examination of the portion of the river from which they were derived.

Discovery of the Lewes.

The Lewes River* was discovered and named by Mr. Campbell in 1842, as already stated. It is indicated in an approximate manner, according to information supplied by this gentleman, on Arrowsmith's map of 1854. Mr. Campbell informs me that he was well aware of the existence at its head of a portage to the sea by which the Chilkat Indians came inland to trade. This route he had the intention of exploring, but the question of supplies and other difficulties prevented him from doing so. Communication was occasionally had by this route with the Hudson's Bay steamer which traded along the coast, and it was thus that the Honolulu paper mentioned as received in 1848 by Sir J. Richardson, on the Mackenzie, was sent inland. Such communication was however, only accomplished by travelling parties of Indians.

First exploration.

In 1867, Frank E. Ketchum, of St. John, New Brunswick, and Michael Labarge, of Montreal, explorers in the employ of the Western Union Telegraph Company, ascended the Pelly or Yukon from Fort Yukon to the mouth of the Lewes, returning down the river. In the same year, Michael Byrnes, also an explorer of the Telegraph Company, reached the Hotolinqu (of Telegraph Survey map, not the river subsequently so called by miners) which is now known to be one of the furthest if not the most remote source of the Lewes. This he did from the direction of the Stikine, but was recalled before he had, by descending the river, proved its relation to the Lewes.†

Incursion of miners.

As stated on a later page, in connection with the history of gold mining in the Yukon basin, the head-waters of the Lewes River were first reached from the head of Lynn Canal about 1878. Between the date of the explorations of the Telegraph Company and this time, the Lewes may have been visited by traders ascending from the Lower Yukon, but of this we have no record. Previous to 1883, however, the river and some of its tributaries had become well known to a number of miners and prospectors, and when Lieut. Schwatka, in the last-

Surveys by Schwatka.

---

* So named by Campbell after Chief Factor, John Lee Lewes.

The name of the Lewes given to me by the Tagish Indians was Ta-hī-ne-wat (=Big Salmon River) but I am doubtful whether this applies to the whole stream or to some special part of it.

† See Dall's Alaska, p. 277. A statement in a subsequent paragraph on the same page would appear to indicate that Messrs. Ketchum and Labarge reached Lake Labarge of later maps, but I can find nothing to bear this out. Whymper, in his travels in Alaska and on the Yukon (p. 229) also limits their journey at Fort Selkirk. Dall, in consequence of the imperfection of the map of the Telegraph Survey with which he was supplied, in his work and on the map accompanying it, continues the head-waters of the Taku River into the Hotolinqu River, making them tributary to the Lewes, but in an addendum, at the end of the book, notes and corrects this error.

mentioned year, crossed the Chilkoot Pass and descended the Lewes, he merely followed in their foosteps. To Lieut. Schwatka is, however, due the credit of having made the first survey of the river, a survey which Mr. Ogilvie's work of 1887, has proved to be a reasonably accurate one, in so far as its main features are concerned. This being the case it would be an ungracious task to criticise in detail, either Lieut. Schwatka's map or the various accounts which he has given of his journey. As, however, he is not sparing in his condemnation of the inaccuracy of the compilers of the maps made before the results of his journey were available, I need have no hesitation in stating my belief, that his desire to affirm that he had started at the source of the Yukon and followed it to its mouth, caused him to fail to observe that Lake Lindeman is not even on the main source of the Lewes, and to change the name of the Lewes which had already appeared on the maps for about thirty years to that of Yukon, a quite arbitrary and unjustifiable proceeding. (See p. 12.) In addition to this he has completely ignored the names of many places already well known to miners, throughout the country, substituting others of his own invention, some of which even differ in the different versions of the map of his route which he has published. Strict justice might demand the exclusion of all these new names on the definitive maps now published, but to avoid an appearance of arbitrary action in the matter, and more especially in view of the scientific eminence of some of the names which he has selected, it has been decided to retain as many as possible of these.

Pelly and Lewes contrasted.

While the general course of the Upper Pelly is remarkably straight, that of the Lewes makes several important and well marked bends and is besides interrupted by lakes and otherwise irregular. These irregularities are to be accounted for by the fact that the Lewes, instead of following a direction parallel with the main orographic features of the country, runs for a considerable part of its course diagonally across the principal ridges and valleys.

Distances.

In describing the Lewes and the main geological features met with along it, the site of Fork Selkirk is taken as an initial point and the distances are given as measured on the map, up the mid-channel of the river. The distances thus arrived at will not be found to correspond exactly with those given by Mr. Ogilvie in his preliminary account of his survey of the river,* Mr. Ogilvie's distances being those instrumentally measured from station to station of his survey.

---

* Contained in the Annual Report of the Department of the Interior for 1887. See also Report of Proceedings of Association of Dominion Land Surveyors, 1888, p. 61.

Fort Selkirk to Rink Rapid.

Character of the river.

From the site of Fort Selkirk to Rink or Five-finger Rapid, the course of the river is nearly straight, the bearing being about S. 50° W. and the distance, measured by the stream, fifty-five miles. The current of this part of the river is swift throughout, averaging about four miles and a-half an hour and seldom being under four miles. At a point six miles below Rink Rapid, where the course of the river was uninterrupted by islands and its velocity and width about normal, the rate of flow was found to be 4·8 miles per hour, the width 732 feet. There are numerous islands, which differ from most of those met with on the Pelly in frequently occupying positions in mid-channel instead of being merely portions of river-flats cut off by lateral sloughs. A few miles above the mouth of the Lewes, these islands are particularly numerous, from a distance of about five miles, and the total width of the stream from bank to bank, is increased to nearly a mile. This group has been named Ingersoll Islands by Schwatka.

Terraces.

The terraces and flats immediately bordering the river, are at first quite low, but in ascending, increase in height till they stand often at 100 to 200 feet above it before reaching Rink Rapid. They are for the most part composed of rolled river- or valley-gravels like those of the Pelly at a similar distance above the confluence. Boulder-clay first occurs in the scarped banks about six miles below Rink Rapid.

Boulder-clay.

Character of the valley.

The river-valley is generally wide and somewhat ill defined, the ridges and low hills bounding it seldom exceeding 1000 feet in height. Near the mouth of the river these are irregularly disposed, but further up, those on the north-east bank become more uniform and run parallel to the stream like the hills on that part of the Pelly near the Macmillan. In a few places the slopes of the hills run down to the water's edge, and it is generally only at such points that rock exposures occur. Hoo-chee-koo Bluff is situated thirty-five miles above the old fort, on the north-east bank, and is formed by the abrupt face of an isolated hill, against which the river washes. With the exception of Tatshun River, a mile and a-half below Rink Rapid, the tributaries of this part of the Lewes are merely small brooks. This stream is about 30 feet wide by 6 inches deep, with clear brownish water.

Rink Rapid.

Two miles below Rink Rapid, the Lewes makes a right-angled bend to the south-westward. The rapid itself is caused by the occurrence of several bold rocky islands which obstruct the river, and is only a few yards in length, where the water flows swiftly between them. The channels are deep and unobstructed, and at low stages of water might, I believe, be ascended by a steamer of good power even without the assistance of warping. At high-water this rapid would, of course, be more formidable, as the velocity of the stream would be increased. It is pretty evident that a fall has at one time existed here, but the barrier of conglomerate which has produced it has now been cut completely through by the river. Below the main rapid there is a second "riffle" or minor rapid which appears to be somewhat stony, but which would not be a serious impediment to a properly constructed steamer.

Fine country.

The general appearance of the country along this part of the river is pleasing and resembles that of the corresponding part of the Pelly. It is usually wooded, but the southern exposures of some of the hills are partly open, and dry, grass-covered terrace-flats are frequent. The trees are of the same species before mentioned and birch is moderately abundant. *Elæagnus argentea* was noted on dry banks.

Geology.

On this part of the Lewes, rock-exposures are unfrequent, and it is consequently impossible to give any connected account of the geology. About five miles above the old fort, on the west bank, are outcrops of basalt, which appear to indicate an outlying patch of this rock. Just below these on the river, is a dark-greenish rock which seems to be a bedded diorite and to have a high south-west dip. On the other side of the basalt, a massive, coarsely crystalline, black, hornblende-rock occurs, which is followed by hornblendic granite. The granite, in some places, contains large porphyritic crystals of pink felspar, in addition to the more abundant white triclinic felspars. It continues for some miles, near the Ingersoll Islands, and probably connects with the exposures on the Pelly to the north-east. The few exposures examined between the granite and Hoo-chee-koo Bluff, consist of greenish and greenish-gray rocks, being altered volcanic materials, probably with the lithological composition of diabase. In one place a distinct volcanic agglomerate was seen.

Hoo-chee-koo Bluff.

Hoo-chee-koo Bluff consists of a gray, slightly porphyritic, felspathic rock which is apparently interbedded with a fine-grained, nearly black argillite, but the rocks are everywhere very much fractured and jointed. The south end of the bluff shows a pretty evident, altered agglomerate of a similar felspathic material. The jointage-planes often contain seams of calcite and show copper-staining. Specimens of the copper-stained portions of the rock proved, on assay by Mr. Hoffmann, to contain minute traces of gold, with ·088 oz. of silver to the ton.

The rocks along the Lewes so far described, with the exception of the granites, may be referred to the Palæozoic.

Rocks above Hoo-chee-koo

For about twelve miles above the Hoo-chee-koo Bluff, no rocks were seen, after which, for eight miles, or to Rink Rapid, there are frequent exposures of rocks of a different series, of much less altered appearance and all probably referable to the Cretaceous. These include coarse, hard, dark grauwacke-sandstones, with softer shaly sandstones, passing into dark sandy shales, all more or less calcareous. Just below Rink Rapid, on the south-east bank, are brownish evidently tufaceous rocks, the materials of which also, however, include well rounded quartz pebbles. These pass by easy stages into grauwacke-sandstones and are interbedded with coarse conglomerates containing pebbles of granite and of greenish altered volcanic rocks, like those of the older series seen lower down the river. Carbonaceous streaks and pieces of dark-coloured fossil wood are included in some of the beds; and a couple of layers two to three feet thick, were observed, which are so carbonaceous that they might almost be called coal. The dip is here N. 20° W. < 40°, but elsewhere in this vicinity is varied and confused.

Cretaceous rocks.

The rock of the islands and banks of the actual rapid is coarse conglomerate which often contains boulders of granite up to eighteen inches in diameter and is interstratified with irregular beds of yellowish sandstone, the appearance of the conglomerate being much like that of the conglomerate of Jackass Mountain on the Fraser River, though somewhat less altered. Immediately above the rapid, on the south-east side of the river, gray and blackish shales, with thin beds of sandstone and of limestone, appear from below the conglomerates. These were found to contain fossils in considerable abundance, though representing but a few species.

Conglomerates and sandstones.

The fossils have been examined by Mr. Whiteaves, who states that of four determinable species, all but one appear to be new, but that the occurrence of a *Schlœnbachia* apparently identical with a species from the lower part of the section in the Queen Charlotte Islands, would seem to show that the rocks may be of corresponding age, or about the lower part of the Middle Cretaceous.

Cretaceous fossils.

The species are as follows* :—

Discina pileolus, N. sp.
Cyprina Yukonensis, N. sp.
Schlœnbachia borealis.
Estheria bellula, N. sp.

Sir J. Wm. Dawson has examined the fossil woods found at the same place, and writes of them as follows :—"Two species of fossil coniferous wood. One of these shows large wood-cells with one to two rows of discs and long narrow medullary rays. It is not improbably the wood of a species of *Sequoia*. The other has thick-walled wood-cells with one row of discs and spiral lines, the medullary rays being short and few celled. It has the characters of a taxine wood, and is not unlike

Fossil plants.

---

* [Described and figured in Contributions to Canadian Palæontology, vol. 1, pt. 2.]

that of *Salisburia*. Another specimen from this place is a small and badly preserved branchlet, with short and apparently thick curved subulate leaves. It is probably coniferous, and it is not unlike *Sequoia ambigua* and *S. concinna*, of Heer, from the Cretaceous of Greenland. It is, however, quite obscure, and might be a species of the Mesozoic genus *Pachyphyllum*."

Gravels of the Lewes.

The constituents of the gravel found along the Lewes River differ considerably in appearance from those of the Pelly gravels. Granite of various kinds is abundant, and there is a notable profusion and variety of green and grayish-green altered rocks of volcanic origin in association with which are found occasional pebbles of more or less pure jade, which appear to pass by insensible gradations into green rocks of the kind above mentioned. Quartz vein-stuff is much less important as a constituent of the river-gravels than it is on the Upper Pelly, Upper Liard and other streams to the eastward.

Rink Rapid to Little Salmon River.

From Rink Rapid to the mouth of the Nordenskiöld, the general bearing of the river is nearly due south, the distance in a straight line being twelve miles. From this point the general bearing is about south-east for eighteen miles and a-half, when it turns abruptly to a north-east direction round Eagle's Nest Rock, and in five miles reaches the mouth of the Little Salmon River. The total distance from Rink Rapid to the last-named place, measured by the stream, is fifty-three miles, though the through distance, on a straight line (which would have a south-east bearing) drawn between the two terminal points, is twenty-seven and a-half miles only.

Nordenskiöld River.

The Nordenskiöld is a small swift river with clear bluish water, which enters the Lewes on the west side. It was estimated as eighty feet wide by six inches deep, a couple of hundred yards above its mouth, on the 23rd of August, when it was evidently near its lowest stage. Its valley is not a wide or important one, it being in fact difficult to decide from which direction the stream comes a few miles back from the Lewes. The Little Salmon (or Daly, as re-christened by Schwatka) joins the Lewes on the opposite side, and was estimated to carry about twice as much water as the Nordenskiöld. It is about one hundred feet wide with an average depth of three feet. The water is clear and brownish in tint, and the current not rapid at the mouth.

Lewes valley.

The valley of the Lewes, between Rink Rapid and the Little Salmon River, is in general somewhat irregular and not very wide, but a few miles before reaching the Little Salmon, the river turns into a wide valley which runs north-east and south-west and appears to be continuous with that of the Little Salmon in the first mentioned direction. The hills, in the vicinity of the river, seldom exceed 800 feet in height, till near the Little Salmon, when they attain 1000 or possibly 1500 feet. No mountains are in sight from this part of the river. Terraces rising to 200 feet are frequent and often run back at about that level to the bases of the hills. Near the mouth of the Nordenskiöld, the river is extremely crooked, and the current is everywhere swift. The southern slopes of the hills and terraces are generally in large part open and grassy, no difference such as might indicate a climate more humid than that of the region about old Fort Selkirk being met with. Several magpies were seen, for the first time, on this part of the river.

Gold bars.

The first spot observed by us in ascending the river where bars have been worked for gold, is situated six miles above the Nordenskiöld.

Thick Cretaceous series.

The rocks along this portion of the river, like those last described, belong to the Cretaceous series, but their attitudes are too varied to enable anything like a complete section to be gained from the isolated exposures met with, though the impression was received that the total thickness represented must be very great. The rocks consist generally of sandstones, grauwackes, coarse grits and conglomerate which not unfrequently have a general reddish appearance on weathering, probably in consequence of local dolomitization. A few localities, however, show features worthy of special mention.

Beds of coal.

One of these is found five miles and a-half above Rink Rapid, where a high bluff shows a series principally composed of sandstones, shales and shaly clays, poorly exposed in consequence of the sliding character of the bank, which is being washed away by the river at its base. These have a south-eastward dip, at low angles, and the thickness of beds represented must be several hundred feet. This exposure includes, within sixty feet of the base of the bluff, at least three coaly beds, of which the lowest is about three feet thick. This and the other beds contain some good looking coal, of which a thickness of about a foot sometimes occurs, but the greater part of the material is so sandy and impure as to be useless. The highest of these beds is underlain by a layer of dull purplish-gray, finely granular and porphyritic trachyte from six to eight feet in thickness, and evidently representing a contemporaneous flow of volcanic matter. Its upper surface is somewhat broken up and mixed with carbonaceous matter, and passes into black, carbonaceous sandstone, about a foot thick, above which is the upper impure coal before referred to, overlain by shales and sandstones of the ordinary character.

Wide syncline.

The condition of all the beds in this vicinity is remarkably unaltered, as compared with those seen lower down the river, and would appear to show that if (as assumed) they form a connected series, these represent its upper part. The dip of these beds, taken in connection with that of those near Tantalus Butte and the horizontal appearance of the strata in the hills to the south-westward, indicates the existence of a syncline five or six miles in width, running in a south-west by north-east direction. The relatively high position of these beds is further shown by the occurrence, about two miles further up the river, of fossil plants referable to the Laramie. These were found in a hard, white, shaly rock, which has apparently been permeated by waters charged with silica about the time of its formation. Sir J. Wm. Dawson states that the following species are represented:—

Fossil plants.

Taxodium Tinajorum, Heer.
Glyptostrobus Europœus, Heer.
Sequoia Langsdorffi, Heer (doubtful).

Composition of coal.

The thin coal-seams here actually seen cannot be considered as of economic value, but are important as indicating the existence of a coal-bearing horizon which may prove to contain thicker beds elsewhere and might become an important point in connection with the navigation of the river. The coal has been examined by Mr. G. C. Hoffmann who describes it as a lignite-coal, with the following composition:—

Hygroscopic water	6·03
Volatile combustible matter	36·92
Fixed carbon	49·03
Ash	8·02
	100·00

Conglomerate

About a mile below Eagle's Nest Rock, are exposures of coarse conglomerate, with inter-bedded sandstones precisely like those of Rink Rapid. The included stones are well rounded, and often a foot in diameter, and consist of granites and various green and gray hard, altered, volcanic rocks. This is probably the same conglomerate bed with that of the rapid. The dip here is N. 13° W. ∠ 40°.

Drift deposits

Frequent exposures of true boulder-clay occur along this part of the river, particularly above the Nordenskiöld, where they often form castellated bluffs, in consequence of their considerable induration. The boulder-clay generally shows traces of bedding more or less distinct, and is sometimes very stony and includes large boulders, a few of which were observed to be striated. The pebbles are, as a rule, well rounded and even superficially polished. Clayey gravels with silty layers are in places associated with the boulder-clay in the manner already described on the Pelly. In some places the boulder-clay also appears to be overlain by silty deposits, but on the Lewes thus far up, these are not extensive or well marked.

Little Salmon to Big Salmon River.

The river and its valley.

From the Little Salmon to the mouth of the Big Salmon River (or D'Abbadie), the general bearing of the Lewes is about east-south-east, and the sinuosities of the river are not nearly so great as in the portion last described. The distance by the stream between these tributaries is thirty-four miles. A considerable portion of this part of the river is not so swift as usual, and for eight or ten miles, midway between the Little and Big Salmon rivers, both the river and its valley are more than usually narrowed. Beyond this, the valley begins to widen rapidly, and for some miles before the mouth of the Big Salmon is reached, is notably wide, between the bases of the limiting hills. At the mouth of the Big Salmon, the Lewes turns abruptly to the south, while the main valley is continued in a south-easterly direction, becoming there the valley of the Big Salmon. From the confluence of the rivers, the main valley can be seen running on for a distance of about fifteen miles, bordered by low hills to the northward, and by higher hills to the south. These last are the Seminow Mountains of Schwatka. The Lewes cuts through this range, which is continued also for some miles westward, forming the south-west side of the Lewes valley. The hills are rounded in form and wooded, and rise to height of 1500 to 2000 feet above the river.

Geological features.

Few rock-exposures occur along this part of the Lewes, and in consequence, nothing very definite can be said as to its geological structure. Thirteen miles above the Little Salmon, greenish, grauwacke-sandstones, and green, highly calcareous conglomerates were found, the latter containing pebbles of limestone or marble, granite, various schistose rocks and green altered volcanic rocks. The greater part of the hills in this vicinity seemed to be composed of similar materials, which are evidently newer than the altered volcanic series, and therefore in all probability Mesozoic, and very possibly even Cretaceous. For some distance below the Big Salmon, numerous fragments of lignite-coal and of soft, shaly materials, like those previously described as occurring with the coal, are found on the bars, but cease to appear above the confluence of the Big Salmon, leading to the belief that Cretaceous or Laramie rocks attain a considerable development in the valley of that stream. It would require, however, a detailed survey to separate the various formations in this region, and the result of such an examination would probably be to place in the Mesozoic series a much larger area than would, at first sight, appear probable. At the mouth of the Big Salmon a gray-green, crystalline rock which is apparently a diorite, occurs. It appears to be bedded, and dips southward at an angle of 25°.

Bedded silts.

Nine miles below the Big Salmon is the first extensive display met with on the Lewes of the bedded silty deposits. Scarped banks and cliffs one hundred feet in height are here composed of these white silts with some interstratified sands and gravels. The silts contain numerous nodular layers and sheets of calcareous concretionary matter, and are hard and fine-grained toward the base, where they may be seen, in some places, resting on boulder-clay.

Gold.

Several bars which had been worked on for gold were seen along this part of the Lewes.

Big Salmon River.

Appearance of the river

The Big Salmon* has been re-named by Schwatka the D'Abbadie River, a name which has the merit of being more distinctive than that previously in use, but the miners who (with the exception of the Indians) alone travel through the country, refuse to know it by any but the old name. It is much more important than any of the tributaries joining the Lewes further down, being 347 feet wide, with a depth of five feet for about one-third of its width, and a current of about two miles an hour. The water is clear and of a bluer tint than that of the Little Salmon, and the discharge was estimated at 2726 cubic feet per second, when probably rather below its mean stage. It might, no doubt, be navigated by a small stern-wheel steamer for many miles.

Notes on upper part of river.

I was afterward so fortunate as to meet a party of four miners who had spent a part of the summer of 1887 in prospecting this stream, and from one of them, Mr. John McCormack, obtained some particulars respecting it, together with a sketch of its course. Thirty-two miles from the Lewes, the Big Salmon is said to be joined by a smaller stream, which McCormack calls the North Fork. For about a mile and a half below and a short distance above the mouth of this branch, the river is very rocky and rapid. Half a mile above it there is an Indian salmon-fishing place. For some distance beyond this the river is sluggish, and at sixty-six miles from the Lewes, the South Fork branches off. This fork occupies a wide valley and comes from the south-eastward. Above it the water is swifter and the valley of the river is narrow, with high mountains on both sides, but particularly on the north. Granite and mica-schist were seen along this part of the river.

---

* Ta-tlin-hi-ni of the Tagish.

At a supposed distance of one hundred and five miles from the Lewes, another stream joins from the south-east, and this also occupies an important valley, though not so wide as that of the South Fork. Above this point the river turns to a northerly bearing for about fifteen miles, the current being, in general, slack. It then reverts to an easterly bearing, and after passing a rapid, at one place, Island Lake is reached at 190 miles from the Lewes. This lake is four miles long, and has two arms at its upper end, from the southern of which a river leads, in eight miles, to a second lake two miles and a-half long. A stretch of river, a mile and a-half long, joins this to the highest lake, which McCormack named Quiet Lake, and of which he estimates the length at twenty-four miles. At the outlet of the lake is an Indian fishing place. The country to the south of these lakes is mountainous, granite being a common rock, and several streams run from these mountains into Quiet Lake. The north-east side of the lake is bordered by lower ridges, and from its head, McCormack travelled about eight miles, through a low country, to the bank of the Tes-lin-too, which he found here flowing from north to south.*

Lakes at head of river.

These miners found "fine" gold all along the river, but no good paying bars. They were in search of "coarse" gold, but did not discover any. A small specimen of pyrites and quartz, from veins met with on one of the streams flowing into Quiet Lake, given to me by Mr. McCormack, was found by Mr. Hoffmann to contain very distinct traces of gold with a trace of silver.

Gold

According to the Indians, the salmon run up this river to its source, and the same is reported of the Little Salmon and the Tes-lin-too.

Salmon.

Big Salmon River to Tes-lin-too. [*Hotalinqu.*]

As already noted, the bearing of the Lewes becomes nearly due south, at the mouth of the Big Salmon. Though crooked in detail, it preserves this general bearing to the mouth of the Tes-lin-too, a distance by the river of thirty-one miles. Both the valley and the river itself are unusually narrow where the Seminow Hills are cut through, the width of the range being about five miles, and the river continues narrow and deep, with a swift current, beyond this point, though, the valley widens and permits the stream to resume its flexuous character. The actual width of the river, at a point nine miles below the mouth of the Tes-lin-too, was ascertained to be 483 feet, the current being at the rate of 4·84 miles per hour. These

The river and river-valley.

---

* The above estimates of distance are probably all in excess, and include the minor sinuosities of the stream. The actual distance from point to point are shown on the map as well as it has been possible to estimate them.

figures may be taken as representing the general character of this part of the stream. A short distance south of this point, the river again begins to widen and to resume its usual aspect. The hills bounding the valley on the south of the Seminow range seldom exceed a height of 800 feet, till the vicinity of the confluence of the Tes-lin-too and Lewes is reached, when they gradually increase to 1000 or 1500 feet.

•Cassiar bar

A number of auriferous gravel-bars have been worked along this part of the Lewes, including Cassiar Bar, which has so far proved the richest on the river. Limited areas of the river-flats have also been worked over, where the alluvial cover is not too deep.

Lewes and Tes-lin-too compared.

The valley near the mouth of the Tes-lin-too is again narrower than usual, singularly so for the point of confluence of two important rivers. The valley of the Tes-lin-too is evidently the main orographic depression which continues that occupied by the Lewes below the confluence. The Lewes flows in through a narrow gap, closely bordered by high hills and nearly at right angles to the lower course of the river. On the map accompanying Lieut. Schwatka's report, the width of the Tes-lin-too is shown as about half that of the Lewes, the actual fact being precisely the reverse and all the main features of the lower river being contained by the Tes-lin-too; while the other branch, both in its irregular mode of entry, the nature of its banks, the colour of its water and its very rapid current, presents, at first sight, all the appearance of a tributary stream of new character. To such an extent is this difference observable, that Mr. Ogilvie and the members of his party, as well as most of the miners on the river, were of the opinion that the Tes-lin-too actually carries much the greater volume of water. As this appeared to be a question of some importance, we stopped a day at the confluence for the purpose of investigating it, cross-sectioning each river and ascertaining the rate of the current at distances of about half a mile from the junction, where the circumstances were favourable. It was thus ascertained that the rivers possess the following dimensions :—

Volumes of rivers.

	LEWES.	TES-LIN-TOO.
Mean width	420 feet.	575 feet.
Maximum depth (near left bank).	12 "	(near right bank) 18 feet 4 inches.
Sectional area	3,015 "	3,809 feet.
Maximum velocity	5·68 miles pr. hr.	2·88 miles pr. hr.
Discharge per second	18,664 cubic feet.	11,436 cubic feet.

Water of the two rivers.

In connection with these measurements it may be stated that the Lewes showed evidence of having risen about a foot above its lowest summer level, while the Tes-lin-too was probably near its lowest summer stage.* If we subtract the volume of water represented by this extra foot in depth, the discharge of the Lewes at the summer low-water stage may be approximately stated at 15,600 cubic feet. The water of the Lewes has a blue, slightly opalescent colour, much resembling that of the Rhone where it issues from the Lake of Geneva, while that of the Tes-lin-too is brownish and somewhat turbid. The temperatures of the Lewes and Tes-lin-too were respectively 54° and 53·5° F. on the evening of August 31st. A considerable part of the water of the former stream must be derived from the glaciers and snows of the Coast Ranges, but the existence of large lakes on both streams doubtless accounts for their proximate equality in temperature.

---

* All the rivers in this country reach their actual minimum toward the end of the winter.

Rocks.

From the few exposures which occur on that part of the Lewes which cuts across the Seminow Hills, the range would appear to be composed of greenish, altered volcanic rocks, probably diabase, interbedded with gray or whitish marble. Rocks of this character are those which have supplied the material for the conglomerates described before, and are evidently much older than these and doubtless referable to the Palæozoic. At another place, south of the Seminow Hills, felsite, schistose diabase and dark fractured argillite were noted in association, and at about a mile and a-half below the Tes-lin-too, purplish and greenish amygdaloid, with calcareous filling, was seen. The exposures on this part of the river are few and unconnected and that last mentioned shows less sign of alteration than usual, and may be referable to a period newer than the Palæozoic.

Drift deposits.

Clayey and earthy gravels, like those often associated with the boulder-clay, were noted in some places along this part of the Lewes. These are overlain by nearly white, bedded silts, which often form entire banks of considerable height. A mile and a-half below the mouth of the Tes-lin-too, the first glaciated rock-surfaces seen in ascending the Lewes, were noted. The direction of glaciation is N. 4° E. The glaciation is here well preserved on surfaces a few feet above the river, and consists of wide, shallow, straight grooves and flutings, quite evidently the work of a glacier.

Tes-lin-too [Hotalinqu] River.

Notes on the river.

The Tes-lin-too River is named the Newberry or Tess-el-heena* on Schwatka's map, and is evidently the same which is sketched on the

---

* This is doubtless a version of Tes-lin-hī-nī, ***hin*** (or in combination *hī-nī*) being Tagish for river. Tes-lin-too is the name given to me by the Tagish Indians, the termination being the Tinné equivalent for *hīn*. This is, however, not the only case of such use of Tinné words by the Tagish. Nas-a-thane is doubtless Nī-sutlīn or Ni-sutlīn-hi-nī, the name of the river above the great lake. Krause names this river, on an Indian sketch attached to his map, Tis-lin-hin.

U. S. Coast Survey map of Alaska, etc., (1884) as the Nas-a-thane. By the miners who pass along the Lewes, it is known as the Hootalinkwa or Hotalinqu, in consequence, as it proves, of a misapprehension. The Hotilinqu, which has appeared on the maps for many years, was traversed in its upper part by Byrnes in the course of his exploration already mentioned. I have ascertained that one or more of the miners who first descended the Lewes knew Byrnes and were familiar with his work, and, naturally enough, on finding this river, they jumped to the conclusion that it was the Hotalinqu of which he had told them.*

River not yet mapped.

This river still remains to be explored and mapped, and as it drains a country with a rather dry climate, the area of its basin is probably very considerable. It has been prospected to some extent by a few miners, but it is difficult, from the accounts which they are able to give, to ascertain much of a definite character respecting it. At the mouth of the river we met Mr. T. Boswell and two other miners who had spent most of the summer on it, and from Boswell's description, together with sketches subsequently obtained from Indians, the following notes are drawn up.

Tes-lin Lake.

The upper river.

The general tread of the Tes-lin-too appears to be south-eastward, and Boswell estimates its length, to the great lake, at one hundred miles. There are no rapids or falls in this distance, but the water for sixty or seventy miles from the mouth is moderately swift, the remaining distance to the lake being quite slack. The lake is represented as being at least one hundred miles in length, but accounts differ as to the existence of a large tributary river at its head, some affirming that there is merely a small unimportant stream. Be that as it may, the main continuation of the Tes-lin-too is found at the head of an arm ten or twelve miles long, on the east side of the lake. This river, known to the Tagish Indians as Ni-sutlīn-hī-nī, must come from a north-easterly direction in the first instance, and it is represented as circling completely round the head of the Big Salmon River and rising between that river and the Upper Pelly. At a distance variously estimated at from eighty to one hundred and twenty miles from its mouth (and said by the Indians to be two days' travel down stream), the river forks, the west fork being the larger and that of which the course has just been described. The east fork is swift and full of rapids and rises in a mountainous country, which no doubt represents a portion of the northern continuation of the Cassiar Range. The Indians travel several days up this fork and then cross mountains to tributaries of the Upper Liard and descend by these to the little trading post at the confluence of the Liard and Dease. Between the mouth of the main river and the forks above mentioned, the navigation is fairly good and no heavy rapids occur.

---

*[Explorations just completed, however, show that Byrnes actually reached the head of Tes-lin Lake.]

Features near the lake.

The great lake above mentioned, into which the Ni-sutlĭn-hĭ-nĭ discharges, is said by the Indians to be the largest known to them. It is named Tes-lin by the Tagish Indians, and is bordered to the westward, at a distance of several miles, by a high range of mountains, while a similar range, but of inferior height, runs along its east side and, further north, separates the Tes-lin-too from the Big Salmon. Near the head of the lake is an Indian trail by which, it is said, the head of canoe navigation on the Taku River may be reached in two long days packing. Inquiry seems to show that the distance from point to point by this trail is about sixty miles, and that it crosses a range of mountains, but not at such a height as to pass entirely out of the timber. It is stated that a miner named Mike Powers, with eight or nine other men, crossed from the Taku to the lake in 1876 or 1877. These men built three boats on the lake, but do not appear to have done much prospecting and came out by the same route by which they had entered.

Pass to Taku.

Gold.

There are two Indian salmon-fishing stations on the Ni-sutlĭn-hĭ-nĭ above Tes-lin Lake. Mr. Boswell and his partners found fine gold all along the Tes-lin-too and also on the Ni-sutlĭn-hĭ-nĭ. They worked in different places along the river and appear to have done fairly well.

Tes-lin-too to Lake Labarge.

From the mouth of the Tes-lin-too [or Hotalinqu] to the lower end of Lake Labarge the distance by the Lewes is twenty-seven miles and a-half. The river is very crooked and for the first six or seven miles very rapid, averaging probably six miles an hour. Large boulders occur in its bed in some places, but it is believed that a stern-wheel steamer of good power might ascend without difficulty. The current becomes slack three or four miles before reaching the lake. The river does not follow any well marked or important valley, but an irregular depression among lumpy inconsequent hills, none of which probably rise over 1000 feet above it. No rocks were found exposed on the river, but some of the hills are evidently composed in large part of pale, gray limestone. Scarped banks, about a hundred feet high, show boulder-clay overlain by white silts, which on the lower part of this reach of the river form about one-third of the height of the bank. The lakes above evidently prevent the occurrence of heavy floods on this part of the river, the sod coming down quite to the edge of the water in a manner not found on the lower part of the Lewes or on the Tes-lin-too where seen near the mouth.

Lake Labarge.

Nomenclature of the lake.

This lake, through which the Lewes River flows, is undoubtedly that named for Mike Labarge on the older maps, though Schwatka names it Kluk-tas-si which is, no doubt, an attempt at its Tagish Indian name Tloo-tat-sai′. Krause calls it Tahiniwūd, which is evidently the name given to me as that of the Lewes River.

Size of the lake.

The lake is a little over thirty-one miles in length. It lies nearly north-and-south, but is somewhat irregular in outline and does not present the parallel-sided form and constant width of most of the mountain lakes. About six miles of its lower end averages two miles and a half in width. It then maintains a pretty constant width of a mile and a half, for nine miles, after which it again increases in size and attains a width of five miles near Richtofen Island. (Named Richtofen rocks and shown as a peninsula on Schwatka's map). Its elevation above sea-level is approximately 2100 feet. It appears to maintain its level pretty constantly, the total rise and fall as indicated by the shores being about four feet only. It was about a foot above its low-water stage at the time we passed early in September.

Country about the lake.

The lake is bordered nearly everywhere by hilly or mountainous country, but two important valleys occur which require special mention. The first of these evidently forms the continuation of the hollow occupied by the lake itself, and runs on from its north or lower end in a north-westward direction, while the river, where it leaves the lake, turns to the north-east and breaks through the ranges of hills on that side. The greater part of this valley, which I propose to name the *Ogilvie valley*, appears to drain from the lake in a north-westerly direction and probably to White River, as it is seen to be blocked by terrace-flats about 200 feet above the lake, at a distance of a few miles from it. The second valley begins in a tract of low land to the west of Richtofen Island and runs parallel to the first, being like it, one of the main orographic valleys of the region. A small river appears to enter the lake from this valley. The mountains on the south-west side form a well characterized range, but appear scarcely to exceed 2500 feet in height above the lake. They carried, however, some patches of old snow, the first seen by us since leaving the upper part of the Pelly River.

Mountains.

The hills along the lower part of the lake on the east side are quite remarkable in their abrupt forms and have white limestone summits. They rise from 300 to 1000 feet above the lake and no higher mountains were seen behind them. Further up the lake, on the same side, similar limestone mountains attain a height of about 2000 feet at a short distance back, but are not so remarkable in form. On the west side of the lake, north of the Richtofen valley, the hills slope gradually back from the shore and in a few places reach a height of probably 2000 feet above it, at some miles inland. The outlines of these hills are monotonous and they are wooded nearly to the summits. South of the Richtofen valley the *Miner's Range** approaches the lake at an oblique angle, but decreasing in altitude. The mountains forming this range are more varied in form than those just described.

Survey of the shores.

Mr. Ogilvie's measured line was carried down from point to point along the west shore of the lake, a few points only having been fixed on the east shore by triangulation. In order to complete the outline of the lake I decided to make a track-survey of the east shore, connecting this by bearings with known points on Ogilvie's survey. We had not time to circumnavigate the lake and nothing was known to point out one side as better than the other for the purpose of geological examination. The lake is reputed to be a very stormy one, the prevailing winds being from the south in summer, and often so strong that miners have been detained in camp for many days. We lost almost the whole of one day, owing to wind, on our way up the lake. Though local evidence of a more humid climate was noted on the Lewes near the Seminow Hills, these are soon lost after passing that range, and along Lake Labarge, southern slopes of terraces and hills are often grassy and open. *Anemone patens* was noted as abundant in many places.

Climate.

Two series of rocks.

The rocks bordering the east side of Lake Labarge evidently represent two distinct series, of which the older is for the most part composed of gray limestone, which, in some places, nearly approaches marble but in others becomes rather flaggy and argillaceous. Resting unconformably on this, is a series composed of conglomerates, which pass into hard gray and greenish grauwacke-sandstones, and hard, dark, calcareous shales which occasionally become nearly black, impure, flaggy limestone. The two series are folded together, the strike of both being north-north-west, meeting the shore of the lake very obliquely. The direction of dip is generally westward at high angles or vertical. The conglomerates are chiefly composed of greenish, gray and purplish altered volcanic rocks, together with limestone of various kinds, and the same constituents in a more comminuted form enter into the composition of the grauwackes. At a point opposite Richtofen Island, black, argillaceous and calcareous beds are charged with numerous angular fragments of the older limestones, the occurrence of which and of the pebbles of altered volcanic rocks elsewhere associated with the limestones, constitute the evidence of unconformity, as the two series are too closely folded together to admit the observation of an angular unconformity. The good exposures found along this shore of the lake are important as indicating the intimate manner in which the rocks of differing age are associated in this region. They show that their separation on the map can be accomplished only by means of a detailed survey. No characteristic fossils were found in the older limestone series which may, however, be regarded from analogy as probably of Carboniferous age. The newer series is evidently Cretaceous and very probably of the horizon of Series C., the Lower Shales and Sandstones, of the Queen Charlotte Islands. A few fossils were obtained at the point already referred to, opposite Richtofen Island, on which Mr. J. F. Whiteaves supplies the following note.—

---

* I name this for the miners met by us along the river, good fellows all of them.

Cretaceous fossils.

"The fossils collected at this locality appear to be somewhat as follows, though they have only been subjected, so far, to a preliminary and by no means exhaustive examination. 1. A single specimen of a small sponge, and, 2. several badly preserved corals, one with compound and very slender corallites. 3. Several small lamellibranchs apparently referable to three genera, two of which are represented by mere fragments, while the other may be a form of *Pleuromya lævigata*. 4. A mould of part of a spiral gasteropod, which may be referable to *Nerinœa* or to the genus *Pseudomelania* of Pictet and Campiche. 5. A piece of a phragmocone of a small belemnite.

"These fossils, though somewhat obscure, appear to be of Cretaceous age and possibly of about the horizon of Series C., of the Queen Charlotte Islands."

Of the rocks on the opposite or west side of the lake nothing certain can be said. Limestone is, however, not a prominent feature in the hills near the lake, though apparent in some of those seen behind the first range. It is not improbable that the Mesozoic rocks are here more extensively developed.

Terraces.

Glaciation.

Terraces were noted on the lower part of the lake at about 200 feet above it and at various lower levels, and near the head of the lake they were seen at an elevation estimated as being at least 400 feet above it. The rocks along the lake-shore frequently show glaciated surfaces, the bearing being in general parallel to that of the lake and the sense of the movement of ice from south to north. The limestone hills are channelled, planed and fluted along their sides and over their summits in such a way as to indicate the former existence of very heavy ice pressure. Two miles from the lower end of the lake, at the water-level, the glaciation points directly down the valley through which the river now runs, or N. 24° E., while two miles further on, the summit of a limestone hill 300 feet high, is crossed by heavy glaciation running N. 8° W. The latter may be accepted as that of the main direction of motion, the divergence met with being not greater than that frequently found in tracing the course of the ice of the former Strait-of-Georgia glacier on the coast, where it has passed over rugged country,* and it would appear that in this case the main mass of ice moved into the wide Ogilvie valley, while part of the lower portion of the mass was pressed through the smaller valley by which the lake itself now discharges. Where the limestone hills have recently been stripped of their covering of soil, the sloping glaciated surfaces are still so smooth that it is difficult to walk over them.

Origin of the lake.

No definite indication of the mode of origin of the lake was obtained. The observation just cited shows that the valley through which it now discharges existed in glacial times, but it may probably have been of less importance and it is not impossible that before the glacial period the river flowed out by the Ogilvie valley which may since have become blocked by morainic or other drift deposits.

Lake Labarge to Tahk-heena [*Tahini*] *River.*

The valley.

Beyond the head of Lake Labarge, the valley of the Lewes continues equally wide, and runs in a general southward direction like that of the ake. At the head of the lake, the valley is occupied by swampy flats nearly at the water-level and by low terrace-flats, which, where cut in the river banks, are seen to be composed of stratified fine sands, which are often iron-stained and a few miles up the river are found to rest upon the white silts, showing that they are valley deposits of post-glacial date. The limestone range which has bordered the east side of Lake Labarge, runs on in a southward direction, forming the east side of the wide valley. Eleven miles and a-half from the head of the lake the Tahk-heena River flows in from the west, making a right angle with the main river and at thirteen miles further (still measuring along the river), the foot of White Horse Rapid is reached. The current of the Lewes is rather slack for eleven miles from the lake, and the bed and banks are clayey or sandy. Above this point, the river becomes swift, averaging about four miles an hour, and gravel banks and bars reappear. For about two miles below the White Horse Rapid, the current is very swift, and though the latter may be designated as the head of possible steamer navigation, it would scarcely pay to endeavour to force a steamer up to the very foot of the rapid.† No rock-exposures

The river.

---

*See Annual Report, Geol. Surv. Can., 1886, p. 100 B.

†Several small stern-wheel steamers have, for some years, ascended each summer the Lower Yukon, in Alaska, but so far as I know, none of these have yet gone further up than the mouth of the Stewart; it would, however, be quite practicable to ascend to the point here indicated [1887.]

whatever were seen along this part of the Lewes, the scarped banks, which are often a hundred feet in height, consisting almost entirely of white silts with a widely undulated bedding.

Tahk-heena [*Tahini*] *River.*

Size of the river.

The Tahk-heena* River is a considerable stream and is wide and slack at its confluence with the Lewes. At about 200 yards from the Lewes, where it has attained its normal size, it was ascertained to be 237 feet wide, with a depth of ten feet for about one-third of this width, and a current estimated at two miles an hour. The discharge may be roughly estimated at 3600 cubic feet per second, and appeared to be about half that of the Lewes above the junction or one-third of that below the confluence. The hills which border the south side of this river at its mouth, rise to high rugged mountains at about fifteen miles to the west, and these have the appearance of being largely composed of granite. The water of this river is very turbid as compared with that of the Lewes, and the temperature of both rivers was found to be 52° F. on the 6th of September.

Upper part of the river.

The principal sources of the Tahk-heena are shown by Dr. A. Krause's exploration to be at a distance of forty to fifty miles from the head of the west branch of Lynn Canal, and the river was formerly much employed by the Chilkat Indians, whose chief place is on that arm, as a means of reaching the interior. It is not used by the miners and now [1887] only to a small extent by the Indians themselves, on account of the long and difficult carriage from the sea to its head, but the lake at the head of the river once reached, the voyage down stream is reported to be easier than that by the main river, the rapids being less serious. A sketch of the course of the Tahk-heena River, probably based on Indian accounts, is given on map No. 20 which accompanies the U. S. Coast Survey Report for 1867. This sketch has, however, not been employed on the map of 1884, it being probably supposed at that time that the Indian information on which it had been drawn referred to the upper part of the Lewes.

The Cañon.

White Horse Rapid.

The White Horse Rapid and Miles Cañon form together the most formidable obstacle to the use of the Lewes as a route into the interior, constituting an interruption to navigation of two and three-quarter miles in total length. White Horse Rapid is three-eighths of a mile long.* The worst rapid is at the lower end of the White Horse, where the river is little more than a hundred feet wide, with low basaltic banks, and the force of the water is very great. In the upper part of the White Horse, the water flows between low basalt cliffs scarcely exceeding twenty feet in height, but sufficient to render tracking precarious and difficult, while the occurrence of numerous rocks in mid-channel makes the rapid dangerous to run. The portage is on the west bank and it is usual to carry both boats and cargo over it.

---

*Named the Yukon at its outflow from "west Kussooâ Lake" at its head, on Krause's map. The orthography of the published maps is here retained. The name would probably be more correctly rendered Ta-hi-ni.

Between the White Horse and the foot of the cañon the river is very swift, and at one place, a mile above the former and three-quarters of a mile below the latter, the set of the stream is so strong round a rocky point as to render it advisable to make an additional short portage of 130 feet. A third portage of five-eighths of a mile is necessary at Miles Cañon. This portage is on the east bank, and at the lower end, a very steep ascent has first to be overcome. Here a sort of extemporized windlass has been rigged up by the miners for the purpose of hauling up their boats. The cañon is cut through a horizontal, or nearly horizontal, flow of basalt and is not more than about a hundred feet in width, with vertical cliffs averaging about fifty feet, and never exceeding one hundred feet, at the sides. It opens out into a species of basin in the middle, but the river is elsewhere inaccessible from the banks. Terraced hills rise above the basalt walls on each side of the valley, but are particularly abrupt on the west bank. The river flows through the cañon with great velocity, but is unimpeded in its course, and it is therefore not very risky to run with a good boat. The White Horse Rapid is, however, much more dangerous, and though some of the miners have run through it—generally accidently—it should not be attempted.

The cañon.

The basaltic rocks of the rapid and cañon are not seen for any distance above or below these points, and appear to represent a local effusion of no great area, which is probably confined to the bottom of the valley. A second wide valley runs behind *Cañon Hill*, to the east, and it is possible that this may represent a pre-glacial channel of the river. The basalt is itself evidently older than the glacial deposits. It is gray in colour and often vesicular, the cavities being in some places filled by a radiating zeolitic mineral.

Basaltic rocks.

Miles Cañon to Lake Marsh.

The great structural valley which is occupied by Lake Labarge and by the river above it up to this point, runs on above the cañon as a

Lewes River and valley.

---

* The distances here given are those measured by Mr. Ogilvie.

wide, important depression, bearing nearly due south, and appears to be uninterrupted till it joins the lower end of Bennett Lake, thirty-two miles distant. The course of the river, however, diverges to the south-east, in which direction also a wide valley runs, and in twenty-three miles (following the stream) the lower end of Lake Marsh is reached. This valley, though extensive between its limiting slopes, is not regularly bounded by parallel ranges, like that first mentioned. The current of the river to within five or six miles of the lake is moderate, not exceeding three miles an hour, and the immediate river-trough is narrow, being rather closely bordered by terraces of a hundred feet or more in height. Above this point, to the lake, the current is quite slack; the terraces gradually retreat toward the bases of the hills, and wide swampy flats occur. The water above the cañon is quite clear and blue, showing that its turbidity further down is entirely due to the washing away and falling in of the high banks of silt. The turbidity of the Tahk-heena is probably also due to the same cause.

Vegetation. *Anemone patens* and *Elæagnus argentea* are common on dry banks, and slopes covered with bunch-grass and *Artemisia frigida* still occur, evidencing a dry climate. The black pine (*Pinus Murrayana*) is now very abundant, much more so than on the lower river, and it was here observed that this tree began to assume a more branching and less rigid form than it has to the north. Large numbers of salmon were found dead or dying along the banks for a few miles above the cañon, and the grass along the shores was trodden down by bears attracted here by this circumstance. No salmon were found so far up as Lake Marsh, and the Indians state that this is their limit. It would appear that after their long journey from the sea, those which get so far, exhaust their last remaining strength in ascending the cañon.

Salmon.

White silts. There are some very fine exposures of stratified white silts, often interbedded with sands, along this part of the river, but no boulder-clay was seen; neither are there any exposures of rock in place. Basalt is seldom found as a constituent of the gravels above the cañon, and then only in small pebbles. Rounded pieces of greenish, jade-like rocks and impure jades, which were abundant below the Tes-lin-too, here again become common.

Jade.

Lake Marsh.

Situation of Lake Marsh. Lake Marsh, so named by Schwatka, in honour of Prof. O. C. Marsh, is known to the miners as "Mud Lake." It is twenty miles in length, with an average width of about two miles, pretty uniformly maintained. The valley of which this lake occupies the centre, is notably wide, and

Mountains.

the country in the immediate vicinity of the lake in quite low, consisting of terrace-flats, or low rounded or wooded hills and ridges. Conspicuous mountain summits, however, occur at a distance of some miles inland on both sides of the lake. A moderately well defined range, of which Michie Mountain* 5540 feet in height is the most elevated point, bounds the view on the east side of the lake, from which it diverges in a south-easterly direction. To the west is an irregular and broken mass of mountains in which several notable gaps occur and which occupy the country between Lake Marsh and the Watson valley, previously referred to. The highest points of these, *Mounts Lorne* and *Lansdowne*, were ascertained to have approximate elevations of 6400 and 6140 feet respectively. The diversified forms of the mountains in view from this lake render it particularly picturesque, and at the time of our visit, on the 10th and 11th of September, the autumn tints of the aspens and other deciduous trees and shrubs, mingled with the sombre greens of the spruces and pines, added to its beauty.

The lake and its tributaries.

The shores of the lake are generally rather shoal, and in some places the beach-gravel was found to rest on mud or clay, but these peculiarities are not so striking in themselves as to warrant the application of the name "Mud Lake." The mouth of the M'Clintock River, which enters the lower end of the lake from an important valley, was not examined closely. It appeared, however, to be a small stream, and the greater part of the country to the east of the lake probably drains to the Tes-lin-too. A second stream joins the lake at the south-east angle at its head.

Track-survey.

As in the case of Lake Labarge, Mr. Ogilvie's measured line was here carried along the west shore, and in order to complete the outline of the lake, I travelled up the opposite side, making a track-survey of it, which has been embodied on the map.

Rocks.

The rocks seen at the lower end of Lake Marsh, and on the island, may be taken as representing the composition of the range which borders the Lewes on the north-east for some distance below, They consist of greenish and purplish altered volcanic materials, probably all diabase in composition, and are bedded, the strike being approximately parallel to the run of the range just mentioned. Further up the lake on the same side, similar rocks were noted in several places, together with some which might be taken to represent the grauwacke-sandstones of the newer series described on Lake Labarge. The higher mountains off to the eastward appear to be, at least in part, composed of limestone. At the head of the lake are considerable exposures of black and dark-gray, hard, slaty argillites, finely cleaved and traversed by numerous small quartz veins. The strike of the cleavage is S. 30° E., with a high easterly dip.

---

* So named by Schwatka.

Glaciation.

The rock surfaces along the lake are heavily glaciated, the direction being, in general, parallel to that of the main valley. The evidence is such as to show, however, that at least the subjacent part of the ice of the former great glacier, bifurcated at the north end of the lake, one branch taking the valley of the Lewes, the other that of the M'Clintock River. In the same way, at the south end of the lake, a great part of the ice has been delivered through the wide valley which comes from the south-east between *Jubilee Mountain** and *Mount White.*†

Tagish, Bennett and Lindeman Lakes.

Connecting river.

The upper end of Lake Marsh is connected with Tagish Lake by a wide tranquil reach of river five miles in length. The current is here very slack, and the depth, according to Ogilvie, from six to twelve feet. The river is bordered by low terraces, which are particularly wide on the west side, and are covered with open woods, chiefly consisting of white spruce and cottonwood. To the east, the long irregular ridges and slopes which culminate in Jubilee Mountain begin to rise a short distance back from the river. A mile above Lake Marsh, on the east bank of the river, are two roughly built houses belonging to the Tagish Indians. These are the only permanent houses seen along the whole course of the Lewes, and here the Tagish people who roam over this part of the country, reside during the winter months.

Indian houses.

Navigable waters.

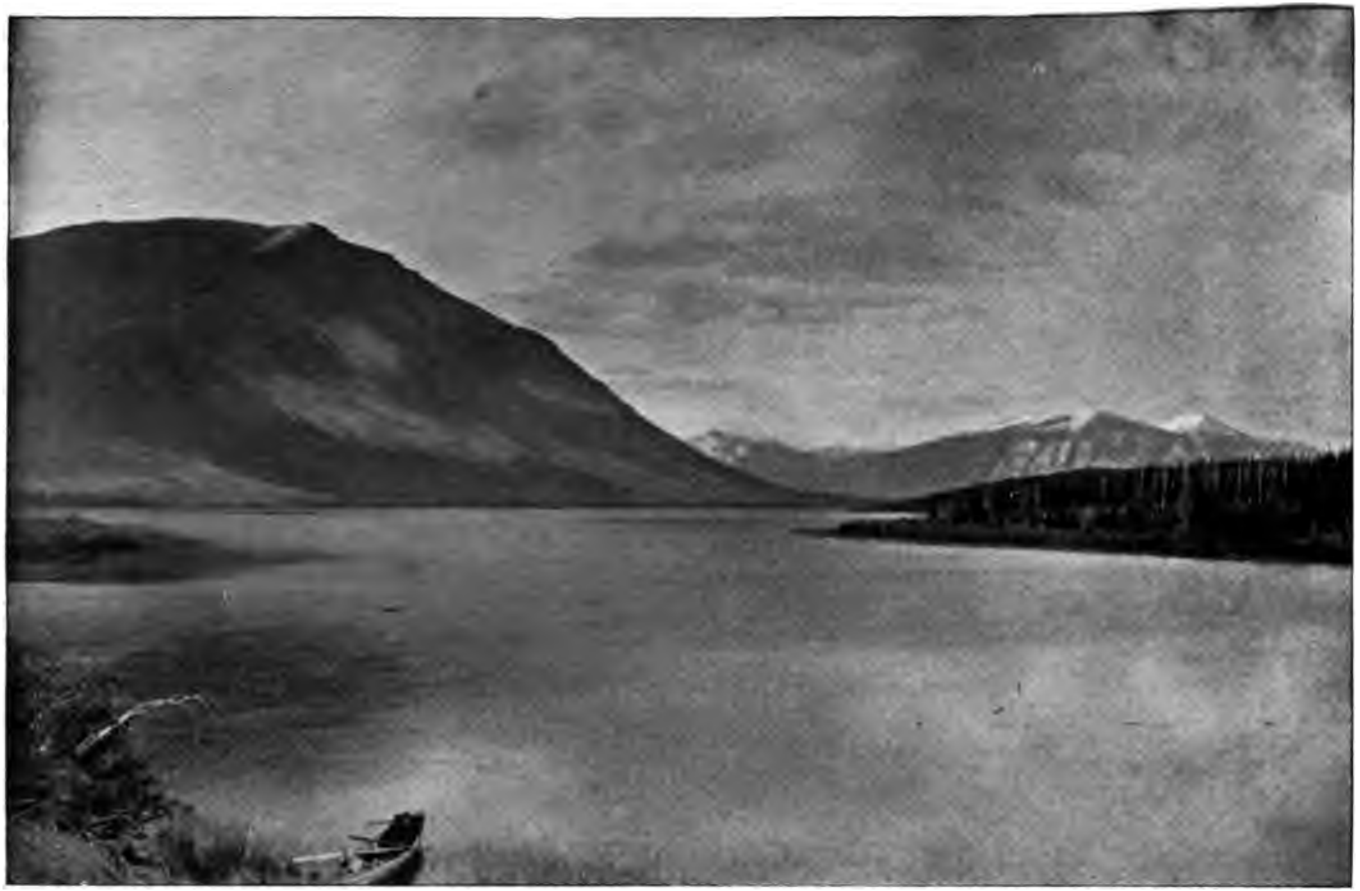
From the description just given, it will be seen that the navigation, by steamers, from the head of the cañon through Lake Marsh and to Tagish Lake would offer no difficulties, while the tranquil character of the connecting river between the two lakes last mentioned, is such as to practically render Lake Marsh the lower portion of an extensive system of still-water navigation which includes not only Tagish Lake but also Lake Nares, Lake Bennett and possibly other connected waters and which will prove of the greatest utility at no distant date in facilitating the opening up and development of the mineral resources of the tract of country in their vicinity.

The through distance, from the lower end of Lake Marsh to the head of Lake Bennett, measured along the central line of the various

---

* 1887 being the year of Her Majesty's jubilee.

† So named in honour of the late Hon. Thos. White, to whose initiative the despatch of the expedition to which this report refers was largely due.



G. M. D.—Photo., Sept. 14, 1887.

LAKE NARES, LOOKING EASTWARD FROM CARIBOU CROSSING.

lakes and connecting waters, is about seventy miles, made up as follows.—

Marsh Lake	20	miles.
River	5	"
Tagish Lake	16·6	"
Lake Nares	2·7	"
Bennett Lake	25·8	"
Total	70·1	

The still-water navigation, however, includes also the West Arm of Bennett Lake, about twelve miles ; Windy Arm of Tagish Lake, eleven miles ; Tako Arm of same lake, (of which some notes are given below) at least twenty miles ; making a grand total of at least one hundred and thirteen miles.

Scenery.

Taken as a whole, these lakes constitute a singularly picturesque region, abounding in striking points of view and in landscapes pleasing in their variety, or grand and impressive in their combination of rugged mountain forms.

Height above sea-level.

The elevation of this remarkable system of lakes above the level of the sea, as approximately ascertained by the mean of about eighteen barometric observations extending over several days, (all taken in triplicate on as many different aneroids,) is 2150 feet. The mean of the barometer readings was compared with that of those taken during the same days at Haines' mission, on Lynn Canal, and the resulting height as above given, is probably a near approach to the truth.

Position relatively to Coast Ranges.

The inner or north-eastern edge of the Coast Ranges is not here very well defined, but Tagish and Bennett lakes, with their several arms, may be described as lying upon this border and as in part penetrating the outskirts of the range. The lower part of Tagish Lake occupies the continuation of the same wide valley in which Lake Marsh lies, and the valley of the Tako Arm may also be included as a part of the same depression. To the west of this, the upper part of Tagish Lake and Bennett Lake must be considered as lying among the mountains of the Coast Ranges, and the height as well as the abrupt and rugged character of the mountains increase in that direction, their slopes and summits holding large areas of permanent snow, even late in the summer.

Connection of the lakes.

The lower part of Tagish Lake is very generally bordered by terrace-flats or by low land of the nature of terraces, and the valley runs through to the lower end of Bennett Lake, with a nearly uniform width, as measured between the bases of the mountains, though the lake is somewhat constricted between Tako and Windy arms by the extension of the low land from the north side. A similar projection of low alluvial land separates Lake Nares from the west end of Tagish Lake, a river-like current being distinctly observable in the narrows. The same occurs at the narrows known as the Caribou Crossing which separates Nares from Bennett Lake, but here with the addition of a number of irregular sand-hills, with which the low land in question is covered, and which also extend round a considerable part of the north end of Bennett Lake.

Arms of the lakes.

The Windy Arm of Tagish Lake, together with the upper part of Bennett Lake and its West Arm are comparatively narrow mountain-walled inlets, with all the characters of true fiords. The Windy Arm terminates in low, hilly land, from which a couple of small brooks come, but no important stream; and it would appear that the drainage which might be expected to enter here is cut off by a transverse valley which holds a lake and flows out towards the Tako Arm.

The West Arm of Bennett Lake was not explored to the head, but terminates in a mass of wild, rugged and bare mountains, of which the outline sketch given on the opposite page may give some idea. The upper part of the main lake lies, as a narrow water-way, between beetling granite ranges which rise almost perpendicularly to heights of 3000 and 4000 feet above it. Many of the summits beyond the heads of these fiords and in the vicinity, attain heights of 6000 to 7000 feet above the sea, and the region is in every sense an alpine one, though no dominating peaks of great altitude occur.

Climate and vegetation.

In consequence of the position of this country, in the lee of the higher crests of the Coast Ranges, and notwithstanding its considerable altitude, the climate appears to be equally dry with that met with about the side of old Fort Selkirk, and no very striking difference is observed in the character of the vegetation. The southward-facing slopes of some of the mountains, to a height of a thousand feet or more above the lake, are grassy and open, a circumstance particularly observable on the north side of the west part of Tagish Lake and on Lake Nares. The *Amelanchier* was seen on the lower part of Tagish Lake, this being the most northern station observed, and *Anemone patens* continues abundant, locally. Somewhat more alpine conditions are, however, indicated by the occurrence of *Picea subalpina*, which was noted as abundant at the water-level on Windy Arm, and on the upper part of Bennett Lake forms entire groves, growing to a considerable diameter, but tapering rapidly and very rough and knotty. Several places were, however, noticed where miners had built boats on Bennett Lake, and it was here that Mr. Ogilvie constructed a large scow for the transport of his provisions and bulky freight down the river.

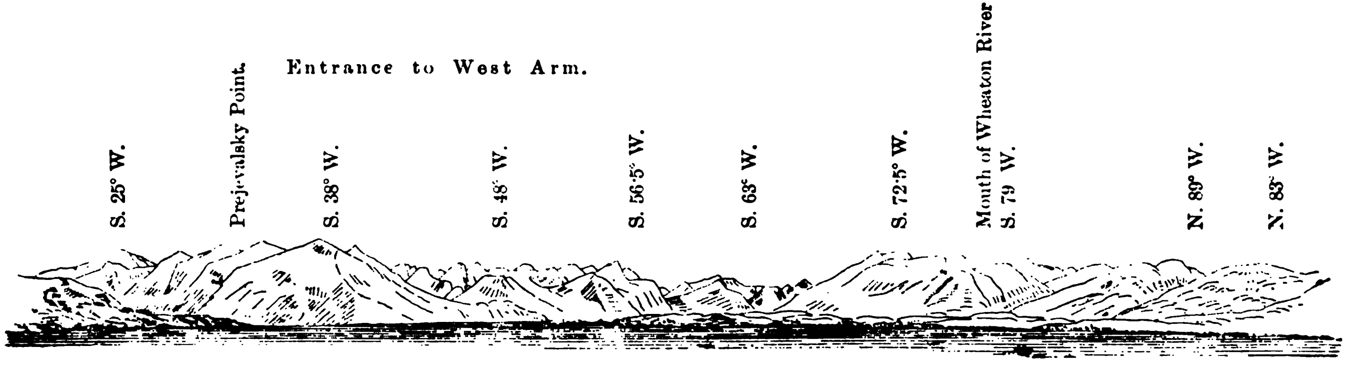

S. 25° W.
Prejevalsky Point.
Entrance to West Arm.
S. 38° W.
S. 48° W.
S. 56·5° W.
S. 63° W.
S. 72·5° W.
Mouth of Wheaton River
S. 79 W.
N. 89° W.
N. 83° W.

FIG. 6. LOOKING TOWARD COAST RANGES, UP WEST ARM OF BENNETT LAKE, FROM EAST SIDE OF LAKE.

(The figures placed above the various summits are true bearings.)

Tako Arm.

The Tako Arm, which has already been alluded to, really constitutes the main continuation and upper part of Tagish Lake. It is narrowed at its entrance to a width little exceeding a mile, by a promontory from its west side, but further on, maintains pretty uniformly, for ten miles or more, a width of a mile and a-half to two miles. It is bordered on the west by a uniform, bare and wall-like range of limestone mountains, between which and the edge of the lake, however, a certain width of lower slopes intervenes. The east side is similarly bordered by mountains which also appear to be in the main composed of limestone, but the forms of these were not so well seen, as they were continuously covered by clouds and mists while we were near them. This arm was not explored and with its connected waters yet remains to be properly delineated on the map. It runs in a south-eastward direction for a distance estimated at ten miles, beyond which it turns more nearly south, and its length and other features connected with it can only be given on the authority of Indian reports and sketches. A long way up this arm, possibly twenty miles or more, a considerable river enters from the east. This is the main continuation of the Lewes and is reported to be a tranquil stream of no great length, resembling that between Marsh and Tagish lakes. It flows out of the west side of another very long lake which lies nearly parallel to Tako Arm. This lake, near its south end, receives several feeders, one of which, entering at its extremity, I suppose to be the Hotilinqu River of the Telegraph Survey, already mentioned,* though the Tagish Indians informed me they named it Yil-hī-nī. It is probably the south end of this lake which was reached by Byrnes in 1867, and its connection with the Tako Arm and the remarkable system of lakes just described, would explain the statement made to Byrnes by the Indians, viz., that it was three days' good paddling in a canoe to the lower end of the lake. The length of the portage from the head of this lake to the Indian houses on the Taku was variously stated by Indians at from two to four days. The trail is said to be good, and to run through low country except at one place where it follows along the mountain to avoid swampy land. The name of this lake was given by one Tagish Indian as *A-tlin*, by another as Tā-koo-shok and again Sik-ī-nī-kwan, the last being said to be the Taku Indian name. The first-mentioned name is adopted on the map.

Connection with Taku River.

Main source of Lewes River.

It is certain that the greater part of the water constituting the Lewes River enters by the Tako Arm. This is rendered apparent in comparing the stream which flows out of Tagish Lake with that entering it by the narrows from Lake Nares, where the discharge is probably not much over one-fourth of the volume of that of Tagish Lake.

---

* [A supposition now known to be incorrect. See foot note page 141.]

The brooks entering Tagish Lake (exclusive of Tako arm) are quite insignificant.

Names of the lakes.

The Indian name of the lake here named Tagish Lake is Ta-gish-ai (Tagīschā of Krause). It is commonly known by the miners as Tako Lake, and Schwatka adopts this name on his map. It appears, however, admissible to revert to the proper Indian pronunciation of the name, as is here done. I am obliged, by the facts of the case, to include Bove Lake, of Schwatka, as part of Tagish Lake, but in order to preserve the name, propose to attach it to the large island in the mouth of Windy Arm. Lake Nares is known to the miners as "Moose Lake," Lake Bennett as "Boat Lake." In these cases, though not without some doubt as to the propriety of so doing, I retain Schwatka's later names. The Tagish Indian name of Lake Bennett is Koo-soo-wā′. It is the East Kussooā Lake, of Krause. Its west arm is called Noo-koo-tahk. The name of the island on Bennett Lake is Ketle-di-kā′-te. I did not ascertain the Indian name of Lake Nares. The islands on Tagish Lake, of which Bove Island is one, are named In-te′-i.

Observations by Schwatka.

It will be observed, on comparing Lieut. Schwatka's map with that now published, that he names the west arm of Bennett Lake (though nearly two miles wide at the mouth) "Wheaton River." To the river which enters near this arm from a valley parallel to the Watson valley, I propose to apply this name. In the same way, Windy Arm is put down as "Bove Bay and probably river," and the great Tako Arm is shown as "Tako River," and described as a stream of inconsiderable dimensions. I can offer no reasonable explanation of these errors.

Geology of the Lakes.

General character of the rocks.

The eastern edge of the granitic rocks of the Coast Ranges, is found to cross Bennett Lake obliquely, and probably runs northward along the Wheaton valley. The rocks exposed on the lakes to the east of this line, may be described as belonging, in so far as ascertained, to a single great Palæozoic series, of which the subdivision cannot yet be attempted, but in which the only fossils found by us are of Carboniferous age. It is the same to which the older rocks on the Lewes belong, and closely resembles, both lithologically and in its fossils, the typical area of the Cache Creek series on the Thompson and Fraser. The series, as a whole, here consists of massive limestones, with a great thickness of green and green-gray diabase and felsite rocks, representing altered volcanic materials, and dark or light-coloured cherty quartzites and argillaceous or calcareous schists. The order of superposition is uncertain, but the limestones appeared probably to constitute an upper member of the series, and to be closely associated with the more important masses of contemporaneous volcanic material, while the cherty quartzites and schistose or slaty beds may follow respectively in descending order beneath the limestone. Volcanic materials are, however, found in greater or less quantity in all parts of the series.

Schists.

Limestone.

Black argillaceous schists and gray, silvery calc-schists, were found on the east side of Tagish Lake, between the lower end and the entrance of Tako Arm, and again at the head of Windy Arm, in considerable force. At the latter place, the argillite is finely cleaved, forming a true slate. It contains quartzite pebbles, which have been remarkably sheared by pressure acting at right angles to the cleavage-planes and doubtless the same which has produced these. The great mass of limestone occurs in the ranges bordering Tako Arm on both sides and in the mountains between this arm and Windy Arm. It is generally in the state of marble, and usually rather fine-grained, many specimens being very handsomely and curiously marked with gray and black lines or spots. Some beds contain a good deal of silica, and weather rough, occasional layers are more than half composed of cherty matter. Numerous crinoidal remains are often visible, and a microscopical examination of thin sections, prepared by Mr. T. C. Weston, proves some parts of the stone to be largely composed of the remains of *Fusulina.*[*]

Fusulina.

Altered volcanic rocks

To the west of this great limestone belt and between it and the edge of the granites, most of the rocks consist of altered volcanic materials, as previously described. Some distinct amygdaloids were observed among these, but no minute lithological examination of them has been made.

Edge of granites.

The eastern edge of the granites is reached at about ten miles up Bennett Lake, on the east side. Granites continue thence, on the same side, for about five miles and a-half ; when they are replaced for five miles by an included belt of stratified rocks, chiefly quartzites, but including also some hornblendic schists. This belt crosses the lake very obliquely in a nearly north-and-south bearing, and appears to represent a detached portion, more highly altered, of the Palæozoic rocks before described.

---

[*] The *Fusulinæ* found here are often remarkably large. The largest actually observed in the few slides prepared for microscopical examination has a transverse diameter of 0·25 inch. Fragments occurring in the same slides, however, indicate the existence of much larger individuals. No critical examination of these fossils has yet been made, but they appear referable to *Fusulina robusta,* Meek, found in California. Palæontology of California. Vol. I., p. 3.

The quartzites are here much shattered and pyritized, weathering to rusty surfaces and causing the red appearance of some of the mountains. The same rocks were seen from a distance in the mountains to the west of the lake, but the greater part of the mountains on the west side is evidently granite.

Character of granites.

The granites seen along the shores of Bennett Lake are generally rather coarse-grained and hornblendic, though an abundance of black mica is also developed in some places. The felspar is not uncommonly of two kinds, a pink (probably orthoclase) which is often in large porphyritic crystals, and a white triclinic variety. The general tint of the rock is gray, and it closely resembles those described from the vicinity of Vancouver Island in the Annual Report for 1896. No gneissic structure was observed, and the micaceous and hornblendic schists locally developed at the junction with the stratified series, are no doubt the result of the extreme alteration of volcanic portions of that series.

Glaciation.

Glaciation was observed in many places in this system of lakes. It is unnecessary to specify these, but it may be stated that conclusive evidence is afforded that glacier-ice moved northward, down Tako Arm, Windy Arm and Bennett Lake, as well as eastward, nearly at right angles, in the east-and-west part of the lake between Windy and Tako arms. This eastward motion was, however, probably subordinate and local, for no great number of granite boulders is found about the lakes till the lower end of Bennett Lake is reached, a circumstance which shows that the main mass of ice passing down the Bennett Lake valley continued on to the north by the Watson valley. Well marked and extensive terrace deposits occur on the mountains on the north side of Tagish Lake, at an elevation estimated at 1000 feet above it, or about 3100 feet above the sea-level.

Valleys of the lakes.

A glance at the map will show that the lakes of this system occupy a portion only of a still more extensive system of wide valleys, which are probably of great antiquity, and the pre-glacial direction of drainage in some of which can only be conjectured. All these valleys are now, to a great extent, filled with detrital deposits, probably due for the most part to the glacial period. No appreciable deepening of drainage levels is going on, and the action at present in progress is constantly tending toward the filling up of the lake-basins. It may be presumed, here as elsewhere, that the lakes of this region now occupy the place of the last tongues of the great glacier, which in the end disappeared so rapidly that their beds had not time to become filled with detritus.

Lake Lindeman.

Lake Lindeman, occupies the continuation of the same valley in which Lake Bennett lies, but is separated from that lake by a small rapid stream, three-quarters of a mile in length. This stream falls about twenty feet between the two lakes and is rough and rocky. The portage is on the east side, and after carrying the greater part of our stuff overland, no difficulty was experienced in bringing the boat up the rapids. Lake Lindeman (Tl-tshoo-tah-min′ of the Tagish Indians Schütlüchroā Lake of Krause) is five miles in total length, with an average width of about half a mile. It is the extreme head of navigation in this direction. The lower end is shallow, and the occurrence there of many large boulders, may show that it is moraine-dammed. Its shores are rough and rocky along both sides, high rough mountains rising on its north bank, while lower country, consisting of rocky hills, extends to the south-eastward, as far as the White Pass. A stream joins the head of the lake from the west, in which direction the main valley runs, but bifurcates at a distance of about three miles, the branches running off among high granite mountains. A second stream of some size, which shows evidence of being a formidable torrent at certain seasons, flows into the lake about a mile from its head, on the south side. It is the valley of this stream that is followed by the trail by which the Coast Mountains are crossed. The scenery about this lake is wild and fine, though solitary and alpine in the extreme. The rocks everywhere about the lake are granites of the kind just described.

As a number of miners had preceded us, on their way to the coast, we found several boats drawn up on the shore at the mouth of the stream above mentioned. We were also so fortunate as to find a small party of Tagish Indians camped there, but as most of the men had already gone over the portage with some of the miners, we were obliged to wait two days for their return, before we could obtain the requisite assistance to carry over our stuff. Meanwhile we put our boat in a place of security, and occupied ourselves in eliminating everything which was no longer of value from our "outfit."

General Notes on Lewes River.

Length of route.

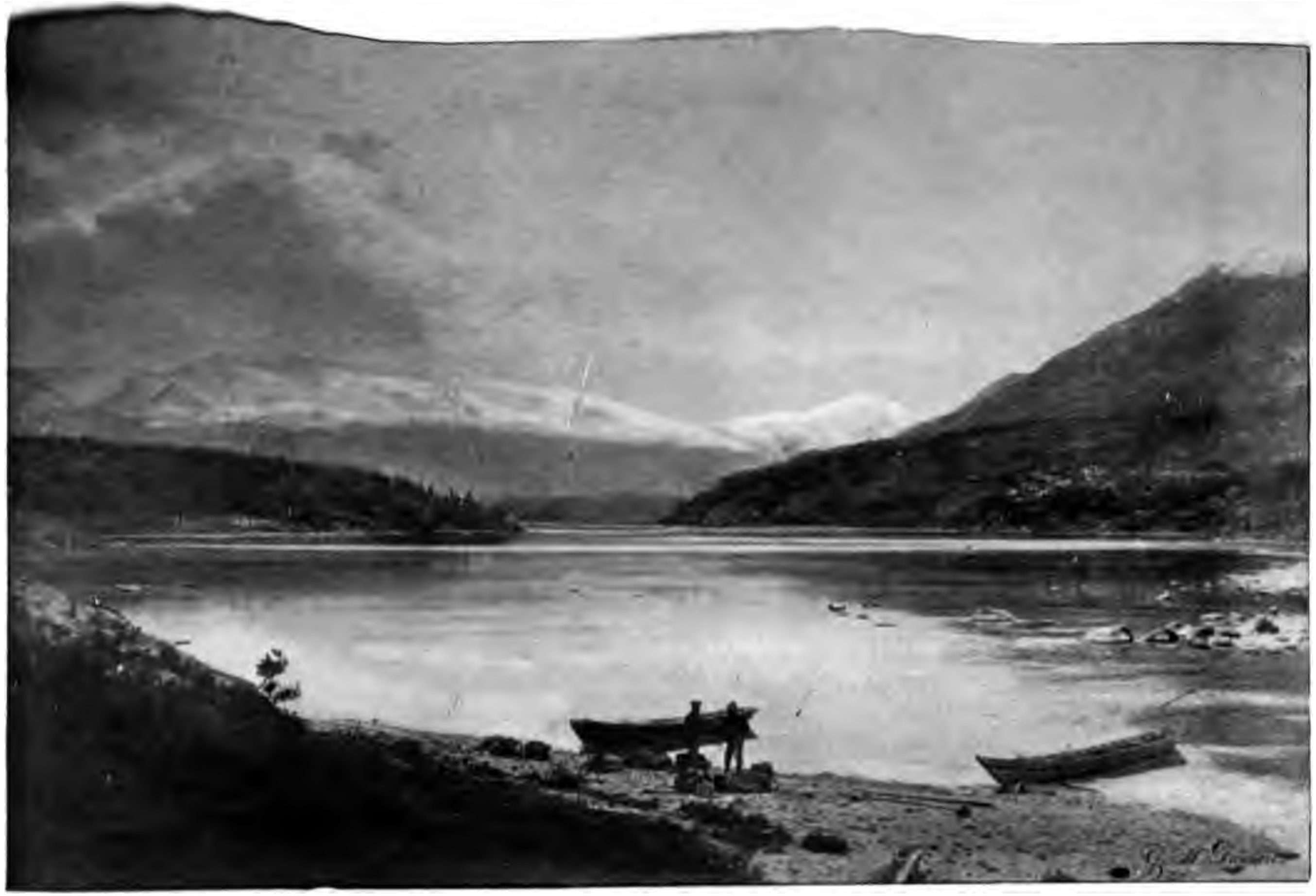
The total length of the route by the Lewes River from "the Landing" on Lake Lindeman to the site of Fort Selkirk is 357 miles. From the outlet of Lake Labarge, to the same point, is a distance of 200 miles, in which the total descent is 595 feet, or at the rate of 2·97 feet to the mile.

Opening and closing of rivers.

The information obtained respecting the date of opening and closing of the river in spring and autumn is very fragmentary. It

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF CANADA.

PLATE VIII.



G. M. D.—Photo , Sept. 19, 1887.

would appear, however, that the rivers generally throughout the region open early in May, while they may be expected to freeze over, in slack-water reaches, any time after the middle of October, on the occurrence of a few consecutive days of hard frost. Loose ice sometimes begins to run in the rivers as early as September 20th, but this generally precedes the actual closing of the rivers by a couple of weeks. In some seasons the rivers do not freeze over till well on in November. The ice, however, remains much longer unbroken upon the lakes, the lakes on the course of the Lewes thus generally preventing the descent of that river by boats till June. In 1887, some of the lakes were not open for navigation till June 10th, but as already mentioned the season was an unusually late one. The Tes-lin-too could be crossed in places on ice-jams as late as May 22nd in the same year, but was open throughout within a day or two after that date.

Travel on the river.

Miners entering the Yukon district by the Chilkoot Pass and Lewes River, frequently leave the head of Lynn Canal in April, and after crossing the pass,—for which fine weather is essential,—continue on down the lakes on the ice, and then, if necessary, wait at some convenient point for the opening of navigation, and build their boats.

In ascending the river, much depends on the build of the boat employed and skill of the men in poling, as well as on the occurrence, or otherwise, of head-winds on the lakes. The whole distance from Forty-mile Creek to Lake Lindeman has been made once or twice in so short a time as thirty days, and I believe that even this record has been surpassed by a couple of days on one occasion, but under very exceptional circumstances.

Travelling time.

Our actual travelling time, from the mouth of the Lewes to the lower end of Lake Labarge, deducting all stoppages, was 121 hours 15 minutes. From the head of Lake Labarge to the lower end of Lake Marsh, deducting stoppages as before, and not including the time occupied on the portages (at White Horse Rapid and Miles Cañon) 25 hours 55 minutes. Much, however, depends on the stage of water in the river, as when it is unusually high, the current is not only stronger but many of the bars and beaches are covered, and the poling and tracking is much worse. The time occupied in traversing the lakes is not included in the above statement.

Timber.

Timber suitable for building boats can scarcely be found in the vicinity of Lake Lindeman, but no difficulty is met with in obtaining trees of fair size on Bennett and Tagish lakes. Below these lakes, the country is generally wooded, and there is an abundance of spruce of fair quality, growing tall and straight in sheltered localities, but seldom attaining a diameter of two feet.

CHILKOOT OR TAIYA PASS.*

Cross Chilkoot Pass.

On the 19th of September we set out with four Indian packers, crossed the summit, and reached a point in the valley of the west slope near what is known as "Sheep Camp," the same evening. On the evening of the 20th we arrived at the head of tide-water on Taiya Inlet, and were hospitably received by Mr. J. Healey, who has established himself at that point for purposes of trade with the Indians and miners. We had at this time just completed our fourth month of arduous and incessant travel from Wrangell, at the mouth of the Stikine River, by the rivers, lakes and portages of the interior described in the foregoing pages, the total distance traversed being about 1322 miles. No serious accidents had befallen us by the way, and though, like the miners, we came back to the coast with a deplorably ragged and uncouth aspect, we had with us, intact, our collections, instruments, survey-records and notes. It was not the least pleasing moment of the entire journey when, from a distance of some miles, we first caught sight of the sea shining like a plate of beaten bronze under the rays of the evening sun.

The Pass.

The length of the mountain portage from Lake Lindeman to Healey's house, is twenty-three miles and a-half, the summit of the pass being at a distance of eight miles and a-half from Lake Lindeman, with an elevation of 3502 feet.

Character of the route.

The valley on the north or inland side of the summit contains several little lakes which are evidently true rock-basins, with lumpy bottoms and irregular contours. The trail is rough and crooked, and entirely without attempt at improvement of any kind. It follows the stream in one place, for about a mile, through a narrow rocky defile, which has evidently been cut out since the glacial period. Where it crosses wide areas of shattered rocks, it requires the closest attention to follow it, and this can only be done, in the absence of guides, by noting the slightly soiled appearance of the gray stones from one to another of which the Indians step. Some of the valleys to the north of the summit, and near it, are deeply filled with perennial snow, over which the trail runs by preference, to avoid the rocky slopes. The small lakes highest in the pass were, at the time we crossed, about two-thirds covered with new ice, which showed little sign of melting, even under the bright sun which prevailed. Hard frosts were evidently occurring here in the mountains every night at this season.

Timber-line.

From seven to eight miles of the highest part of the pass may be said to be entirely destitute of timber, even of a stunted growth such as might be used for fire-wood. The nature of the ground is, however, so rocky that it does not afford a proper criterion of the normal height of the timber-line.

---

* Known as Chilkoot Pass by the miners, named Perrier Pass by Schwatka. (1883) Dejah Pass of Krause (1882) of which Taiya is merely an alternative rendering adopted for the sake of conformity with published charts.

Summit. At the actual summit, the trail leads through a narrow, rocky gap, and the whole scene is one of the most complete desolation, the naked granite rocks rising steeply to partly snow-clad mountains on either side. The slope of the pass on the north side is rather gradual, and the total ascent from the lake not very great, being but 1334 feet. South slope. To the south, on the contrary, it is at first abrupt and even precipitous, being accomplished over huge masses of fallen rock, which alternate here and there with steep, slippery surfaces of rock in place; but the travelling here is after all not so bad as that met with lower down the valley, where the trail goes through the woods along the steep, rocky and often boggy hillside, leading up and down the sides of several deep, narrow gullies. Two small detached glaciers occupy hollows in the slope of the mountains on the west side of this valley, and from these a considerable part of the water of the stream is derived. The "Stone house," or stone houses, and "Sheep camp" are points noted in this part of the pass, the first consisting of several natural though inconvenient shelters, beneath great masses of rock which have rolled down from the mountain, where the Indians often stop over night; the second being the point where arboreal vegetation of fair growth first begins.

The Forks. At six miles from the head of the inlet, the stream followed down from the summit is joined by another which has been dignified by the name of the Nourse River. A short distance up the valley of the latter, are somewhat extensive glaciers and high snow-covered mountains. Both the valley of this stream and that coming from the pass, are narrow and V-shaped, but from their point of junction, a wide flat-bottomed valley runs due south between high mountain walls and is continued further on in that occupied by the inlet itself. This valley is largely floored by gravel-flats and is evidently subjected at times to heavy floods. Taiya River. The little river formed by the confluence of these streams may be ascended with difficulty by canoes, for some miles, when the water is not low, but at the time we passed this was scarcely practicable. It is, however, easy to walk along the gravel-flats, the only discomfort being the necessity of fording the ice-cold and very swift water several times *en route*.

Spring travel. In the early summer, when the valleys on both sides of the summit are deeply filled with hard snow for a number of miles, the Indians secure a less abrupt grade (particularly on the south slope) by travelling on the snow and altogether avoiding the rough sides of the valley. This was the state of the pass when Mr. Ogilvie made his way inland over it in June. His greatest difficulty was found in connection with the Indians, who are untrustworthy and extortionate to a degree. He and his men were in consequence obliged to pack over a great part of their stuff themselves, and in so doing most of the party became snow-blind. He had with him two Peterborough boats, intended for use in his survey, and in safely transporting them across the Coast Ranges, accomplished a feat hitherto not attempted.

Rocks.

The rocks met with on the Chilkoot Pass are practically all granites, generally hornblendic and gray, though varying in coarseness of grain, and often porphyritic with pink orthoclase. The granite is cut in places by dark gray-green dykes, probably diabase. Near the actual summit it assumes a brecciated or shattered appearance, and here a considerable mass of coarse, black, and probably intrusive diorite occurs. In the valley south of the summit similar granites prevail, but in some places include rocks with pretty evident gneissic lamination, which were observed locally to pass into mica-schists. The gravel in the valley is also almost entirely composed of gray granite, though some specimens weather red on account of the quantity of pyrites they contain. Below the Forks, on the east side of the valley, the summits of several mountains show rocks evidently stratified, dipping at high angles. These are probably gneiss or schist, like those seen in the valley of the pass.

Glaciation.

Many rock-surfaces on both sides of the summit and up to the highest level of the pass were observed to be glaciated, and though no very certain evidence on this point could be obtained, it seemed probable that the ice had moved southward through the gap at the summit. The probable great accumulation of snow and ice on the north slope of the range might account for the parting-axis of the glacier lying to the north of the present actual water-parting.

Vegetation.

Scrubby hemlock *(Tsuga Pattoniana)* in a prostrate form occurs not far below the actual summit on both slopes. Below the "Stone house" this tree begins to become arboreal, and a few miles further down the valley, grows tall and straight, forming entire groves. Menzies spruce *(Abies Sitchensis)* also appears, a short distance below "Sheep camp," together with cottonwood (probably *Populus balsamifera*). Here also elder and birch were first seen on the south slope. The devil's club *(Fatsia horrida)* comes in about a mile above "Sheep camp." *Pinus contorta* was not seen till the Forks was reached.

Indian names.

The "Stone house" is named Te-hīt by the Indians. The Indian name of the Taiya River of the maps, is Daī ĕ'. Nourse River is named Kīt-lī-koo-goo-ă', the stream followed southward from the summit of the pass Sī-tīk'. These rivers are named Katlakúchra and Ssidrajīk, respectively, on the map of Dr. A. Krause.

THE WHITE PASS.

Character of the pass.

Having heard reports of the existence of a second pass from Taiya Inlet to the lakes on the head-waters of the Lewes, Mr. Ogilvie sent Capt. W. Moore to make an examination of it, with instructions to rejoin the party to the east of the mountains. This pass Mr. Ogilvie has named White Pass in honour of the late Minister of the Interior. It leaves the coast at the mouth of the Shkagway River* five miles south of the head of Taiya Inlet, and runs parallel to Chilkoot Pass at no great distance from it. Though the land carriage is somewhat longer by this pass, it appears to present less difficulty to the construction of a practicable trail or road. Some account of this pass, based on Capt. Moore's notes, is given in Mr. Ogilvie's preliminary report,† and additional particulars have since been obtained by correspondence with Capt. Moore. The distance from the coast to the summit is stated as seventeen miles, of which the first five miles is level bottom-land, thickly timbered. The next nine miles is in a cañon-like valley where heavy work would be encountered in constructing a trail. The remaining distance of three miles, to the summit, is comparatively easy. The altitude of the summit is roughly estimated at 2600 feet. Beyond the summit a wide valley is entered and the descent to the first little lake is said to be not more than one hundred feet. The mountains rapidly decrease in height and abruptness after the summit is passed, and the valley bifurcates, one branch leading to the head of Windy Arm of Tagish Lake, the other (down which the water drains) going to Tako Arm of the same lake.

Other routes.

The Chilkat Pass has already been noticed. There is still another route into the interior, which the Indians occasionally employ in winter when the travelling is good over the snow. This leaves the Nourse or west branch of the Taiya and runs west of the Chilkoot Pass to the head of Lake Lindeman.

EXPLORATION AND PROSPECTING ON THE LEWES, AND GOLD MINING IN THE UPPER YUKON BASIN.

Various maps.

The discovery and naming of the Lewes River by Campbell has already been referred to, but the information respecting the river obtained by the officers of the Hudson's Bay Company during their short occupancy of Fort Selkirk, as embodied on Arrowsmith's map of

---

*So named on chart in U. S. Coast Pilot, Schkague River of Krause.

†Annual Report of the Department of the Interior, 1887. Part ii, p. 64. See also Report by Moore to Chief Commissioner of Lands and Works of British Columbia, dated April 25th, 1888.

1854, was very incomplete, consisting merely of the fact that it divided into two main streams when followed up, and that large lakes existed on these. A considerable improvement is found in the delineation of the river on the map accompanying Dall's work on Alaska, (1870) in which the information collected by the explorers of the Telegraph Survey is embodied, but the Lewes is there still merely outlined from report, and no approach to a reasonably correct map of its course existed up to the date of Schwatka's expedition in 1883. The first map of the Chilkoot and Chilkat passes and their vicinity is due, as mentioned further on, to Dr. A. Krause.

Indian jealousy.

The passes connecting the coast with the interior country, from the heads of Lynn Canal to the upper waters of the Lewes, were always jealously guarded by the Chilkat and Chilkoot Indians of the coast, who carried on a lucrative trade with the interior or "Stick" Indians, and held these people in a species of subjection. Though the existence of these routes to the interior was known to the traders and prospectors, the hostility of the Chilkats and Chilkoots to the passage of white men long prevented their exploration.

Fables.

In the Alaska Coast Pilot (1883, p. 278) it is stated on the authority of Captain J. C. Carroll, that the first transit of the Lewes River and Chilkoot Pass, by a white man, was accomplished in 1864 or 1865 by an employee of the Hudson's Bay Company, who started from Fort Selkirk and was delivered by the Chilkoot Indians to Captain Swanson, then in command of one of the Company's steamers. This story is repeated and amplified in a work by Miss E. R. Scidmore, where the adventurer is designated as "a red-headed Scotchman" who "forced his way alone through the unknown territory to Chilkoot Inlet."*

I have endeavoured to verify this tale, but quite unsuccessfully, and while it is possible that some deserter from the Company's posts in the interior may thus have reached the coast, it is more probable that the story is entirely apochryphal. Inquiry made on the ground among the miners and others fail to substantiate it. Fort Selkirk had been in ruins for twelve years at the date referred to, and officers of the Hudson's Bay Company who were on the coast at the time do not believe in its authenticity. It may, however, not improbably have grown out of the circumstance that a gun and some other articles which had belonged to Campbell's people at Fort Selkirk were, shortly after the raid upon that post, obtained from the Coast Indians by servants of the Company.

Discovery of gold.

I have been able to find no reference to the discovery of gold in any part of the Yukon waters earlier than that given by Mr. F. Whymper, who writes in 1869: "It is worthy of mention that minute specks of gold have been found by some of the Hudson's Bay Company's men in the Yukon, but not in quantities to warrant a rush to the locality."[*]

---

*Alaska, its Southern Coast and the Sitkan Archipelago, Boston, 1885.

Holt.

The first white man who crossed from the coast to the head-waters of the Lewes appears probably to have been one George Holt[†], who did so with the object of prospecting the country.[‡]

The date of Holt's journey was, I believe, 1878. He was accompanied by one or more Indians, and crossed by the Chilkoot or by the White Pass to the head of the Lewes. He followed the river down to the lower end of Lake Marsh and walked over the Indian trail thence to the Tes-lin-too, returning to the coast again by the same route. On his return, he reported the discovery of "coarse gold," but none of the miners who afterwards prospected the region mentioned, have been able to confirm his statement in this particular. In the Alaska Coast Pilot the date of Holt's journey is given as 1875, and in the addendum to the same work as 1872[§] in Mrs. Scidmore's book, already quoted, as 1872 or 1884." The date and route above assigned to Holt are, however, probably correct, being the result of inquiry among miners who knew him, followed his route through the country, and came in contact with the Indians whom he had met.

First prospecting party, 1880.

Some years later, in 1880, a prospecting party of nineteen men was organized at Sitka under the leadership of one Edward Bean. Amicable relations were established with the Chilkats and Chilkoots through the kind offices of Capt. Beardslee, U.S.N., and the Chilkoot Pass was crossed to Lake Lindeman. The party had, by this time, increased to twenty-five in number.[**] Boats were built on Lake Lindeman, and on the 4th of July the prospectors set out down stream. The Tes-lin-too was reached and was [assumed to be the Hotilinqu of Byrnes (p. 168).] Before returning, the Tes-lin-too was ascended and prospected for some distance. From George Langtry, who was a member of the original party, and R. Steel, who joined it later, the facts, as above given, are derived.* No encouraging "prospects" were met with at this time, though Steel states that he found bars yielding at the rate of $2.50 a day in a small stream which joins the Lewes fifteen miles above the cañon.

---

[*] Travels in Alaska and on the Yukon. London, 1869, p. 227.

[†] Afterwards murdered by Indians at Cook's Inlet in 1885. Shores and Alps of Alaska, H. W. Seton Karr, London, 1887.

[‡] U. S. Coast Pilot, Alaska, 1883, pp. 200, 278.

[§] Other extraordinary journeys assigned to Holt in Miss Scidmore's book are, according to the miners, altogether incorrect. Holt appears to be a romancer with considerable inventive powers, but it is possible that he made more than one journey. In May, 1878, Messrs. Bath Bros., of Victoria, and Mr. Bean, of California, set out to cross by the Chilcoot Pass for the purpose of prospecting, but were not allowed to go inland by the Indians. Morris, Report upon the Customs District, etc., of Alaska, 1879, p. 97.

[**] It had increased to twenty shortly after leaving Sitka. See Report by Capt. Beardslee, 47th Congress, 1st Session, Senate Ex. Doc. No. 71, p. 65. In the same report, the names of the nineteen original members of the party are given and some account of its organization, etc.

This large party was closely followed by two miners known as Johnny Mackenzie and "Slim Jim," who reached Lake Lindeman on July 3rd. It is possible that other parties as well may have entered the country in this year, but if so I have been unable to trace them.

1881. In 1881, a party of four miners, including G. Langtry and P. McGlinchey again crossed the Chilkoot Pass. These men got as far as the Big Salmon River, which they called the Iyon, by which name it is marked on the U.S. Coast Survey map of 1884. They ascended the Big Salmon, according to their estimate, about 200 miles, finding a little gold all along its course and meeting with some remunerative river-bars. This may be characterized as the first discovery of paying placers in the district. According to the U. S. Coast Pilot, already quoted, some account of this expedition is given in the New York Herald, o Sept. 21st, 1881, to which I have been unable to refer.

1882. In 1882, a number of miners entered the Yukon country by the Chilkoot Pass, and probably during this season, but certainly not before,† two prospecting parties ascended the Pelly to Hoole Cañon and some of the men appear to have even gone some distance further up.‡

Exploration by Krause. Dr. Arthur Krause, engaged in an expedition on behalf of the Bremen Geographical Society, in May and June, 1882, made an exploration of the Chilkoot and Chilkat passes, reaching Lake Lindeman and the sources of the Tahk-heena [Ta-hi-ni] River respectively. His work is embodied in maps published by the Bremen and Berlin Geographical Societies, and it is worthy of special note on account of its conscientious accuracy.§

---

* The account of the further wanderings of the party given in the Coast Pilot Alaska (1883), p. 278 is incorrect.

† According to the miners who were in the country at the time, the statement which have been published of earlier prospecting along the Upper Pelly are erroneous

‡ Through the kindness of Mr. François Mercier, I have obtained from Mr. D Bertrand, who was a member of one of the parties above referred to, the names of th men composing both, as follows: Thomas Boswell, John Dougan, Robert Robertso D. Bertrand, Frank Densmore, John Riley, P. Cloudman, Robert Fox, Thoma Curney. The date, as above given, is from Mr. Bertrand. Mr. Boswell, whom w met on the Lewes in 1887, was understood to say that he had been prospecting up th Pelly in 1884 or 1885, but this statement probably referred to a subsequent expeditio

§ Deutsche Geographische Blätter Bd. V Heft. 4, 1882. Zeitschr. des Ges. für Erdk zu Berlin Bd. XVIII, 1883.

Schwatka's journey.

In 1883, some mining was again in progress but details respecting it have not been obtained. It was in this year that Lieut. Schwatka crossed the Chilkoot Pass and descended the Lewes and Yukon to the sea.† In 1884, a little mining was done on the Pelly and on the Tes-lin-too, and possibly also on the Lewes. In 1885, mining was begun along the Stewart River, and in the following year, the greater part of the mining population was engaged on that river. Cassiar Bar on the Lewes, twenty-seven miles below the Tes-lin-too, was discovered in the spring of 1886, and actively worked during the same summer.

Gold found on Forty-mile Creek.

Late in the autumn of 1886, "coarse gold" was found on Forty-mile Creek (Cone-hill River of Schwatka) still further down the main river than the Stewart, and the announcement of the fact drew off nearly the entire mining population to this place in 1887. In the attempt to bring out the news of this discovery, a miner named Williams was frozen to death on the Chilcoot Pass in January, 1887.

Lewes and Tes-lin-too.

Taking a general view of the gold discoveries so far as made in the Upper Yukon country, we find that, though some small bars have been worked on the upper part of the Lewes, and "prospects" have been obtained even in the streams flowing into Bennett Lake, paying bars have been found on this river only below the mouth of the Tes-lin-too. The best of these are within a distance of within seventy miles below this confluence, and the richest so far has been Cassiar Bar. This is reported to have yielded, in some cases, at the rate of $30 a day to the hand, and gold to the value of many thousand dollars has been obtained from it, chiefly in 1886; in 1887, only three or four men worked here. All along the Lewes below the Tes-lin-too, many bars occur which, according to the reports of prospectors, yield as much as $10 a day, and the same is true of the Tes-lin-too itself, both below and above Tes-lin Lake. Bars of this kind are, however, considered scarcely remunerative at present.

Cassiar Bar.

Salmon and Pelly.

Gold has also been found for a long distance up the Big Salmon River, and on the Upper Pelly as far as it has been prospected. The Tes-lin-too, Big Salmon and Pelly have each already afforded some good paying ground, but in consequence of the rush to Forty-mile Creek only about thirteen miners remained in 1887 on the first named river, four on the second and two on the Pelly. On the Stewart River, as much as $100 a day to the hand was made in 1885 and 1886, and probably over $100,000 worth of gold has already been obtained along this stream. It has been prospected for a distance of 100 to 200 miles from its mouth, (according to varying statements) and the gold found furthest up is said to be somewhat "coarser" than that o the lower part.

---

† See Science, vol. III. 1884, also Report of a Military Reconnaissance in Alaska, Washington, Government, 1885. Along Alaska's Great River, New York, 1885.

Character of Forty-mile Creek.

Forty-mile Creek is reported to be a river of some size, but mor rapid than most of those in the district. It has, according to miners been prospected for about a hundred miles from its mouth, gold bein found almost everywhere along it as well as in tributary gulches. Th gold varies much in character, but is quite often coarse and nuggety and very large amounts have been taken out in favourable places b individual miners. Few of the men mining here in 1887 were conten with ground yielding less than $14 a day, and several had taken ou nearly $100 a day for a short time. The amount obtained from thi stream in 1887 is reckoned by some as high as $120,000, but I believ it would be safe to put the entire output of the Upper Yukon regio for the year, at a minimum of $75,000, of which the greatest part wa derived from this stream.

Miners.

The number of miners in the whole Upper Yukon country in 188 may be stated at about 250; of these, 200 were on Forty-mile Creek and it was estimated that at least 100 would winter on the creek t be ready for work in the spring.

Forty-mile Creek is what the miners term a "bed-rock creek" *i.e.* one in which there is no great depth of drift or detrital deposits belo the level of the actual stream. It is so far the only locality which ha been found to yield "coarse" gold, but from the extremely wide distribution of "fine" gold, it may safely be predicted that many mor like it remain to be discovered.

General features of mining.

Mining can scarcely be said to have begun in the region more than five years ago, and the extent of country over which gold has been found in greater or less quantity is already very great. Most of the prospecting has been confined to the banks and bars of the large rivers, and it is only when their innumerable tributary streams begin to be closely searched, that "gulch diggings" like those of Dease, McDame and other steams in the Cassiar district, and possibly even on a par with Williams and Lightning creeks in Cariboo, will be found and worked. The general result so far has been to prove that six large and long rivers, the Lewes, Tes-lin-too, Big Salmon, Pelly, Stewart and White, yield "fine" gold along hundreds of miles of their lowe courses. With the exception of the Lewes, no part of the head-waters of any of these have yet been prospected or even reached by the miners, and scarcely any of their innumerable tributaries have been examined. The developments made up to this time are sufficient to show that when means of access are improved, important bar-mining will take place along all these main rivers, and there is every reason to anticipate that the result of the examination in detail of the smaller streams will be the discovery of much richer auriferous alluviums. When these have been found and worked, quartz mining will doubtless follow, and the prospects for the utilization of this great mining field in the near future appear to me to be very promising.

Difficulties to be encountered.

I must not, however, omit to state that great difficulties and hardships have to be overcome by the miners now entering this country. The traverse of the Chilkoot Portage is itself a formidable obstacle, and over this pass most of the provisions and requisites for the miner must be carried. There is at the present time [1887] a trading post belonging to Messrs. Harper, McQuesten & Co., (established in the spring of 1887) at the mouth of Forty-mile Creek, but the supplies are brought to this point by small stern-wheel steamers which ascend the whole length of the Yukon. Goods do not arrive by this route till late in the summer, and any accident or detention may prevent their arrival altogether. The winter in the country is long and severe, and the season of low water suitable for working on river-bars is short. It is also found that beneath its mossy covering, the ground is often frozen, presenting difficulties of another character to the miner, which have prevented the working of many promising flats and benches. This, however, is likely to be remedied before long by the general burning off of the woods and moss in the mining camps. Frozen ground was found in the same way in the early days of the Cassiar mines, as referred to elsewhere, but the destruction of the timber has now almost everywhere allowed the summer heat to penetrate to the lower layers of the soil. It is not likely that this great inland country will long want some easy means of connection between the coast and its great length of navigable lake- and river-waters, and when this is afforded, there is every reason to believe that it will support a considerable mining population.

EXTRACTS FROM

REPORT ON AN EXPLORATION IN THE YUKON AND MACKENZIE BASINS BY R. G. McCONNELL, B. A.,

1887-1888.

NOTE.—The following pages include parts of the Report of Mr. McConnell on his exploration of 1887-88, relating to the Yukon District and adjacent northern portion of British Columbia. The description of routes followed begins at the confluence of the Dease and Liard rivers (See p. 94) and includes all that part of the Liard River which flows through northern British Columbia, observations made in the Mackenzie valley proper are omitted and the description is resumed at Fort MacPherson, on Peel River, near the head of the Mackenzie Delta, whence the northern extension of the Rocky Mountains was crossed to Lapierre House. The Porcupine River was then descended to its confluence with the Yukon, which latter river is described as far as the site of old Fort Selkirk; Mr. McConnell's work of 1888 connecting this place with that of Dr. Dawson in the previous year. The geological notes extracted from the report are likewise limited to the region covered by the above description.

DESCRIPTION OF ROUTES.

LIARD RIVER.

Mouth of Dease River to the Devil's Portage.

General description of river.

The Liard River is one of the three principal tributaries of the Mackenzie, the other two being the Athabasca and the Peace. It has its sources west of the Rocky Mountains, one of its branches reaching to within one hundred and fifty miles of the sea, and drains the eastern part of the broken country lying between that range and the Coast Mountains. Its branches spread through four degrees of latitude, from 58° N. to 62° N., and interlock with those of the Yukon, Stikine, Skeena, and Peace rivers. In its upper part it divides at intervals into four nearly equal streams, the Mud or Black River, Dease River, Francis River, and the branch which retains the common name. Of these the latter and Black River are still practically unknown. Dease River and Francis River were examined by Dr. Dawson in 1887, and the following account treats of the main river from its junction with the Dease to its mouth, a distance of about 470 miles. Rising in the elevated country west of the Rocky Mountains, the Liard falls rapidly towards the east, the difference in elevation between the mouth of the Dease and the Mackenzie amounting to nearly 1650 feet, and is characterized nearly everywhere by impetuous currents, by dangerous rapids and narrow whirlpool-filled cañons. The descent of the river is greatest and its rapids most numerous, while passing through, and for some distance on either side of the Rocky Mountains. After leaving the foot-hills it is free from interruptions until near its junction with the Mackenzie, where a series of strong riffles occurs.

Liard River used as a trade route by H.B. Co.

The Liard River was used for a number of years by the H. B. Co., as a trading route to the Yukon, and a line of posts extending from Fort Simpson on the Mackenzie, to Fort Selkirk at the junction of the Lewes and Pelly was established by the company, but the expense incurred in overcoming the great length of difficult navigation made the trade unprofitable, and most of the posts have been long since abandoned. At the present time a trading post exists at the mouth of the Dease, but it is supplied from the Pacific by way of the Stikine and Dease River. The Liard has also been used to some extent by prospectors and miners, the discoverers of the Cassiar goldfields, Messrs. McCullough and Thibert having ascended it from Fort Simpson to the mouth of the Dease in 1871-72.

Width of river and valley.

The Liard River below the mouth of the Dease has a general width of from two hundred and fifty to four hundred yards, but widens out in places to over half a mile, and a current of four miles and a-half an hour. It separates in places into a number of channels inclosing low alluvial islands usually well wooded. Its valley is from two to three miles wide, and is shallow with rolling banks sloping easily up to the general level. The country is everywhere well wooded, but the trees are usually small, seldom exceeding a foot in diameter. The principal varieties observed were the black pine *(Pinus Murrayana)*, the White spruce, *(Picea alba)*, and the smooth and rough barked poplars, *(Populus tremuloides* and *balsamifera.)* Besides these, groves of larch were occasionally seen, and some varieties of willow and alder. Twelve miles below the mouth of the Dease the Liard receives a large tributary from the north. This stream is over a hundred yards wide, and is called the Highland [Hyland] River, after a prospector who ascended it for some distance. On the older maps it is named the McPherson River. In the direction from which it comes are some low hills at a distance of four to five miles, behind which appear snowy mountains. From the mouth of Dease River, the Liard runs in a general E.S.E. direction for eighteen miles, and then making a sharp bend to the north, runs for about the same distance in a direction nearly at right angles to its former course. Below the bend the river, for twelve miles is wide and filled with islands, after which it gradually decreases in width, and this, with the steeper slopes of the valley and the increasing strength of the current, which occasionally breaking into small riffles now hurries along at the rate of seven miles an hour, all afford signs of our approach to the Little Cañon, of the dangerous character of which we had been previously warned, and which soon comes into view.

Bordering forests.

Hyland River.

Little Cañon.

The Little Cañon is about half a mile long, and in its narrowest place about two hundred feet wide. It is easily navigable in low water, but is dangerous for small boats during flood, as the channel is very crooked, and the current striking with great violence against the right hand bank is thrown forcibly back, with the production of a number of breakers running nearly lengthwise with the direction of the channel, and large enough to swamp any ordinary river-boat which is drawn among them. A number of Chinamen were drowned at this point some years ago. This cañon can be run with safety by entering it nearly in the middle of the stream, which is as close to the left hand bank as the lines of reefs and isolated rocks running out from that side will allow, and once past these making all haste to the left so as to clear the breakers below. In high water the rapid can be avoided by making a portage of about half a mile along the right bank.

Rocks between Dease and Little Cañon

Rock-exposures are infrequent in the valley of the Liard between the mouth of the Dease and the Little Cañon, but those observed will be described in order. Three miles below the mouth of the Dease is a small exposure of somewhat soft dark shales associated with friable sandstones and conglomerates. A second exposure of the same beds was observed about a mile farther down the river, where they dip N. 60° W. < 20°, beyond which they disappear. These rocks are unfossiliferous, but from their lithological characters, and the fact that they overlie unconformably the hard quartzites, slates and limestones, of the neighbourhood, were referred to the Tertiary. At the mouth of Highland River, on a small island, is an exposure of hard whitish sandstone, passing into quartzite. This rock weathers yellow, and dips N. 50° E. < 50°. Six miles farther down, at a bend which the river makes to the north, is a cut-bank showing unconsolidated sands, sandy clays and gravels, and holding some small beds of impure lignite. Below this, with the exception of rolled river gravels, no further exposures were seen until near the Little Cañon, when black shales appear in a couple of places.

Rocks in Little Cañon.

The rocks in the Little Cañon consist of dark and sometimes cleaved shales, holding large flattened ironstone nodules, hard sandstones and quartzites, and some beds of fine-grained, hard siliceous conglomerate. They are closely folded together and strike N. 35° W. No fossils were found in any of these beds, nor any definite evidence of their age obtained, beyond the fact that the shales have a close lithological resemblance, both in appearance and composition, with those on Dease River, from which Dr. Dawson obtained graptolites of Utica-Trenton age.

Character of river below Little Cañon.

Below the Little Cañon the river widens out to over half a mile, and the steep, rocky banks are replaced by easier slopes of gravel and sand. These continue for three miles, after which shales and sandstones reappear in the bank, and their confining influence is immediately seen in the rapid contraction of the stream and the formation of a second narrows. These sudden dilatations and contractions constitute one of the most characteristic features of the Liard, and are an indication of the heterogeneity of the formations through which it cuts. Through the defile just mentioned the stream rushes with great velocity, but with an even current until near its foot, where it is forced between two points of rock scarcely a hundred feet apart, which project into the stream from either bank and determine the formation of two rapidly gyrating and dangerous-looking whirlpools. These can be avoided, if necessary, by making a portage of a few feet across one of the points. In ordinary stages of the water, however, they can be run without difficulty.

Shales, sandstones, etc., replaced by limestones.

At this point the shales, sandstones and conglomerates which have been exposed at intervals all the way from the mouth of the Dease, are replaced by shaly limestone and soon afterwards by more massive varieties of the same rock.

Picturesque valley.

Beyond the narrows, the river at once resumes its ordinary dimensions, and rushing rapidly around a short bend, enters one of the most picturesque portions of the valley of the Liard. The river here averages about three hundred yards in width, and glides along with a strong even current of about five miles an hour. It is narrowly confined by sloping banks, which follow closely all the bendings of the stream, without any intervening flats, or, except at low water, any disfiguring bars and beaches. The valley is everywhere densely wooded with evergreens, aspens, birch and alder, the changing greens of which are agreeably relieved at intervals by gray limestone cliffs, which rise steeply from the water's edge, and ruffle the surface of the otherwise glassy stream.

Porcupine Bar.

Eight miles below the entrance to this portion of the river is situated Porcupine Bar, once the scene of active mining operations, but now worked out and abandoned. Opposite to it is a range of low hills, at the base of which I camped somewhat early on the afternoon of the 28th, for the purpose of ascending them and so obtaining a view of the surrounding country.

Appearance of country.

These hills extend in an irregular manner for some miles along the left bank of the river, but appear to have no definite trend. They have the rounded outlines that characterize all glaciated districts, but no striae were anywhere observed. They are composed of limestone and have an altitude of 1500 feet above the river, or one thousand feet above the general plateau-level. From their base stretches, in all directions, an irregular rolling plateau, broken here and there by ranges of low hills and dotted with innumerable small lakes and marshes. To the south the horizon is broken by the serrated crests and jagged summits of the Cassiar Range, one prominent peak bearing S. 20° W. In a direction N. 25° W., at a distance of twelve to fifteen miles, are some low hills still covered with streaks of snow, while a range of partially snow-clad hills was also seen at S. 26° E. The plateau is everywhere densely wooded, the principal trees observed being the white spruce, the black pine, the larch, the rough and smooth barked poplars, the birch, and species of alder and willow. Of these the spruce, which attains here a diameter of fifteen to twenty inches, is by far the most abundant and valuable.

about half way down. The upper part of the rapid is exceedingly wild, as the bed of the river is filled with huge angular masses of rocks against which the current breaks with frightful violence. No part of the channel is clear, and a glance at the forbidding array of foaming breakers and whirling eddies showed at once the utter hopelessness of any attempt to run it with our small, heavily laden boat. We passed it by portaging our outfit about half a mile along the right bank, and then dropping the empty boat with a rope, and at the worst places dragging it across points of rock. The lower part of the rapid is not so rough, and we managed to work our boat through this without unloading.

Rocks at Cranberry Portage.

The rocks at the Cranberry Rapids, consist of shales, limestones and conglomerates, closely resembling those observed at the Little Cañon and evidently of the same age. The shales are dark, finely laminated, and occasionally show well marked cleavage lines. They are interstratified in places with the sandstones, and often inclose flattened ironstone concretions, a number of which were broken in a resultless search for fossils. The sandstones, lighter coloured than the shales, are hard and often pass into quartzites. The conglomerates are very fine-grained, and consist principally of white, well rounded quartz pebbles imbedded in a siliceous matrix. The shales and accompanying beds are broken through and altered to some extent by a series of dykes. They have a general easterly strike, and lie at all angles from horizontal to vertical. On the opposite side of the river, an exposure of soft shales and conglomerates, resting unconformably on the beds just described, and evidently of Tertiary age, was observed, but was not closely examined, owing to the impossibility of getting across to it.

Below the rapids the river hurries on with a smoother surface but with scarcely diminished velocity, its strength being shown by the way it foams around the occasional rocky obstructions in its course. It is bordered for some distance by large eddies, between which and the downward current are long lines of dangerous looking whirlpools. Further down is a long but easily navigable riffle, beyond which, with the exception of an occasional rock, the channel remains comparatively clear until the stream variously known as Black, Mud, or Turnagain River is reached.

Mud River.

This stream, although one of the principal affluents of the Liard, is at present almost unknown. It originates near the Finlay branch of the Peace River, and joins the Liard after a course of about two hundred and fifty miles. At its mouth it is over one hundred and twenty yards wide. Eighty miles above its mouth is situated a small trading post, built some years ago by Mr. Rufus Sylvester, but now in the possession of the Hudson's Bay Co. This post is connected with the central post at the mouth of McDame Creek on Dease River by a pack trail about seventy miles long.

Mountain Portage Rapids.

From Mud River the Liard bends more to the north, and, still running with great rapidity and breaking into occasional riffles, reaches, in a couple of miles, the Mountain Portage Rapids, one of the worst rapids met with on the trip. The river here falls over a band of shales irregularly hardened by a system of dykes and worn into a succession of ridges and hollows, and the roughened surface thus produced throws the hurrying waters into an indescribable turmoil. We landed at the head of the rapids on the right bank, and were forced to spend a day in making a difficult portage of about half a mile with both boat and outfit. I afterwards learned from W. Lépine, an old Hudson's Bay voyageur, that we might have avoided this portage if we had landed on the left hand side, as what we supposed was the mainland was really an island, behind which a small channel existed which can be run with comparative safety.

Rabbit River.

Gold mining.

Whirlpools.

Half a mile below Mountain Portage, Rabbit River comes in from the south. This stream is about two hundred feet wide, and brings in a large volume of clear water. At its mouth is a large auriferous bar, which has evidently been worked by placer miners to a considerable extent. I was, however, unable to obtain any information in regard to it. Below Rabbit River the channel is clear for a couple of miles, and then dancing white-caps on ahead indicate the presence of another rapid. In the next mile the river alternately narrows in and expands three times, and falls over short but strong riffles at each constriction, all of which can easily be avoided, if necessary, by making portages a few yards in length. The behaviour of the water in the dilated basins between the narrows is somewhat peculiar, as it seems, viewed from the bank, to be running in all directions and to be split into a network of cross currents. At the lower narrows three ugly looking whirlpools are formed by the rapidly contracting stream endeavouring to crowd its way through its narrowed channel, while the water sucked down by the whirlpools is thrown up a little farther down in huge boils and with a sound resembling the rumbling of distant thunder. The whirlpools occur near the left side, and can be passed in safety by keeping to the right bank.

Rocks between Cranberry Portage and Whirlpool Cañon.

From Cranberry Portage to Whirlpool Cañon, the point now reached in the description of the river, numerous exposures of the same shale sandstone and conglomerate series previously described are everywhere present, and to the heterogeneity of this formation are mostly due the numerous rapids which occur on this portion of the river, the harder bands narrowing in and damming back the stream, while the softer and more easily eroded parts have acquired a more uniform slope. The shales and associated beds are everywhere greatly disturbed and usually dip at high angles. They have a general south-easterly strike. At Whirlpool Cañon the shales disappear and are replaced by a shaly variety of limestone.

Shales replaced by limestone.

From Whirlpool Cañon the river flows swiftly around a sharp bend, at the extremity of which it receives Coal River, and after a clear course of less than four miles, plunges over the rapids at Portage Brûlé.

Coal River.

Lignite at mouth of Coal River.

Coal River is a small, clear stream about a hundred feet wide, and is interesting on account of the quantity of lignite which it brings down. At the time of our visit a bar at its mouth was thickly strewn with large angular and apparently little-travelled blocks of this mineral. The fresh appearance of the lignite induced me to spend part of a day, while the men were packing across Portage Brûlé, in exploring for the bed from which it originated, but a walk of several miles up the stream failed to reveal its presence *in situ*, although an abundance of drift fragments was everywhere noticed. The lignite is of inferior quality, It is soft and shows a well-marked woody structure. The banks of Coal River, as far as my examination extended, are low, and consist of uncemented sands, clays and gravel, like those holding the lignite beds above the Little Cañon. This formation is of irregular thickness, but of wide distribution, as it was observed filling depressions of the older rocks all the way from the mouth of the Dease to the passage of the Rockies.

Portage Brûlé.

Portage Brûlé is nearly two miles long, and leads across a nearly level, well wooded flat, which, at the upper end of the portage, is only elevated a few feet above the surface of the river, but at the lower end is terminated by a sharp descent of over two hundred feet. A good track was cut across this portage when mining was being prosecuted on the Liard, and a windlass built at the east end for the purpose of hoisting boats up the steep bank, both of which are still in good condition. It was at the lower end of this portage, in the year 1836, that a party of Hudson's Bay voyageurs, bound on a trading expedition to the Stikine, after carrying their packs up the hill, were seized with a panic caused by the supposed approach of a band of hostile Indians, and, abandoning their outfit, fled for safety down the river. In the succeeding year Mr. Robert Campbell found the goods in the same position in which they had been left.

Rapids at Portage Brûlé.

The rapids at Portage Brûlé do not look so formidable as those at the Mountain Portage, and if I had examined them before making the portage I would have been strongly tempted to try and run them with the empty boat. They are about two miles long, and are caused by numerous limestone blocks and small islands obstructing the channel. At the lower end the river is narrowly confined by high vertical cliffs.

Rocks between Whirlpool Cañon and Portage Brûlé.

The rocks observed along the river from Whirlpool Cañon to the lower end of Portage Brûlé consist altogether of different varieties of limestone. This occurs in some places in massive beds, ranging in texture from compact to moderately crystalline. In other places it becomes very impure and shaly, and often passes into imperfectly developed calc-schists. No fossils were obtained from it, but it has a close lithological resemblance to the limestone occurring above Cranberry Rapids, and to the Castle Mountains group of the Bow River section, and is probably of Cambro-Silurian age.

River below Portage Brûlé.

McCullough's Bar.

Terraces along river.

After freeing ourselves from the rapids at Portage Brûlé, no farther obstacles to navigation were encountered until the Devil's Portage was reached. The river is wide and filled with low islands and bars, some of which are auriferous, McCullough's Bar, on which gold in paying quantities was first discovered on the Liard, occurs in this vicinity, but I was unable to identify it. The river valley is now lined with rows of terraces rising up to a height of several hundred feet, and clothed in unwooded portions by as luxuriant a growth of grasses and vetches as I have ever seen in any part of the country. Behind the terraces is a gently undulating region, occasionally swelling into elevations of from 1200 to 1500 feet in height, and everywhere densely forested, chiefly with white spruce. To the eastward the elevations increase in height and frequency until they merge into the range of the Rocky Mountains, the dim outline of which can now be seen along the eastern horizon.

Agricultural prospects.

This part of the country, judging from the luxuriance of the vegetation and the character of the soil, seems well adapted for agricultural purposes, but the complete absence of climatic statistics render any positive statements in this connection premature. On the present trip at the Little Cañon, large snow banks were observed in sheltered places along the banks of the river as late as the 28th of June. It must be borne in mind, however, that the spring of 1887 in this part of the country was an exceptionally late one.

Fort Halkett.

Ten miles below Portage Brûlé, Smith River comes in from the north. This is a small stream about one hundred feet wide, and appears to originate in a north-westerly spur from the Rocky Mountains, visible in the distance. At its mouth was situated fort Halkett, a Hudson's Bay trading-post which has been abandoned since 1865. I found no traces of the post.

Shales at mouth of Smith River.

Near the mouth of Smith River, a number of exposures of dai shales were observed. These shales are much softer than those sec farther up the river, and are probably of Mesozoic age. They we traced down the river for several miles, and are then replaced by lim stones. No fossils were found in them.

River below Fort Halkett.

From Fort Halkett, the mountains appear quite close and the riv runs swiftly in an E. S. E. direction straight towards a narrow ga which now appears in their ranks. Before entering this we pass, c the right-hand side, the mouth of Rivière des Vents. This river com from a large lake a few miles south of Fort Halkett, from which tl fish supply of the post was obtained. It cuts off from the main ran a steep sided, massive looking mountain, which I named Mt. Read honour of Mr. Reid, the Hudson's Bay officer at present in charge Fort Providence and an old traveller in these regions. Fro Rivière des Vents we approached the gap cautiously, on the looko for the Devil's portage and rapids, which were reported to exist in th neighbourhood, but, much to our surprise, passed through witho hindrance, and in a few minutes found ourselves among the rolli foot-hills on the eastern side of the range. The mountains here a narrowed to a single range, and even this, a few miles north of tl river, is so reduced in height that it can scarcely be distinguished fro the ordinary ridges of the district. To the south the range is mu wider and the river seems to skirt the northern extremity of wh may be considered the main division of the Rocky Mountain syste

Rocky Mountains.

The Rocky Mountains, regarded as forming the eastern mounta system of the Cordillera, are consequently interrupted in this part their length. The range of which the northern extremity is here fou has a length of over 1000 miles. It extends uninterruptedly sout ward to the International Boundary, and is still further continu into Montana to about lat. 46°. The width of this persiste mountain range probably averages throughout about fifty miles ; a its main physicial and geological features are almost identical in parts of its length. Where the particular line of crumpling a upheaval of the earth's crust to which this range is due dies away the Liard, another similar line begins, nearly in the same latitude, b about eighty miles farther to the east. The mountain range produc by this new line of disturbance extends northward nearly parallel the general course of the Mackenzie to the Arctic Ocean.

South of the Liard, the bare limestone ridges are ranged in parall lines, and are surmounted by large zigzag knife-edges, or jagg serrated crests. The ridges have a general strike of N. 30° W. Tl spur of the mountains which crosses the river consists of a grayish a

Rocks in mountains.

moderately compact limestone. The beds are at first nearly horizontal, but are soon thrown into almost vertical attitudes, and have the appearance of a sharp anticline. Several of the exposures were examined unsuccessfully for fossils, and the only specimens collected here consist of some fragments of corals which were found loose at the mouth of Rivière des Vents, and resemble those occurring in the Intermediate limestone of the Bow River section. The limestones are exposed along the river for six miles, and are then covered with dark shales similar to those from which Triassic fossils were afterwards obtained. It is noteworthy that in the Liard section dark shales of Mesozoic age are found resting on both flanks of the mountain, and are not confined to the eastern slope, as in the case farther south.

Limestones replaced by shales.

Rounded hills east of mountains.

East of the passage of the Rockies, the mountains gradually recede from the river towards the south, and are replaced by high rounded and well wooded hills and ridges built of dark shales, numerous exposures of which occur all along the banks of the river. The shales undulate at all angles, and do not appear to have any predominating dip in towards the mountains such as characterizes them in other localities. They are interstratified in places with beds of quartzite, and are, so far as I could learn, completely unfossiliferous.

River smooth.

Since leaving Portage Brûlé the river had remained wonderfully smooth, and we had the pleasure of passing one night away from the roar of a rapid, and without the usual prospect of having the next morning either to run a rapid or make a portage. The river has here an average width of four hundred yards, and a steady current of about four miles and a-half an hour. It is bordered in places by long gravel and sand beaches, and incloses occasionally wooded islands. Ten miles east of the gap, Trout River joins the Liard from the south. This is a swift, clear mountain stream about a hundred and fifty feet wide, which seems to cut back into and drain the central ranges. Below Trout River the Liard bends abruptly to the north for some distance, and then, turning to the east, continues on with an ever increasing current, between banks which gradually become steeper and higher, until they develop into a wide cañon. We had been on the lookout for the Devil's Rapids ever since leaving the Rivière des Vents, and as the threatening appearance of river and valley indicated that we were approaching them at last, we dropped down cautiously along the right bank, watching carefully all the time for signs of the old portage. We failed to discover any, but landed at what seemed to be the last break in the almost vertical cliffs, with which the river was now bordered, and just at the head of a long easy riffle. Looking down the river ominous streaks of white could be seen in a couple

Trout River.

Threatening appearance of river.

of places, stretching from bank to bank, while the familiar roar of clashing water was plainly audible. On landing we found, after a short search, traces of the old portage-track, and the next few days were spent in carrying our outfit across.

The river at this point makes a great bend to the north-east, all around which is a succession of rapids and cañons. At the elbow of the bend a large fall is reported. At the lower end of the bend the river is reduced to a mere thread, as it is scarcely a hundred and fifty feet wide, and as fully a third of this is occupied by shore eddies, its bed must be eroded to an enormous depth. Immediately below the contracted part is a large eddy, and the river expands at once to over half a mile in width.

Fall reported.

THE DEVIL'S PORTAGE TO HELL GAET.

Devil's Portage.

The portage across the bend proved, greatly to our satisfaction, to be less than four miles in length instead of twelve, as we had been informed and expected. It is, however, very difficult, as it passes over a ridge fully a thousand feet high, on both sides of which the slopes are exceedingly steep. The old portage-track was easily followed among the heavy timber for some distance after leaving the upper end, but going east it became gradually overgrown with brushwood and at last disappeared, and we were obliged to cut out a new one for ourselves. This track was cleared out by Messrs. McCullough and Thibert in 1871 for the purpose of hauling their boat across, and it speaks somewhat favourably for the activity of forest growth in this region that it should now be covered with shrubs and small trees several inches in diameter.

Abundance of moose.

In crossing the portage we started several moose, and it may be mentioned here that the country we have been passing through and as far on as Hell Gate is probably the best moose country in North America. Everywhere we landed, fresh tracks in abundance were observed. We killed one at the mouth of Rivière des Vents and another farther down near Crow River, and could have shot a number of others if so desired. At the "Rapids of the Drowned" we scared three into the river, but these unfortunately attempted to swim the rapids and were drowned. They were found afterwards some distance below lodged in a drift-pile. Their abundance is due to the fact that the country is practically uninhabited. After leaving the Little Cañon we saw no Indians nor any traces of them, such as old camps, abandoned canoes, old cuttings, etc., anywhere along the river. The country in question forms a kind of neutral ground between the

Indians trading east and west of the mountains, and is also difficult of access on account of the danger in navigating the river. The absence of Indians and the consequent immunity from hunting enjoyed by the moose, since the abandonment of old Fort Halkett, has resulted in a great natural increase in their numbers. Besides, as they are persistently hunted in the adjoining country on either side of the mountains, by the bands of Indians trading at Fort Liard and at the mouth of Dease River respectively, many of them must escape into this district as into "a city of refuge." The beaver is also abundant, and, like the moose, appears to have thriven in the absence of their hereditary enemies. Grizzly bears were reported to be especially common on the Devil's Portage, but we did not meet with any.

Rig up canvas boat.

We spent altogether six days on the Devil's Portage crossing our outfit and framing a boat. We found that it would be impossible to cut out a track and haul our heavy wooden boat up the steep hills on the portage without wasting more time than we could well spare, and decided, somewhat reluctantly, to abandon it. To meet such an emergency I had provided myself, before leaving Ottawa, with a roll of stout canvas sewn up in the shape of a boat, and this we at once proceeded to put into shape. It was stretched on a stout plank hewn out of a small pine tree. Spruce poles, to which the canvas was firmly sewn, were used as gunwales, and willow withes for ribs, while slips to lay between the ribs and the canvas were easily cut. We painted the canvas with half a gallon of oil, which had been brought for the purpose, but this did not prevent it from leaking badly, and we were obliged to give it a second coat, made up of everything oleaginous which we still possessed. This mixture consisted of sperm candles, gun oil and bacon grease, stirred up with spruce gum, and proved effective in keeping out the water. Our new boat was not well adapted for running heavy rapids, especially where sudden turns had to be made to avoid rocks, but was quite serviceable in ordinary water and on easy riffles, and was, besides, light and easily portaged.

Grand Cañon.

Below the Devil's Portage for thirty or forty miles the river flows through what is called the Grand Cañon, but is more correctly a succession of short cañons with expanded basins between, filled with eddying currents. In low water the whole of this reach can be easily run in almost any kind of a boat, but in the season of high floods such as it was when we passed through, the water forcing its way through the throat-like contractions is thrown into a commotion too violent for any but the staunchest boats to stand. The cañon is reported to have been run in two hours, which would be at the rate of about eighteen miles an hour, an astonishing velocity, but the time was probably underestimated. It took us several days to get through, but we were obliged to make a number of short portages and one of over three miles in length.

Descent of Grand Cañon.

We launched our canvas boat and commenced the descent of the Grand Cañon on the 16th July. I had previously explored the river for some distance and knew that we had nothing serious to encounter for several miles. The river is at first wide and incloses a number of islands. As we proceed the bordering banks close in, become higher and steeper, while the current runs with increasing impetuosity, until, rounding a bend, it breaks into foam against a barrier of rocks which intercepts its course. We passed this by a small portage and then continued our headlong course down the river, but were soon stopped again by a succession of bad riffles. In the next couple of miles we ran through a number of wild places, the canvas boat riding the waves gallantly, but were forced to make one or two short portages and then enter a deep, gloomy defile, walled in by black vertical cliffs. The river here, is however, less boisterous and flows with a steadier current. Part way down the cañon a couple of small islets with steep, rocky banks divide the stream into several channels. These were soon left behind, and then hurrying through a second narrow pass we came out on a wider portion of the river. In the next twelve miles the river is generally wide and shallow and filled with gravel bars. The current is still swift, running at the rate of seven miles an hour, but the navigation is easy.

Rapids of the Drowned.

At the end of this reach it bends to the north, and striking violently against some sombre cliffs which line the left hand bank, is deflected again to the east with the formation of what are known as the "Rapids of the Drowned." Here, one of the most dangerous spots on the river is formed by water plunging with its whole force, over a ledge of rock which curves outwards and downwards from the left hand bank, into a boiling *chaudière* behind.

Name of rapid.

The name of the rapid originated from the drowning at this point of a Hudson's Bay clerk named Brown, and a boat load of voyageurs. As the story goes, Brown, disregarding the advice of his steersman, insisted on running close to the northern bank, and the canoe plunging into the hole mentioned above was drawn under.

We passed the rapid by letting our boat down cautiously with a rope to the *chaudière*, and then making a short portage. With a proper boat, however, no difficulty would be experienced in crossing the river above the rapid, and running down close to the right bank.

Below the "Rapid of the Drowned" is a long riffle, down which we ran at an exciting pace, and then the river is closed in by a hard sandstone bank, through a narrow gap in which it forces with difficulty a stormy passage. An examination of this convinced me of the impossibility of running it at the present high stage of the water with a boat such as we possessed, and also disclosed the unwelcome fact that a number of similar obstructions existed ahead. In the next four miles the river is closely cañoned in, five times, and falls over a number of riffles. Only some of these are dangerous, but we were forced to portage around the whole reach, owing to the steepness of the banks and the impossibility of getting down to the bottom of the valley, except at a few points. Three miles of rapid current followed, and then we reached Hell Gate, so named because it is the entrance from below, to the wild portion of the river we have been descending. At this point there is an abandoned channel on the left-hand side, which is navigable in high water, and affords an easy passage through.

Hell Gate.

Rocks between Devil's Portage and Hell Gate.

From the Devil's Portage to Hell Gate, the rocks noticed on the banks of the river consist mainly of shales, with bands of sandstone at intervals, and occasionally some limestone. Exposures of the latter occur at the east end of the Devil's Portage, where they are brought up by an anticline from below the shales. They are here grayish in colour, are moderately crystalline, and hold fragments of crinoids and other fossils, and evidently belong to the upper part of the Palæozoic series of the mountains. This series was not observed farther east. The shales are usually rather hard and weather into high bold cliffs, which often border the river on either side for miles without a break. They are dark in colour, and as a rule are rather coarsely laminated, but vary greatly in this respect and also in their texture. The shales undulate at all angles, and are continously exposed all the way down the cañon. They are interstratified with a hard grayish and yellowish sandstone, and a dark compact limestone. The sandstone occurs in bands, which form constrictions where they cross the river, and in the adjoining country rise into high hills and ridges. The limestones associated with the shales are usually impure and occur as a rule in thin shaly beds, but heavily bedded varieties were also observed at Hell Gate and at other places.

Triassic fossils.

No fossils were obtained in decending the cañon until the "Rapids of the Drowned" were reached, where the following species, since described or determined by Mr. Whiteaves and referred by him to the Trias, were obtained.*

---

*Contributions to Canadian Palæontology, vol. I, Part II, pages 127-149.

Spiriferina borealis, Whiteaves.
Terebratula Liardensis, "
Monotis ovalis, "
Halobia (Daonella) Lommelli, Wissman.
Halobia occidentalis, Whiteaves.
Nautilus Liardensis, "
Popanoceras McConnelli, "
Trachyceras Canadense, "

Some miles farther down, at the lower end of the last cañon before coming to Hell Gate, a second fossil locality was discovered which yielded the following species.

Terebratula Liardensis, Whiteaves.
Trigonodus ? productus, "
Margarita Triassica, "
Popanoceras McConnelli, "

At Hell Gate, three miles below the last, specimens were obtained of—

Trachyceras Canadense, Whiteaves.
Terebratula Liardensis, "

The localities from which Triassic fossils were obtained, extend along the river for ten miles, but it is highly probable that the rocks of this age have a much wider distribution than this and include the greater part of the barren shales above the "Rapids of the Drowned," as well as those below Hell Gate. It will require, however, more time than could be spared on a rapid reconnaissance, to separate precisely the shales which cap the Palæozoic from those of the Trias, and the latter from the Cretaceous. The three terranes are closely allied lithologically and will have to be defined largely from fossil evidence.

HELL GATE TO FORT LIARD.

elow ate.

Escaping from Hell Gate Cañon, the river dilates as usual and is bordered by large eddies. Below these, it runs swiftly around a large island, and then enters a cañon-like reach of the river about a mile long. The stream here is narrowed down to about a hundred and fifty yards in width, and flows easily between vertical banks three hundred feet high. This cañon proved to be the last on the river, and from this point on the river has an uninterrupted flow, and presents no obstacles to navigation until near its mouth. Five miles below the cañon, the undulations in the shales and associated sandstones and limestones cease, and at the same time the ridgy and hilly foot-hill district we have been passing through is replaced by a region of high irregular plateaux.

Foot-hills.

The foot-hills along the Liard have a width of 38 miles; and are characterized by a much greater irregularity in altitude than is usually the case. South of the Devil's Portage, Mount Prudence, a steep-sided, reddish looking mountain, rises abruptly from a surrounding of round topped hills to an estimated height of over 4000 feet. Going east from Mount Prudence, lower elevations prevail until near the "Rapids of the Drowned" where the ridges again commence to increase in elevation, and in a few miles culminate in peaks over 4000 feet high. Still going east they gradually diminish in importance and at last die away and are replaced by flat topped plateaux. This region with the exception of the higher peaks, is everywhere densely forested, chiefly with the white spruce, the Banksian pine and the aspen.

River east of foot-hills.

After leaving the foot-hill country the river runs in a general direction of N. 30° E. for thirty miles. In this reach it has a steady current of about four miles and a-half an hour, and varies in width from five hundred yards to over a mile. In the wider portions the river is usually divided into several channels by islands and bars. The valley is narrow and trough-like, with steep sides rising up in places to a height of fully a thousand feet. The bottoms are usually small, and are here chiefly wooded by members of the poplar family. Some important tributaries are received by the Liard in this portion of its course, among which is Crow River, which joins it from the north after entering the plateau country, and Toad River, which comes in from the south through a deep gloomy valley four miles farther down. Two miles below Toad River, on the opposite side, is situated Toad River post, which was abandoned when the post on the Nelson was established. The buildings are still standing.

Geology of plateau belt.

The geology of the plateau belt is exceedingly simple. The banks of the valley are usually scarped, and show everywhere extensive sections of flat-lying shales. These shales are dark in colour, are soft and finely laminated, and are interstratified with small beds of sandstone and ironstone, and layers of ironstone nodules. They are of Cretaceous age, but their mode of junction with the Triassic shales of the foot-hills was not clearly ascertained. Some fossils were collected from this formation about four miles below Toad River, among which are specimens of *Placenticeras Perezianum*, a species of *Camptonectes*, and fragments of an *Inoceramus*. Towards the eastern part of the plateau belt, the shales along the river are overlain by massive beds of soft sandstone and conglomerate, which form a steep escarpment running parallel with the river.

Enter lower country.

At the end of the northerly reach just described, the river, here over a mile wide and filled with islands, bends suddenly at right angles to its former course, and after passing through a narrow gap, enters a much lower country. The steep scarped banks of the plateau district disappear, and are replaced by gently inclined hillsides covered with forest, while the river spreads out and flows for some miles in a multitude of channels through a bewildering maze of islands.

The eastern edge of the plateau district faces eastward with a steep slope, and has a height of over a thousand feet. It runs nearly due north-and-south and forms an important feature in the general topography of the country. Where it crosses the river it shows exposures of soft conglomerates dipping lightly in an easterly direction. East of this escarpment Beaver River joins the Liard from the north. This is reported to be a fair sized stream and to be navigable for canoes for a long distance. It empties into the Liard behind a group of islands and we passed it without seeing it. Near the mouth we saw Indians for the first time since leaving the mouth of the Dease. They belonged to Fort Liard, and were on their way up the Beaver to hunt. We endeavoured to buy some meat from them, but found that they were totally unacquainted with the use of money, and as we were not supplied with trading goods, or, in fact, with anything except what we wore, it was found impossible to strike a bargain.

Beaver River.

Meet Indians for first time.

East of the Beaver the Liard runs in a south-easterly direction for a few miles and makes a couple of sharp bends before joining the Nelson. In the first of these bends we met a crew of Hudson's Bay voyageurs in charge of W. Lépine, who were endeavouring to make their way up the river to the mouth of the Dease. Lépine had been employed on the river as a guide, in the old days when goods were taken by this route to the Yukon, and was well acquainted with it. He brought news of a scarcity of provisions in the Mackenzie River District, and this decided me to send my two men back up the river with him, and to depend on the services of natives for canoemen in the future. Lépine had become disheartened by the continued high water and the difficulties of up-stream navigation, and when we met him talked of returning, but we induced him to persevere. A small spruce-bark canoe which an Indian and his wife built in the afternoon, in addition to the large birch canoe which he already possessed, furnished sufficient accommodation for his increased party, and on the 28th July, after a day's delay, he proceeded up the river. I afterwards learned that with the exception of one upset, caused by the unskilfulness of

Meet crew of H.B. voyageurs.

Send men back up river.

Trépanier, one of my men, the journey was successfully accomplished and Dease River reached in safety.

After separating from Lépine I continued down the river to Fort Liard in the canvas boat, at first in company with an Indian, but for the greater part of the distance entirely alone. After starting we rounded a large bend and then continued in a northerly direction to the mouth of the Nelson, or east branch of the Liard.

Nelson River.

Nothing has been published concerning the Nelson [1888], but it is reported to be a somewhat sluggish river of about one hundred and fifty or two hundred yards in width. A hundred miles above its mouth is situated Fort Nelson, a Hudson's Bay trading post. Above the fort the river divides into two branches, one of which, named Buffalo River, turns west to the mountains, while the other continues on and interlocks with tributaries of Hay River.

*In 1872-73 a party of miners crossed from Peace River to the Liard by way of the Nelson on a prospecting trip. They descended Peace River to Half-way River, so called because it is half way between Rocky Mountain Portage and Fort St. John, and ascended the latter partly in canoes and partly on the ice for a hundred miles. They then made a portage of twenty-five miles, and reached the Nelson, down which they sledded for sixty miles, and then built boats and came the rest of the way by water. They only mention one portage of half a mile, but describe the river as flowing for a long distance above Fort Nelson, between lofty banks of sandstone and shale. "Colours" of gold were obtained on the Liard at the mouth of the Nelson.

Fort Nelson.

At Fort Nelson some farming is annually done, and potatoes and other vegetables are grown without difficulty. The surrounding country is everywhere well forested, and is reported to produce a better grade of timber than any other part of the Mackenzie district.

Liard below the Nelson.

Below the Nelson the Liard has a general northerly direction for thirty miles, and then, bending more to the east, follows a N.E. course as far as Fort Liard, fifteen miles farther down, where I arrived on July 29th. In this reach it has undulating shore-lines, but is generally wide and filled with sandbars and wooded islands. It is bordered in many places with wide, alluvial flats, covered with tall, straight cottonwood, large spruce, and canoe birch. Its valley is wide and shallow and lined with gently sloping, spruce-clad banks. On some of the flats the Indians have built houses, and fenced in small plots for farming purposes, for which the greater part of this section of the

---

* Extracted from letter by Fred. W. Harte.

district seems well adapted. We passed one small Indian farm about thirteen miles below the mouth of the Nelson, and another at the mouth of Fishing Creek, a few miles above Fort Liard, while others were noticed in the lower part of the river.

Indian farms.

Tributaries of Liard.

The two principal tributaries of the Liard between the Nelson and Fort Liard are Rivière la Biche and Black River. The former enters it from the N.W., about twenty miles below the Nelson, and the latter from the S.E. at Fort Liard. Black River is the outlet of Lake Bis-tchô, a large lake situated about 120 miles S.S.W. of Fort Providence, and is reported to be navigable with difficulty throughout its entire course in high water. It will afford, with the Nelson and Hay rivers, a ready means of entering and exploring the vast block of unknown country lying between the Liard and Peace River, the Mackenzie and the Rocky Mountains.

Rocks east of plateau district.

Since leaving the plateau district the rock exposures observed along the river have been few and small, and consist of dark shales, alternating with sandy shales and sandstones, all of Cretaceous age. Twelve miles below the Nelson an exposure of sandy shales and sandstone yielded an *Ostrea* like *Ostrea subtrigonalis*, and at the mouth of Black River, near Fort Liard, in a hard, crumbly shale, specimens of an *Inoceramus* were obtained, while the surface of the shale in some places is covered with well marked impressions of gigantic palm leaves, probably belonging to the genus *Sabal*, which occurs in Vancouver Island in rocks of a similar age.

Quaternary deposits.

The quaternary deposits in this part of the river are represented by stratified sands and gravels, immediately overlying the shales, and by gneissic erratics, which are distributed everywhere over the surface of the country, and in some places, as at the mouth of Black River, are present in great profusion. The western limit of the eastern drift along the Liard, judging from the river section, appears to be nearly coincident with the eastern edge of the plateau district, although gneissic fragments were found in the mountains opposite Fort Liard at a somewhat higher elevation.

Eastern drift.

Rocky Mountains.

Absence of foot-hills.

Thirty miles below the Nelson, the Liard approaches, and for the next seventy-five miles hugs closely a chain of mountains which may be considered as a northern division of the Rocky Mountain system, and as the complement of the chain around the northern end of which the Liard passes west of the Devil's Portage. The mountains are not fringed with a belt of foot-hills, such as usually accompany them in other places, but rise abruptly from an almost level plain, and attain at once the full height of about 4000 feet. The folds and fracture to which the mountains are due also seem to die away with startling rapidity. The Liard for fifteen miles above Black River, cuts at a distance of two to five miles directly across the strike of the ranges, and yet the beds along its valley wherever seen are practically undisturbed. While waiting at Fort Liard I climbed one of the ranges to a height of 3000 feet, but obtained little geological information. The rocks were only exposed in a few places, and where seen consisted of westerly-dipping unfossiliferous chert and cherty limestone. Gneissic fragments apparently belonging to the eastern drift were found up to a height of over 1500 feet. I obtained, however, an extensive view from the summit, over the plains to the eastward. The country in that direction rises gradually from the river in easy undulations, and appears to culminate at a distance of twenty-five or thirty miles in a low plateau through which Black River has cut a wide gap. A dense forest, relieved in places by gleaming lakes and light green marshes, stretches to the horizon. To the north and north-west the eye is met by a succession of bare topped and nearly parallel limestone ridges striking about N. 20° W. and reaching elevations of from 4000 to 5000 feet.

Climb ranges.

View from top of mountains.

Fort Liard is at present the only fort on the Liard below the mouth of the Dease, and is resorted to for trading purposes by about two hundred Indians, most of whom are known as Nahanni or Mountain Indians. Under this term are included a number of tribal divisions of the Tinneh family, but the names of these I was unable to obtain. They are reported to be fast dying off. The fort is situated on a fertile flat, part of which has been cultivated for years with unfailing success. Wheat and barley are grown here year after year, while potatoes, cabbages, turnips and other vegetables are raised without the least difficulty. At the time of my visit, 1st August, all the crops were well advanced and in good condition; the barley was just turning colour, and the potatoes were almost large enough to eat. There is no reason, either climatic or otherwise, why the whole country bordering the Liard, from Beaver River to near its mouth, should not, when needed, support an agricultural community.

Agricultural resources.

[Near Fort Liard the Liard River crosses the Eastern boundary of British Columbia. All that part of Mr. McConnell's report, as originally printed, that relates to the Mackenzie Valley proper is here omitted.]

RAT RIVER.

Fort Macpherson was reached on the 25th of June, and as the Mackenzie steamer from which I expected to obtain supplies was not expected down until the 10th of July, a short trip was made up Rat

Reach Fort Macpherson.

River while awaiting its arrival. At the fort I was informed that neither boats nor canoes could be obtained west of the mountains, but that the boat I had used on the Mackenzie might be portaged across by taking it up Rat River and then through the MacDougal pass to Bell River on the other side. This plan was adopted, and five Indians were sent to try and take it across. They made the portage in seven days.

Rat River.

Rat River is represented in Isbister's map of Peel River, published in 1845, in the journal of the Royal Geographical Society, as rising on the western side of the Rocky Mountains and flowing directly across them. This error was probably caused by the same name being used by the Indians to designate the two streams flowing east and west from the summit of the range. Rat River (east) discharges its waters by two mouths. The north branch empties into one of the delta streams of the Mackenzie, and has not yet been explored, while the south branch joins Peel River about nine miles below Fort Macpherson. When Peel River is in flood the current in the south branch is reversed.

Rat River for some miles above its mouth, winds through a flat alluvial plain, forming part of the Peel-Mackenzie delta. Its width is about fifty yards, and the current is uniform and easy. Above this reach it enters a lake region, and for several miles connects by short channels a number of small irregular-shaped willow-fringed lakes lying in shallow depressions in the delta. West of the lake region the declivity of the stream rapidly increases, and a few hours hard paddling brought us to the foot of a series of strong rapids which marks the beginning of the ascent towards the mountains. Leaving our canoe here we tramped eight miles across a marshy plain to the foot of the first range, our objective point. For part of the way we travelled along the top of a low narrow ridge, which is probably of morainic origin and is composed, so far as I could learn from the surface, of quartzite pebbles and boulders carried eastward from the mountains.

Leave canoe.

Geology of eastern range of Rockies.

The eastern range of the Rockies where broken through by Rat River, has a nearly north-and-south trend, and rises to an elevation of about 2800 feet. It is built throughout of evenly bedded hard sandstones and quartzites, dipping to the east at an angle of about 30°. No fossils were found in rocks *in situ*, but in the wash of Long-stick Creek, a tributary of Rat River, which descends from the same range and was crossed on the way, *Ammonites* and other fossils of Cretaceous age were found. These occur in angular sandstone blocks, evidently derived from the neighbouring mountains, and I have little doubt characterize the formation of which the latter are composed. No limestones, gneisses or granites, were observed.

A sub-angular gneissic boulder, representing the eastern drift, was found on the eastern slope of the mountains at a height of 1500 feet. Eastern drift.

PEEL RIVER PORTAGE.

On July 10th I decided not to waste any more time waiting for the steamer, as it was impossible to tell how long it might be delayed, and to trust to the chance of finding supplies at Rampart House. I had sent part of my outfit across by some Indians who were returning to Lapierre House, and Mr. Hodgson, after some trouble, succeeded in engaging five others to accompany me and to carry the remainder. The ordinary load for an Indian on this portage is 40 pounds, exclusive of blankets and supplies for the trip, and the tariff for this load is fifteen skins, or seven dollars and a-half, paid in goods. The portage is about sixty miles long, and from four to five days are occupied in the trip. Indian packers.

We left the fort late in the afternoon, and ascending the river for a mile and a-half, landed on the opposite side and strapped on our packs, while some dogs owned by the Indians were loaded so heavily that they were unable to climb the bank of the river and had to be assisted up. After leaving the river we marched for three miles through a thick spruce forest, and then reached the steep edge of a terrace about one hundred and fifty feet high, up which we climbed. From the top of the terrace, a swampy plain destitute of trees, but covered with willows chiefly of the species *Salix arctica* and *S. glauca*, stretches west for nearly four miles, and then a second slope, longer and higher than the first, has to be ascended, at the summit of which the barometer registered a height of twelve hundred feet above the river at the fort. At this elevation the forest has ceased, and the shrubs which occur so abundantly on the first terrace have almost disappeared, and are only represented by an occasional stunted specimen of the arctic willow (*S. arctica*). A small larch (*Larix Americana*) still survives, but barely attains a height of six or eight feet and a diameter of one to two inches. Leave Fort Macpherson. Terraces at base of mountains.

From the second slope a wide plain reaches westwards to the mountains. The walking here is exceedingly difficult, as the surface is covered with the rounded grassy sods which go in the country by the name of *Têtes des femmes*. These project a foot or more above the clayey soil, and are the cause of constant stumbling, which becomes somewhat exasperating when one is weighted down with a pack. An attempt to walk on the top of the mounds soon becomes excessively fatiguing, on account of the irregular length of the strides, and a Difficult walking.

slight miscalculation as to distance precipitates the unlucky traveller down into the muddy depths between. When down, the resolve is usually made, and adhered to for awhile, to keep to the lower levels, but the effort required to step over the intervening hillocks presents obvious disadvantages of a different kind.

Mountain stream.

A walk of five hours, at the rate of about a mile and a-half an hour, brought us to a deep valley occupied by a swift mountain stream, which we forded, and then camped on the opposite bank. This stream, half a mile below camp, joins a small river which falls into Peel River three or four miles above the fort. Its channel is filled with sandstone, and quartzite slabs derived from its banks and from the neighbouring mountains.

Mountain sheep hunt.

On the 11th we climbed out of the valley, and, following up the main stream, soon reached the "Gap" from which it emerges from the mountains. A halt of a couple of hours was called here for the purpose of allowing the Indians to add to their store of provisions by killing a mountain sheep which one of them observed on a ledge above. The hunt was successful, and the victim proved to be the interesting *Ovis Montani*, var. *Dalli.* This animal resembles the bighorn of the Rocky Mountains to the south in form, but is much smaller, weighing scarcely a hundred pounds, and its hair, instead of being tawny, is almost a pure white. The change in colour and size towards the north is evidently a gradual one, as the saddle-backed sheep of the upper Yukon presents characters intermediate between the two extreme varieties.

Character of mountains.

At the "Gap" the pass through the mountains is eight to ten miles in width, but gradually contracts as we advance, and at our second camp, six miles from the mouth, was reduced to about two miles. The inclosing mountains are regular in outline and somewhat tame in appearance, and rise to elevations above the valley from one thousand to two thousand five hundred feet. The bottom of the valley and the lower slopes of the mountains are clothed with coarse grasses and mosses, above which project naked and often precipitous quartzite cliffs. The stream which occupies the valley at the present time is insignificant in size, and is doing little or no erosive work, and this great cleft through the hard quartzite strata is evidently the product of an earlier age, marked by a much greater precipitation than the present one.

Wide valley.

From our second camp a walk of two miles brought us through the first range and out on a wide longitudinal valley which traverses the mountains in a nearly north-and-south direction. The stream we had been following up divides here into two branches, and the principal one, reduced now to a large sized brook, bends away to the south. After leaving it the trail leads up a long slope covered with *Têtes des femmes*, and then directly across the valley to an opening in the range ahead. On the farther side of the valley we reached and followed up for a couple of miles a small stream which runs north to Rat River, and directly afterwards crossed the watershed between the Mackenzie and the Yukon and commenced our descent to the latter. The watershed has an elevation measured by the barometer of 2600 feet above the starting point on Peel River, or about 2650 above the sea, while the neighbouring mountains rise about a thousand feet higher.

Elevation of watershed.

Two miles west of the watershed the mountains turn suddenly to the north, and the westward-flowing stream which we were following plunges down a steep decline of fully 1200 feet. At the base of this declivity it is joined by a large tributary from the south, which swells it to a small river. At the confluence of the two streams is a large flat covered with small groves of the white spruce (*Picea alba*). The elevation here is over a thousand feet higher than the point at which this tree disappeared on the eastern side of the range.

From the foot of the mountains a high table-land, swelling occasionally into considerable eminences, stretches to the westward. Through this plateau the branch of Bell River down which the trail leads has cut a wild and gloomy chasm fully a thousand feet deep. The walls of the cañon are formed of flat-lying sandstones and hard quartzites, and are naked and precipitous above, but fall away in easier slopes below. The bottom of the valley is generally soft and marshy, but hard gravelly terraces, affording good walking, are occasionally crossed. Seven miles from the head of the cañon a large stream comes in from the right, and two miles and a-half farther on a second and more impetuous one pours into the main stream from the same direction. After crossing the latter we camped on some firm ground on the farther side.

High table-land.

On the 13th we continued our way down the cañon. Three miles from camp the river washes up against the walls on the right hand side, and the trail, which has hitherto followed the right bank, crosses over to the left. The ford is a difficult one, as the stream is here deep and rapid, and its channel is paved with treacherous quartzite boulders. The greatest caution is necessary in crossing, as a stumble or false step would almost certainly be fatal to one encumbered with a heavy pack. In fording these swift mountain torrents, it is customary to adopt a communistic plan. The party line up behind a long pole, and keeping a firm hold of it advance into the stream abreast. In this case the

Mode of crossing streams.

person above sustains the full brunt of the current, but is held up by those below, and a stumbler receives the support of those who have kept their footing.

Two miles and a-half below the ford the flanking plateau drops suddenly several hundred feet in elevation, and the cañon disappears. A second crossing is necessary here, as the river after escaping from the confining walls of the cañon bends away to the south. At this point the river is wide and shallow, and the crossing was made without difficulty. The stony banks were gay with the yellow flowers of *Senecio lugens*. Four miles farther on the river is again encountered returning from its southern bend, and is crossed for the last time. The river is bordered here by a marshy flat, about two miles in width, through which we waded. Beyond the marsh the trail winds up the steep edge of a high terrace, and then a four mile tramp across a succession of muskegs, brought us to the end of this stage of our journey, and we thankfully threw down our packs on the banks of Bell River.

Character of mountains.

The Rocky Mountains, along the Peel River portage, present features which differ greatly from those which characterize them farther to the south. They consist here essentially of two ranges, separated by a wide longitudinal valley, and flanked on either side by high plateaux. The eastern range has a width of seven miles, and its higher peaks were estimated to reach an altitude of 2500 feet above the level of the pass, or about 4000 feet above the sea. The western range is much narrower, and north of the pass does not exceed four miles in width, but spreads out somewhat more towards the south. The valley of Peel River, which skirts the eastern base of the range, is fully 1200 feet lower than the valley of Rat River on the western side, and the drainage of the mountains is mostly towards the former.

Geological section.

The geological section obtained is somewhat imperfect, as our scanty supplies allowed of no delay, but sufficient was learnt to show that the range has on the whole an anticlinal structure, although the general anticline is obscured in places by subordinate folds, and is probably broken by faults. In the eastern plateau the beds are nearly horizontal, but approaching the mountains they incline gently to the eastwards, and in the centre of the eastern range have dips of from 30° to 70° in the same direction. In the western range the same dip prevails, but the inclination is much less, and the beds flatten out when the mountains are replaced by the elevated western plateau. The horizontal attitude is maintained for some miles, but before reaching the western edge of the plateau the beds bend down and dip gently to the west.

No limestones were observed along this section, and the rocks consist of sandstones, quartzites and shales, all of which are probably referrable to the Cretaceous. At the starting point on Peel River the banks are formed of shales, interbedded with some hard sandstones holding carbonized fragments of wood and leaves. In the first fourteen miles the beds are concealed, but shales and sandstones are again exposed on the banks of the valley in which we made our first camp. Some fossils were collected here, among which is a *Discina*, like *D. pileolus*, Whiteaves, a *Mactra* and a *Yoldia*, both of which are probably new, but the specimens are too imperfectly preserved to admit of specific determination. Six miles farther west, at the entrance to the "Gap," the trail passes over beds of a bluish, rather compact calcareous sandstone. The beds are coated in places with calc-spar, are highly ferruginous, and weather to a rusty yellow. A *Cardium* and some other poorly preserved fossils were obtained here. In the valley of the river the sandstones are underlain by dark shales. After entering the mountains, only alternating sandstones and quartzites were seen. The beds of this series are grayish in colour, are evenly stratified and are very uniform in appearance all across the range. They have an estimated minimum thickness of 5000 feet, and may possibly greatly exceed this. The western plateau is built of compact grayish sandstones, passing in places into quartzites, similar to those found in the mountains and evidently belonging to the same formation.

Fossils.

Both Isbister and Petitot mention limestone, schists, and granites, as being found in this section of the mountains, but these rocks were not seen in the section examined by me, nor were pebbles derived from them found in the wash of any of the streams which we crossed. In the valley of the Mackenzie, however, the Devonian limestones immediately underlie the sandstones and shales of the Cretaceous, and it is highly probable that in parts of the range the disturbance has been sufficient to bring these to the surface.

No limestones or schists in mountains.

On arriving at Bell River, we crossed over to Lapierre House, which is situated on a flat on the western side, but found the post deserted by all but Indians, the officers in charge having left some time before for Fort Macpherson. Lapierre House is simply an outpost of Fort Macpherson, and is kept up principally to faciliate the transit of goods and furs across the mountains, although some trading is also done both with the Loucheux and the Eskimo. It has been in existence about thirty-five years. No farming of any kind is attempted either here or at Fort Macpherson.

Lapierre House.

The boat which I had sent across the mountain by the McDougal Pass, I was glad to find had reached its destination in good order, and

Prepare for descent of the Porcupine.

no time was lost in preparing for the descent of Bell River and the Porcupine. My crew down these rivers consisted, beside myself, of one man, an Orkneyman and ex-employé of the Hudson's Bay Company named Skee, whom I met at Fort Macpherson on his way out of the country, and was fortunately able to induce to come with me and go out by the way of the Yukon.

Character of Bell River.

The upper part of Bell River has not been explored. At the fort it is a small sluggish stream of forty or fifty yards in width, and a current of less than two miles an hour. The banks are low and alluvial, and the bordering region is covered with willows, birch, aspen and spruce belonging to the same species as those noticed east of the mountains. Below Lapierre House, Bell River runs a few degrees east of south for seven or eight miles, and then bending to the south-west flows by Sinclair's Rock with a somewhat accelerated current, and continues on in the same direction to Stony River, a stream nearly equal in size to itself. From Stony River its course is north-west, or nearly opposite to its direction in the first reach, for seven or eight miles, and then it bends gradually around to the south-west and keeps this course until it empties into the Porcupine. Its length from Lapierre House to its mouth is about thirty miles. Besides Stony River, which comes in from the left, it receives a short distance farther down, from the same side, the waters of Eagle River, a stream of about a hundred feet in width. Below its junction with these two streams Bell River becomes considerably enlarged, and in its lower part expands to about a hundred yards in width. No rapids were met with below Lapierre House, and the current seldom exceeds three miles an hour, and is usually much slower.

Geology of Bell River.

The valley of Bell River is shallow, and no rock-sections occur in the banks below Lapierre House until the cliff at Sinclair's Rock is reached. At this point the river cuts through a range of hills, and coarse arenaceous shales are uncovered, which probably represent an extension of the same beds that in the mountains are hardened into quartzites. The shales are unevenly bedded, and under the influence of the weather crumble into a talus of sharp, angular fragments. For some miles below Sinclair's Rock the banks are formed of alluvial clays and sands, but shales are again exposed about half a-mile below Eagle River. The beds here are softer and darker in colour than those found in Sinclair's Rock, and are better stratified and separated into thinner laminæ. They alternate with some beds of sandstone and ironstone. The dip is S. 65° W. $<$ 20°. Beds of a similar character are exposed again four miles farther down. Here they are horizontal when first seen, but in a short distance bend down and assume a vertical attitude. Below this point dark fissile shales, alternating occasionally with beds of sandstone and ironstone, undulate at all angles in the bank of the river, and are almost continuously expesed until within a few miles of the mouth of the river, when they are overlain and concealed by recent clays and sands.

The rocks exposed along Bell River are unfossiliferous, but are closely related lithologically to the Cretaceous shales and sandstones of the Lower Mackenzie and the mountains, and I have little hesitation in referring them to the same horizon.

PORCUPINE RIVER.

BELL RIVER TO DRIFTWOOD RIVER.

Porcupine River.

Very little information was available in regard to the Porcupine before the present exploration was undertaken. Short accounts derived from hearsay evidence, are given by Richardson and others, but it was not personally visited by any of the numerous travellers who have written of the Mackenzie and the Yukon, although it has been used by the Hudson's Bay Company as a trade route since 1847, and its navigation presents no special difficulty.

The Porcupine heads within thirty miles of the Pelly-Yukon, approximately in latitude 65° 30′ N., and after describing a great semicircular curve to the north-east, falls into the same river a hundred and fifty miles farther down. At its most easterly point it approaches within eighty miles of the Mackenzie, but it is separated from it by the main range of the Rocky Mountains. Its total length approximates to five hundred miles.

Exploration of the Porcupine.

The upper part of the Porcupine was explored by Mr. Ogilvie in the early part of the present summer. Ogilvie reached the head of the river by a winter traverse from the Pelly-Yukon, and descended it as far as the mouth of Bell River. An account of this part of the river will be found in his report. The present description treats of the part below Bell River.

Character of the Porcupine.

From Bell River to Driftwood River, a distance of about thirty miles in a straight line, but over forty by the course of the river, the Porcupine has a general north-westerly trend, but makes a couple of minor bends to the north-east. Its width varies from one hundred and fifty to two hundred yards, and its current barely averages two miles an hour. The valley is generally rather wide and shallow, but at one point about ten miles below Bell River, becomes somewhat contracted, and for some miles has the appearance of a wide cañon, The banks here are high and steep, and are formed of broken fragments of hard quartzite. Below the contraction it resumes its usual character. The bordering country is very uneven and swells in places into hills and ridges, most of which appear to have a northerly trend. None of these elevations attain any considerable altitude, and like the lowlands they are clothed with the same monotonous forest of spruce and aspen which has been so often described.

Cretaceous section.

In this reach the river cuts through a very interesting series of Cretaceous beds, but the haste with which we were travelling prevented me from examining these in as satisfactory a manner as might be desired. In the first ten miles below the mouth of Bell River, alluvial sands and clays form the banks of the valley, and then hard sandstones and quartzites appear, and are continuously exposed for the next three miles. The sandstones are grayish in colour, very hard, and pass gradually into a compact quartzite. In weathering they break into sharp angular fragments, and the lower slopes of the banks are covered with a steep talus of this material. The dip here is nearly east, and the rocks exposed have a thickness of between three and four thousand feet.

Sandstone and quartzite series.

Shale series.

The sandstone series is succeeded and underlain by dark shales interbedded with ironstone. The shales have a light easterly dip, and an approximate thickness of eight hundred feet. They yielded some fossils, among which is a very large belemnite, a finely ribbed ventricose scaphite, which has some resemblance to *Scaphites ventricosus*, and a peculiar ammonitoid shell, which shows a ribbed central portion, while the outer whorl is quite smooth. Mr. Whiteaves states that the fossils are probably Benton, but the specimens are too imperfect to make the correlation certain.

Sandstone, quartzite and conglomerate series.

The shales are exposed for about a mile, and are then replaced by shales, hard shaly sandstones and quartzites, interstratified with occasional conglomeritic beds. The sandstones are often somewhat greenish on a fresh fracture, but weather to a yellowish or rusty colour. These beds are brought up by a light easterly dip from beneath the shales, and occur in frequent exposures for a distance of two miles. They have a minimum thickness of two thousand feet. Some of the shaly sandstones of this series are fossiliferous, affording numerous specimens of an *Ostrea*, along with a *Pecten*, a *Rhynchonella* and an apparently undescribed species of *Pteria*. These fossils do not afford any definite proof in regard to the age of the formation, but are not at variance with its reference to the Dakota, to which the stratigraphical evidence would assign it.

Continuing down the river, an interval of about a mile occurs in which the beds are concealed, and then sandstones are again exposed, forming the floor of a wide shelving beach on the right-hand side of the river. The dip is still easterly, and the descending section has evidently been continuous. The sandstone here is a hard grayish variety, and in its compact texture it approaches a quartzite. It is fossiliferous, and some of the beds are covered with casts of *Aucella mosquensis* var. *concentrica*, the characteristic fossil of the Queen Charlotte Islands formation. This formation occurs in British Columbia, at the base of the Cretaceous, and has been referred by Mr. Whiteaves, on fossil evidence, to a position immediately below the Dakota, a reference which is apparently justified by the facts detailed in the section just described.

Aucella beds.

Below the point on the river at which the Aucella beds are exposed, the section becomes so confused and is interrupted by so many concealed intervals, that it was found impossible to follow closely the sequence of the terranes.

A mile and a-half below the *Aucella* beds, yellowish-weathering shales and sandstones are exposed, which probably belong to the same series. The easterly dip, which has been maintained for so long, changes here, and the inclination of the beds becomes more variable, and is not infrequently to the west. The sandstones are followed after an interval of three miles by black bituminous looking shales, the relations of which are somewhat obscure, and these by a hard conglomerate, the dip of which is to the south. Five miles farther down ferruginous rusty-weathering shales, striking nearly east-and-west, and dipping up stream, are again exposed. The beds first seen are very fissile, and are lighter coloured than is usually the case, but are underlain by a black carbonaceous variety resembling the Devonian shales seen along the Grand View on the Mackenzie. Fragments of a brachiopod shell were collected here, but the specimens are too indefinite for determination.

Change of dip.

The shales are underlain by a great thickness of yellowish-coloured coarse-textured conglomerate, occurring in massive beds and lying in an almost horizontal position. The pebbles of this conglomerate, besides the usual quartzose and slate varieties, include boulders of limestone often exceeding a foot in diameter. A high range of hills, which follows the left bank of the valley for some miles, is evidently built of this rock.

Coarse conglomerate.

The conglomerate is succeeded by soft bluish-looking shales, but the junction of the two formations was not observed. The shales after a short interval, are concealed, but reappear four miles farther down,

Bluish shales.

and are replaced shortly afterwards by the conglomerates with which they are associated. The latter evidently constitute the local base of the Cretaceous, as they are underlain by hard bluish unfossiliferous dolomites dipping at high angles, which have a decided Palæozoic appearance.

Dolomites.

Below the dolomites the section is again interrupted for a short distance, and the next exposures show soft, bluish, lightly undulating shales, similar to those seen farther up. The shales are interstratified with some harder calcareous strata, the surfaces of which are occasionally blackened with carbonized fragments of leaves. The shales form the banks as far as Driftwood River and beyond.

Summary of section.

The section obtained in the reach of the Porcupine between the mouth of Bell River and the Driftwood may be summarized as consisting in descending order of three to four thousand feet of barren quartzites and sandstone, a band of dark shales, probably of Benton age, and a great series of sandstone shales and conglomerates, characterized by holding *Aucella mosquensis* var. *concentrica*, the base of which was not determined. The conglomerates and shales which alternate with one another in the lower part of the reach, may possibly represent in a somewhat modified condition, the two lower divisions just enumerated, but their relations were not definitely ascertained. They form the base of the Cretaceous, as Palæozoic limestone rises from beneath them in the higher undulations.

DRIFTWOOD RIVER TO THE HEAD OF THE RAMPARTS.

Character of the Porcupine below Driftwood River.

Below Driftwood River, the Porcupine makes a sudden bend of several miles to the north, and then turning to the west it follows a general bearing of about 15° south of west to the head of the Ramparts. The distance between these two points, measured in a straight line, is about fifty miles, but measured along the tortuous course of the river, exceeds seventy-five miles. The river in this reach has a width of from two to three hundred yards. No rapids were met with, and the current does not average over two miles an hour. Alluvial islands occur at long intervals, and sand and gravel bars are more numerous than in the upper part. The valley varies from one to two hundred feet in depth, and occasionally expands to over three miles in width, and in such cases incloses large wooded flats. The volume of the Porcupine is swelled in this reach by two considerable tributaries, besides a number of smaller streams. Old Crow River enters it from the north about half way down, and Blue-fish River from the south a few miles above the head of the Ramparts. The bordering region is undulating and wooded, and is broken below the Old Crow River by a short range culminating in high bare peaks, the summits of which attain elevations of over two thousand feet above the river. This range has been called the Old Crow mountains, after a Loucheux chief of that name, in whose hunting grounds they are. The outlines of a number of similar ranges, all apparently independent of one another, were observed cutting the horizon at various points.

Geological section.

The geological section becomes much simpler below Driftwood River. Soft bluish shales, with occasional harder calcareous layers, are exposed at the mouth of the river, and again three miles lower down. They are nearly horizontal, but can be seen to undulate slightly in the banks. They are succeeded and underlain by a band of hard sandstones and quartzites, which are white on a fresh fracture, but weather to a bright conspicuous yellow. A mile farther down the quartzite band folds over a sudden anticlinel, the central part of which consists of a hard, compact bluish limestone, alternating with a more shaly variety of the same rock. The harder limestone beds have a cracked appearance, and are covered with a network of reticulating calcite veins. They are filled in places with broken crinoid stems and other fossils, and are undoubtedly Palæozoic. The contact between the limestones and the overlying Cretaceous rocks has the appearance from the river of being slightly discordant.

Recent disturbance.

The anticlinal swell just referred to projects above the surface as a hill, and affords evidence in itself of the comparatively recent age of the disturbance which produced it, if denudation be accepted as a measure of time. The curve of the strata is still unbroken by denudation, although the fractured condition of the beds shows that they were bent near the surface and not under any great pressure.

Slickensided surfaces in horizontal strata.

Three miles below the anticline the same bluish shales which are exposed above it commence again, and are shown in all the scarped banks until within a short distance of Fishing River. They are horizontal, or are subject to almost inappreciable dips. As we descend the river they become much softer and lose the fissile shaly cleavage which characterized them where first seen. Interstratified with the shales are occasional harder beds of dark sandstones, which pass in some instances into a conglomeritic condition. The sandstones often show well marked slickensided surfaces, a feature somewhat unusual in soft, apparently undisturbed strata, and the jointage planes are occasionally lined with a thin film of a pinkish mineral, the identity of which has not been made out. Broken coaly particles form a constituent of the shales in some places, but no lignite beds were seen. Limestone concretions, ranging in size up to six feet in diameter, and either arranged in lines or scattered irregularly through the shales, are abundant in some of the sections, and hold fragments of bones and pieces of the test and occasionally entire specimens of a large *Inoceramus*.

Recent deposits. The recent deposits overlying the shales consist of alluvial silts, sands, clays and gravels, and no boulder-clays or other beds referable to the glacial period are seen after leaving the Mackenzie.

Half a mile above Fishing River the dark Cretaceous shales are overlain unconformably by soft, scarcely stratified, whitish and yellowish clays and sands. No fossils were found in these beds, but they evidently represent some horizon in the Tertiary, and their stratigraphical relations would correlate them with the Bear River Tertiary beds of the Mackenzie, which have been referred by Sir William Dawson, on the evidence of their flora, to the Laramie. Two miles below the first exposure, Tertiary beds are again shown in a scarped bank on the left-hand side of the river. They consist here of yellowish and whitish sands and sandstones, interbedded with a grayish, rather hard conglomerate, made up of quartzite pebbles, fragments of shale, and scales of a silvery micaceous schist, unlike any rocks which I have seen in the country. In the next few miles the coloured Tertiary rocks are exposed at all the bends of the river. Eight miles above the mouth of Old Crow River they are raised up by an anticline, and the bluish shales and sandstones of the Cretaceous appear unconformably beneath them. The Cretaceous beds are marked here with numerous impressions of a large *Inoceramus*, some of which exceed three feet in length, but the crumbling character of the rock prevented me from obtaining specimens.

Tertiary beds.

The Cretaceous shales have a very limited exposure here, and are again replaced in the course of a few hundred yards by the Tertiary. Two miles below the Cretaceous outcrop, a small bed of shaly lignite was observed among the Tertiary beds exposed on the banks.

Re-appearance of Cretaceous. At the mouth of Old Crow River, the dark shales of the Cretaceous again rise to the surface and outcrop along the right bank for a short distance. They are brought up here by the same disturbance to which the Old Crow Mountains, which are directly opposite, owe their existence.

Old Crow Mountains. The Old Crow Mountains were not examined closely, but they appear to belong to the same system of anticlinal uplifts examples of which are met with so frequently in the valleys of both the Porcupine and the Mackenzie. The lower slopes of the range show dark shales of Cretaceous age, while the higher peaks, judging by the wash in the streams which descend from them, are built principally of hard quartzites similar to those which characterize the Cretaceous farther up the river.

Re-enter Tertiary basin.

Two miles below the mouth of Old Crow River, the Porcupine bends to the left and enters the Tertiary basin again. At the extremity of the bend the Tertiary beds are well exposed, and consist of whitish and light-yellowish sands, clays and gravels. The beds have little coherency, and can be crushed between the fingers. Small nodules and beds of ironstone are developed in some places, but none of these proved to be fossiliferous. In the next twenty miles, or as far as the head of the Ramparts, the sands, clays and gravels of the Tertiary appear with little variety in the scarped banks washed out by the river at the elbows of the various bends. The sections have a general whitish appearance when viewed from a distance, but a closer inspection reveals an alternation of whitish, light-yellowish and reddish tints. The rocks of this terrane show little induration, but have sufficient coherency when freshly uncovered to enable them to stand in almost vertical cliffs of from one hundred to two hundred feet in height; but under a long exposure the face of an escarpment crumbles down into a gentle slope, from which the harder beds occasionally project. The following section was measured a short distance above the head of the Ramparts :—

	Feet.
Light-coloured, slightly indurated sands	10
Grayish sandy clays	20
Friable pebble conglomerate	8
Reddish clays	1
Cream-coloured clays	5
Light-yellowish soft sandy beds	15
	59

The rocks change rapidly in composition when traced along the strike, and beds of sand are replaced by clays or conglomerates in the course of a few hundred feet.

At the head of the Ramparts, the Tertiary rocks overlap the Cretaceous and rest directly on hard limestones and quartzites which are probably Palæozoic.

Direction of river.

Before entering the Ramparts the Porcupine makes a sudden bend to the south. Its course is then comparatively straight along a bearing of S. 60° W. for a distance of thirty miles. Beyond this it bends more to the south, and its direction as far as Rampart House, a further distance of twelve miles, is S. 22° W. Before reaching Rampart House both valley and river run in an easterly direction for about a mile, and then turning again to the south-west the valley becomes somewhat enlarged, and a small flat is interposed between its northern bank and the river, on which the fort is situated.

Character of river.

The Porcupine while passing through the Ramparts contracts considerably, and in places does not exceed seventy-five yards in width. Its current is more rapid than in the upper part, and was estimated to run at the rate of about three or four miles and a-half an hour. Short riffles, with a much greater velocity than this occur occasionally, but no rapids or other obstructions were met with, which would prevent the navigation of the stream by small steamers.

Picturesque valley.

Band of basalt.

The Ramparts is a local name employed by the traders to designate a contracted walled valley or cañon. The portion of the valley of the Porcupine which passes under this name is exceedingly picturesque. In the upper part the banks rise steeply from the water's edge on both sides to heights of from three to five hundred feet, and their green slopes are everywhere broken by shattered pinnacles and bold crags and cliffs of brilliantly tinted dolomites and quartzites standing almost on edge. As we descend, the inclosing walls become higher and steeper, and the lighter shades are replaced by more sombre colours. Some miles above Rapid River a band of basalt edged with vertical cliffs, appears above, and gradually descends in the banks of the cañon until it reaches the bottom, and from this on the gorge is bounded by even, precipitous walls carved out of this rock. The uniformity of this part of the valley is interrupted at intervals by deep gashes cut by tributary streams through the basaltic covering. Of these the principal one is Rapid River, which enters the Porcupine about seven miles above the post. A mile below Rapid River is the half-way pillar, a projecting column of rock, which was supposed by the traders to be equidistant from Lapierre House and Fort Yukon.

The geology of the Ramparts proved to be too complicated to be unravelled in the few hours which I was able to devote to it, and can only be indicated in a general way.

Rocks in Ramparts.

At the head of the Ramparts the soft unconsolidated Tertiary strata are underlain, as above stated, by a different and much older series. The beds first seen consist of grayish granular dolomites, interstratified with a close-textured, very compact variety of the same rock, striking nearly north-and-south, and dipping to the west at an angle of 35°. Farther down the dolomites are associated with limestones, quartzites and a band of dark calcareous shales. The rocks have all been subjected to considerable crushing, due to volcanic action, and in some instances have been so shattered that they crumble completely under the influence of the weather or when struck with the hammer.

The most important rock in the first twenty miles is a peculiar fresh-looking dolomite, the texture of which is so hard and compact that it might readily be mistaken in some cases for a quartzite. It contains, however, very little siliceous matter, and dissolves almost completely in hydrochloric acid. A remarkable feature of this rock is the varied and changing coloration which it exhibits along the valley. The colours range from pure white through light- and dark-yellow to a bright red, and appear in some places to have an irregular distribution, as if due to subsequent infiltration. The beds are usually tilted at high angles, and the harder strata project above the surface in a more or less ruinous condition, and when brightly coloured, stand out in strong relief against the back ground of dark-green.

Varied coloration.

A band of dark calcareous shales, several hundred feet in thickness, is repeated at several points, and was carefully searched for fossils, but without success. The shales are interstratified at some points with bedded traps, and a number of irregular intrusions of the same rock were also noticed cutting the bedding. They pass occasionally into light-coloured schists, and often show slaty cleavage.

Band of shales.

Whitish and coloured quartzites, often holding black plumbaginous-looking scales, form an important constituent of the section, and granular dolomites and lead-coloured limestones are also well developed, and occasionally form high cliffs.

Quartzites.

A noticeable feature of the section is the peculiar alteration of strata softened and decayed for many feet below the surface, with unweathered varieties of apparently the same, or only slightly different rocks. I was at first inclined to believe that some of the soft Tertiary beds which overlie the dolomites and associated rocks at the head of the Ramparts had been folded up with the latter, but was led on farther examination to abandon this view.

Decayed rocks.

The succession of the different terranes was not ascertained, as the section is very much confused, and is broken through repeatedly by trap dykes, and would require considerable time for its elucidation.

Ten miles above Rapid River the Porcupine has cut through a thick sheet of basalt. The basalt is first seen crowning in long cliffs the banks of the valley, but is brought down by a light westerly inclination to the surface of the water, in a distance of six miles. Beyond this if undulates at low angles along the valley, and occasionally rises sufficiently to expose the underlying shales, quartzites, dolomites and limestones.

The basalt shows no evident columnar structure. A well marked horizontal divisional plane was traced for some distance, and may possibly indicate the junction of two flows, as slight differences in coloration were noted above and below it. In texture the basalt ranges from fine-grained to a moderately granular condition, but also becomes vesicular in places, and passes into an amygdaloid. It is composed

Character of basalt.

principally of augite and olivine, with some magnetite and titaniferous iron, and is almost destitute, at least in the hand specimens collected, of plagioclase.

Rocks underlying basalt.

At Rapid River, and for some distance above and below, the basalt sheet rises in the banks, and the underlying rocks, consisting here of dark shales, old looking cleaved slates, quartzites and dolomites, all dipping at considerable angles, and brought into view. Two miles below Rapid River the basalt dips below the surface, and the older rocks are not seen until near Rampart House.

RAMPART HOUSE TO THE MOUTH OF THE PORCUPINE.

Reach Rampart House.

Travel by night.

We reached Rampart House on the 20th July, the descent of the river from Lapierre House having occupied four days. We travelled mostly at night, in order to avoid a strong head wind which blew up the river every day. It is customary, however. in these latitudes to work in the night rather than in the day, during the period of six weeks or so in which the sun remains above the horizon. The light is sufficient, while the temperature is somewhat lower, and the mosquitoes are less troublesome.

Rampart House.

Rampart House is the most distant of the Hudson's Bay Company's posts, and was established to replace Fort Yukon, after the site of the latter had been determined to be in Alaskan territory. This post was originally situated twelve miles farther down the river, but the position of the buildings in regard to the boundary being doubtful, these were burnt by the Hudson's Bay Company, and new buildings were erected on the present site. As a fur post it barely pays expenses, owing to the heavy cost incurred in the transportation of furs and goods, and is kept up mainly as a protection against the encroachments of traders from the west.

Indians at Rampart House.

The Indian hunters trading at Rampart House number about eighty, They belong to the Loucheux branch of the Tinneh family, but speak a slightly different dialect from that used by the Mackenzie River Loucheux. They are christianized, and missionaries sent out by the Church Missionary Society have been working among them for some years. A small church has been built in the vicinity of the post.

Arrangements for trip.

I remained a few hours at Rampart House for the purpose of taking an observation for latitude, and making arrangements for the trip to Fort Yukon. An Indian was engaged to accompany us, and I was fortunately able to obtain a supply of dried meat from Mr. Firth, the officer in charge of the post. A report had reached the fort that a steamer belonging to the Alaska Fur Company would pass Fort Yukon posed in a number of places. This part of the valley goes by the name of the Lower Ramparts, but the rocky walls are low and disconnected, and are seldom developed on both sides of the valley so as to form a cañon. The limestones yielded *Atrypa reticularis*, together with some fragmentary specimens of corals, and are probably referable in part at least to the Devonian. At the lower end of the Lower Ramparts, the limestones are interbedded with dark shales similar to those associated with them above Sucker River. The shales are unfossiliferous, but from their position are probably Cretaceous. They are exposed at intervals for two miles, and are then overlain unconformably by the yellowish and light-reddish clays and sands of the Tertiary, and the latter in turn sinks in a short distance, beneath alluvial sands, clays and gravels.

Lower Ramparts.

Age of limestones.

From this point on to the mouth of the river, a distance in a direct line of sixty miles, no further exposures of the older rocks are seen. The valley disappears, and the river serpentines through a wide plain, elevated only a few feet above its surface. At the elbows of the numerous bends the cut-banks show small sections of clay and false-bedded sands and gravels, either alluvial or lacustral in their origin. The bordering plains extend to the horizon on either side, unbroken by a single elevation, and their extent and uniformity, taken in connection with the character of the beds seen along the valley, afford strong grounds for the assumption that a lake basin or abnormal expansion of the river once existed here and has since been silted up.

Wide plain.

Tributaries of Porcupine.

The principal streams which the Porcupine receives in this part of its course are the Salmon from the right, and Black River and Little Black River from the left. For some miles above its mouth it divides around numerous islands, and branching channels become so frequent that care has to be exercised to select the right one. Before reaching the Yukon we left the main stream, and turning to the left entered a small channel which is reported to flow in opposite directions, depending on the relative heights of the water in the two rivers. Our hopes that the current would set in our favour were doomed to disappointment, as we no sooner rounded the bend than we passed from the brown water of the Porcupine into the milky flood of the Yukon, and found ourselves struggling against an impetuous current of five or six miles an hour. Fort Yukon is situated a mile and a-half above the confluence of the two streams, and it required nearly two hours of hard work to ascend that distance.

OLD FORT YUKON TO FORTY-MILE CREEK.

At Fort Yukon I had the pleasure of meeting the Rev. Mr. Canahan, of the Church Missionary Society, who was on his way to Nuklukahyèt to take charge of a mission. Mr. Canahan's news was far from cheering, as he informed us that the steamer which we expected to meet had passed up the day before.

Route to the coast.

Two courses were now open to us in order to reach the coast and outside communication; either to descend the river to St. Michaels and sail from that point to Victoria or San Francisco, or to face the nine hundred miles or so of rapid current and difficult navigation above, and ascend it to the head of the Lewes, and then cross the Coast Range by the Chilkoot Pass. The former is by far the easier route, as the lower Yukon possesses a strong steady current, and is free from dangerous rapids, and the temptation to adopt it was almost irresistible, but as it lay altogether outside of Canadian territory I decided, if possible, to try and ascend the stream. To do this, however, promised to be a matter of no ordinary difficulty. The short, square-sterned boat which I had hitherto used, was built to carry a load down stream and was altogether unsuitable to make an up-stream journey in, and an attempt to force it for hundreds of miles against a five or six mile an hour current seemed well nigh hopeless, but no other was available. Our provisions were also running short, but Mr. Canahan kindly supplied our deficiencies in this respect to some extent, and we expected to be able to obtain fish from the Indians along the river. Trader John, the Indian who piloted us down from Rampart House, and had proved himself a capable and willing fellow, was induced, after some persuasion, to accompany us as far as Forty-mile Creek, and on the 25th of July, after a delay of four days, we succeeded in making a start.

Early exploration.

A sketch of early exploration on the Yukon has been given by Dr. G. M. Dawson, [see pages 134 and 177,] and it will be unnecessary to repeat it here. Fort Yukon, which was originally one of the best built forts in the north, is now a thing of the past, and with the exception of one of the outbuildings, which has probably also disappeared by this time, has been torn down to supply wood for the steamers plying on the river.

Gardening at Fort Yukon.

While in possession of the Hudson's Bay Company some gardening was done in the vicinity of the fort, notwithstanding the fact that it is situated almost on the Arctic circle. Potatoes and other vegetables were raised, and barley is reported to have ripened. On the Mackenzie River, gardening ceases to the north at almost the same latitude.

Above Fort Yukon the river cuts through the same low wooded plain which has been described as bordering the Porcupine above its mouth, and like the latter, only on a much greater scale, its waters flow by numberless interbranching channels through a labyrinth of islands. Its width in this reach is reported to range from three to ten miles or more, but as we kept the left bank the whole way up, and the opposite shore was always concealed by islands, I was unable to verify this statement. The river however has here, practically, no confining valley, and the soft sands and clays which underlie the adjoining plain offer little obstruction to an indefinite expansion. New channels are opened up with each succeeding flood, and older ones blocked by the deposition of sediment. Notwithstanding the great width, the velocity of the current is undiminished, and the up-stream navigation of this part, especially in high water, is attended with greater difficulty than any other portion of the river. Beaches are seldom present, and tracking is impossible except for trifling distances at long intervals. The water along the cut-banks is too deep a few feet from the shore for poling, and to advance we were obliged to combine the use of an oar on the outside, a pole on the inside, while I steered and paddled behind. Even this complicated method of propulsion often became impracticable, and progression in some places was only attainable by clinging to the overhanging branches and pulling ourselves up foot by foot. For long reaches the banks are undermined by the wash of the stream, and as the boat creeps along beneath the overhanging wall from which masses of sand and other material are momentarily falling, it is constantly threatened with destruction. Vexatious delays are also caused by the numerous trees which have been undermined and have fallen forwards into the stream, but still cling to the bank by their roots. Above these, driftwood accumulates until it forms a projecting point around which the current swirls with redoubled velocity, and to pass them is often the work of hours. The width of the river is so great that difficult spots cannot be avoided as in other streams by crossing to the opposite bank, and the ascent must be made entirely on one side. The eastern side is usually preferred.

Numerous channels.

Difficult navigation.

The length of this expanded island-filled stretch above the mouth of the Porcupine, was estimated at seventy miles, althought a miner, the only one so far as I could hear, who had ascended it, assured me that it could not be less than three hundred and fifty miles. His estimate must, however, be taken rather as the measure of the difficulties he encountered than of the true length. We made the ascent in five days, but to do this were obliged to work at our full capacity for four-

Length of island-filled stretch.

teen or fifteen hours a day. With a proper boat much better time could have been made.

Older rocks hidden.

The older rocks along this stretch are deeply buried beneath a thick accumulation of recent sands, clays and gravels, and no exposures were anywhere seen.

Chief Senatee.

Before reaching the head of the islands we crossed to the right bank, and on our sixth day passed the camp of Senatee, the head of the Fort Yukon Indians, and the most powerful chief in the whole Yukon country. Many stories are told of cruel murders and rapes committed by Senatee in days gone by, but time has now tamed his ferocious disposition, and changing circumstances have shorn him of much of his once absolute authority. He received us hospitably, and after an exchange of fish for tobacco had been made, commenced a long oration, descriptive of his enduring love for the English (Hudson's Bay Company) and his regret that they had left the country, and his general dislike of the Yankees (Alaska Fur Company), but as time was precious the harangue was cut short by the present of a couple of handfulls of tea, the probable object for which it was made, and we proceeded on our journey.

River contracts.

Above the Indian camp the river commences to contract. It bends more to the east, and is bordered by narrow beaches, a welcome change, which enabled us, much to our relief, to substitute the tracking-line for the poles and oars, and to make better progress with less exertion. The shore here is strewn with blocks of dark carbonaceous looking cleavable shales, and on the eastern side of the river, bedded rocks, probably of the same description, could be seen *in situ*, but were not examined, as a crossing meant the loss of several miles wearisomely won, and was only made when rendered necessary by the exigencies of the navigation.

Increased elevation of bordering region.

The elevation of the country bordering the river is here higher, and a considerable valley is developed. Fifteen miles above the Indian camp the river is reduced to about half a mile in width, and assumes an easterly direction. A crossing to the eastern side was effected here, and a line of cliffs which made their appearance seven miles below, was found to consist of massive eruptive rocks, which are described in my notes as basalts and fine- and coarse-grained dolomites, but unfortunately the specimens have mis-carried. The volcanic rocks here are, as a rule, coarser textured and older looking than those seen at the Ramparts on the Porcupine, and no amygdaloids or vesicular varieties such as occur there were noticed. It is uncertain whether they form parts of the same flow or not, although the relative position of the two areas and the northerly trend of the elevated coun-

Occurrence of basalts.

try leads to the supposition that they do, and in this case the westerly edge of the flow would correspond in a general manner with the eastern boundary of the great plain which extends up the Pelly-Yukon and Porcupine from their confluence.

Contact of basalt sheet with underlying rocks.

The basalt and associated igneous rocks inclose numerous detached masses of shales derived from the underlying terranes, and dark shales and limestones tilted at high angles project up into them in many places in a similar manner to that noticed on the Porcupine. They were traced along the river for fifteen or twenty miles, and are then replaced by a confused succession of shales and limestones, probably referable to a large extent to the Carboniferous, alternating with the dark shales, sandstones and quartzites of the Cretaceous. The whole series is greatly disturbed, and folded closely together, and the beds often show vertical dips. The general strike is S. S. E. The shales and associated limestones and sandstones are exposed in continuous sections for seven or eight miles, and are then again almost buried beneath a second basaltic occurrence, and only the higher points of the old rugose surface rise into view above the bottom of the valley.

Second basaltic occurrence.

The line of contact of the Tertiary basalts with the underlying sedimentaries in this region, both on the Yukon and the Porcupine is, speaking generally, nearly coincident with the present level of the rivers.

Width of igneous area.

The second basaltic area, where cut by the river has a width of ten or twelve miles. Above it the rocks are concealed on the eastern side for some distance, and then the shales and sandstones of the Cretaceous outcrop on the banks, and are present all the way to the Tatonduc, a distance of about thirty-five miles. The beds are sometimes horizontal, but usually undulate at varying angles, but seldom to such an extent as to expose the underlying Palæozoic limestones. Conglomerates consisting largely of small pebbles of schist, quartzite and slate, imbedded in a hard sandstone matrix, are occasionally associated with the shales and sandstones, and in one place about eight miles above Charlie's village, attain a great development. They overlie the shales at this point. Some miles below the mouth of the Tatonduc specimens of the characteristic Queen Charlotte Islands' formation fossil *Aucella Mosquensis* var. *concentrica*, were collected from the beds below the conglomerates.

Conglomerates.

Depth of valley.

The valley of the Pelly-Yukon becomes gradually deeper as we ascend, and above Charlie's village the banks were estimated to have an elevation in places of from eight hundred to a thousand feet.

Foldings.

Above the mouth of the Tatonduc the foldings increase in severity, and the Palæozoic limestones and shales are brought up and alternate in broad bands with the shales, sandstones and conglomerates of the Cretaceous. A black carbonaceous variety of shale is repeated at a number of points, and often shows polished slickensided surfaces, due to the crushing to which it has been subjected, which simulate very closely the appearance of anthracite. The alternation of the Cretaceous beds with the older limestones and shales continues until near the Boundary, [141st meridian] a distance measured along the river of about forty miles. No fossils were found in this part of the river, but lack of time prevented a careful search for them.[*]

Schistose rocks replace shales, limestones, etc.

A short distance below the Boundary, the rocks referred to above are replaced by a very different looking set, consisting mainly of altered volcanic rocks, and characterized by a general greenish colour. Among them are important bands of serpentine, hard quartzose, sheared and altered greenish schists, softer greenish chloritic looking schists, silvery mica-schists, diabases, shales and slates. Picrolite was noticed in several places, and beds of chert are not uncommon. The schistose beds must underlie the limestone series (Carboniferous?) although the dip would place them above, as the latter is overlain directly in many places farther down the river by the shales, sandstones and conglomerates of the Cretaceous.

Limestone range.

East of the river above the Boundary, and running parallel with it for some distance, is a high naked range, built of limestones striking in a south-easterly direction and dipping at high angles towards the river. Resting on these, aud apparently overlying them, are the rocks just described.

---

[*] Mr. Ogilvie has furnished me with the following geological notes obtained on his traverse from the mouth of the Tatonduc across to the head water of the Porcupines and down the latter stream to its confluence with Bell River: Dark shales overlain by fine-grained conglomerates which are doubtless the equivalents of the Cretaceous beds observed on the Pelly-Yukon, occur along the Tatonduc for twenty-seven miles from its mouth. At two points in this distance, limestones rise to the surface from beneath the shales, and by their superior hardness contract the valley into short cañons. The conglomerates are described by Ogilvie as weathering in some of the ridges and mountains into picturesque castellated cliffs. In the upper part of the valley of the Tatonduc the Cretaceous shales and conglomerates are replaced by grayish Palæozoic limestones. Similar limestones were also met with all across the watershed separating the Tatonduc from the Porcupine, where they form a range of high mountains, and down the latter stream as far as the Cathedral Rocks. At two points on the Porcupine, viz., two miles and ten miles respectively below the forks, the limestones are underlain by reddish mottled sandstones similar in appearance to those occurring at Sault Ste. Marie. Below the Cathedral Rocks dark shales of Cretaceous age appear again, and were the only rocks observed all the way to the mouth of Bell River, where connection was made with my traverse down the Porcupine.

An interesting fact noted by Ogilvie, is the emission, near Sheep Mountains, of sulphuretted hydrogen gas in large quantities from the surface, and he states that he was informed by his guide that a small lake a short distance from the trail is kept constantly agitated by the escape of similar gas, and that the sulphurous fumes prove fatal to all animals which venture near. East of the Rocky Mountains sulphuretted hydrogen gas issues in numerous places from the petroliferous limestones of the Devonian, but it is possible that its presence here is due to volcanic action.

The schistose beds alternate occasionally with limestone bands, altered in places into marble, and are traversed in all directions by quartz veins. They are exposed all the way to Forty-mile Creek and beyond. They are of the greatest economic importance, as they constitute the gold-bearing rocks of the district, and are on the strike of the same metalliferous zone on which Cassiar and the other principal mining camps to the south are situated, and which has now been traced northwards across Canadian territory from the 49th parallel to the eastern boundary of Alaska, a distance of fully twelve hundred miles.

Economic importance of schist belt.

Four miles below the mouth of Forty-mile Creek, a small stream was passed coming in from the opposite side, on which a coal seam is reported to occur, but nothing definite was learned about it.

Coal seam.

FORTY-MILE CREEK

Arrive at Forty-mile Creek.

We arrived at Forty-mile Creek on the 9th August, fourteen days having been occupied on the journey up from Fort Yukon. This is the head-quarters of the miners on the Yukon, [1888] and thirty or forty men were camped here waiting for reports from various prospecting parties which were exploring the surrounding country, and ready to start at a moment's notice. The present season proved very unfavourable for mining operations on account of the persistent high water, and with the exception of a short period early in the summer, very little work was done on Forty-mile Creek, and the amount of gold taken out was estimated at scarcely $15,000. A few days before my arrival a stampede had been made for Beaver River, a northern tributary of the Yukon, which is stated to enter the latter about a hundred and twenty miles below the mouth of the Porcupine, but with somewhat disastrous results. The amount of information required to stampede a mining camp is very small, and in the present case was almost ridiculous. A report was brought up by the men on the steamer that a miner had boarded the boat at the mouth of Beaver River, and after talking in a hurried manner to the captain, had suddenly departed, and in his haste had left his purse behind him. The miners reasoned that nothing but a rich find would cause such an excitement, and a hundred and fifty men immediately loaded their boats and started on a wild goose chase down the river only to meet with disappointment at the end of their journey. A few received a passage up again on the steamer,

Unfavourable season.

Yield of gold.

Stampede of miners

but the greater number drifted on down towards St. Michaels, and left the mining country altogether.

Difficulties in prospecting.

Prospecting in the Yukon country is attended with peculiar disadvantages, and requires men of more than ordinary perseverance and endurance for its successful prosecution. The Yukon itself is very swift and difficult to navigate, but is easy as compared with many of the tributary streams which are simply a long succession of cañons, whirlpools and rapids, and skill and courage in a high degree, in addition to a golden bait, are necessary in order to brave the perils of their ascent. Provisions are high-priced and scarce, and in the upper part of the river cannot be obtained at all, and supplies for the summer must be packed across the Coast Range in the early spring and sledded for two hundred miles down the river to the lower end of Lake Labarge before the break up of the ice, in order to be on hand when the season opens. Added to this is the shortness of the period available for work, which under the most favourable circumstances never exceeds three months, and in seasons of exceptional high water, such as the present, is very much less. In view of these drawbacks prospecting must proceed slowly, and up to the present has been confined almost entirely to the larger and more accessible streams.

Yield of gold.

The most important strike made so far [1888] has been on Forty-mile Creek, on which coarse gold was discovered in 1886. This discovery occasioned a rush towards the creek of nearly all the miners in the district. In 1887 over 200 men were actively and successfully employed along the numerous bars, and the total yield for the season was variously estimated from $65,000 up to $150,000. The present season has proved much less remunerative, partly owing to the unfavourable state of the water and partly to the fact that the rich claims first discovered have been worked out, the auriferous gravels being of little depth and easily exhausted. The most productive part of this stream is west of the Alaska boundary. It has a total length, according to the miners, of about 150 miles, of which only the lower twenty miles are in Canadian territory, and in this part very little work is now being done. The average value of labour is $10 a day, and bars which yield less than this are soon abandoned.

No important strike was made anywhere in this district in 1888.

Argentiferous galena.

A lode of argentiferous galena crosses Forty-mile Creek a short distance above its mouth, and a specimen brought back by Mr. Ogilvie was assayed in this office by Mr. Hoffmann, and found to contain 38·$\frac{94}{100}$ oz. of silver to the ton. Tellurium is reported from the head of the stream, and seams of coarse serpentine asbestus occur near its mouth.

Prepare for trip up river.

Some days were spent at Forty-mile Creek in making preparations for the long trip up the river, and in building a long, narrow, sharp-ended boat, modelled after the pattern of those used by miners in ascending swift streams. Trader John, who had helped us gallantly in the ascent from Fort Yukon, returned home from here, and a miner named Buckley, was engaged for the remainder of the trip.

FORTY-MILE CREEK TO THE MOUTH OF THE STEWART.

Leave Forty-mile Creek.

We left Forty-mile Creek shortly after noon on the 14th August, and passed the mouth of the Stewart early on the morning of the 19th. The distance measured along the river is about 120 miles. The direction as far as Fort Reliance is nearly east, but beyond that point the river bends slowly round and runs almost west for a few miles, after which it maintains a general southerly course to the mouth of the Stewart. The width of the river in the lower portion seldom exceeds half a mile, but above Fort Reliance it gradually enlarges, and in the southerly reach occasionally exceeds a mile in width. In the expanded stretch, however, much of the surface is occupied by islands. The current is swift and uniform, and at a medium state of the water runs at the rate of five miles an hour. Beaches line the shore, and tracking, except at very high water, is possible nearly the whole way.

Character of river.

Character of valley.

The valley of the Yukon between Forty-mile Creek and the Stewart, and on to the mouth of the Pelly, is cut through an elevated undulating plateau, on which rest numerous low ranges of rounded and partially bare hills, but is not crossed by any well defined mountain range. It is somewhat uniform in appearance, but affords many picturesque and even grand views. Bluffs of rock of a more or less precipitous nature, are of constant occurrence, and bold rampart-like ranges of interrupted cliffs, separated or continued upwards by steep grassy or wooded slopes, characterize the banks for long reaches. The flats are few and unimportant, and as a rule the river washes the base of the banks on both sides. The width of the valley varies from one to three miles, and its depth from five to fifteen hundred feet. Its great size, taken in connection with the hard character of the crystalline rocks through which it has been excavated, afford evidence of great age, and point to an origin long antecedent to the glacial period. The same fact is also emphasized by the remarkably uniform grade which the river has worn across terranes of heterogeneous hardness, ranging through the whole geological scale in its long course from Rink Rapid to the sea, a distance of nearly 1700 miles.

Age of valley.

Rocks observed.

Dykes.

Rock-sections are numerous along the valley, but the geology is intricate and difficult, and somewhat confusing to a traveller passing hurriedly through along one line. Above Forty-mile Creek, the same series of micaceous and altered greenish schists and slates which obtain below are continued for six or eight miles, and are then replaced by grayish granite. The schists are traversed by both quartz and calcite veins, usually of small size. They dip at high angles, and have a general south-southeasterly strike. The granite is a medium-grained, somewhat altered variety, showing no distinct foliation. It is composed principally of quartz, plagioclase, orthoclase, muscovite, biotite and epidote. From the central granitic mass a set of dykes radiate out into the surrounding schists. The dykes often pass in between the beds, but were also seen cutting across them. Above the granite boss the schistose series resumes again and continues as far as the bend above Fort Reliance. These rocks are broken up in several places by granite intrusions, and the granite appeared to be itself cut in one place by a darker and more basic igneous rock of which I did not obtain specimens. A specimen of rather coarse textured granite, collected above Fort Reliance, holds numerous grains of copper-pyrites, and may possibly be auriferous, but has not been analysed. The schists occasionally show copper stains running parallel with the foliation.

Granite intrusions.

Some miles above Fort Reliance, a band of dark argillites, interbedded with limestones, crosses the river. Like the schists it is traversed by numerous quartz veins. It is followed for several miles by schists of various kinds, but usually more or less micaceous, and occasionally passing into a well foliated rather fine-grained mica-gneiss. The latter increases in relative proportion, and assumes a coarser texture as we ascend the river. Igneous granitic intrusions occur every few miles.

Fifteen miles below Sixty-mile Creek, a peculiar looking soft greenish rock consisting of glossy talc, and green serpentine was found at several horizons interbedded with the schists. The square columnar crystals from which the serpentine has been derived still preserve their original form, and penetrate in all directions the lighter coloured talcose matrix. They show under the microscope traces of the quadrangular cleavage of augite, but are otherwise completely altered.

Exposures opposite Sixty-mile Creek.

Opposite Sixty-mile Creek the exposures show lustrous muscovite-mica-schists, dark biotite-mica-schists grading into mica-gneisses, hornblende gneissic schists and compact felsitic rocks indistinctly foliated. With these are associated grayish biotite-granites, and a coloured granitoid or syenitic rock, consisting of orthoclase, plagioclase quartz, chlorite and epidote. The proportion of quartz in this rock is small and the crystals are greatly crushed and broken. A second variety of this rock shows large, coloured crystals of felspar, porphyritically distributed through a fine-grained microcrystalline base.

Rocks between Sixty-mile Creek and the Stewart.

From the vicinity of Sixty-mile Creek to the mouth of the Stewart, the rocks are older looking and more distinctly gneissic then those observed farther down the river. The most abundant variety is a light reddish-coloured, medium-grained, well foliated mica-gneiss, composed of quartz, orthoclase, plagioclase, biotite and muscovite. Epidote, chlorite, calcite and ilmenite are also nearly always present. In some cases the micas are replaced altogether by chlorite. With the gneisses are associated several varieties of mica-schists, and occasionally some hornblendic schists. Numerons veins of coarse pegmatite, quartz, and less frequently calcite, cut the beds in all directions, and are present in nearly every section.

STEWART RIVER TO THE PELLY.

The Stewart River.

The Stewart River has not been explored. At the mouth it is two hundred yards wide, but the current is not rapid, and it apparently carries less water than either the Pelly or the Porcupine. It is reported to be navigable for two hundred miles above its mouth. Gold was discovered on it in 1885, and in that and the following year, gold to the value of $100,000 was obtained from it, according to an estimate made by Dr. Dawson on information from miners. The principal bars were, however exhausted in these two years, and in 1887 the yield diminished to about $5,000, but this was partly due to the withdrawal of most of the miners to Forty-mile Creek. In the present year an attempt was made by two prospectors to trace the gold to its source but without success. "Colours" were present as far as they ascended, but not in paying quantities, and no tributaries were found down which the gold in the lower part of the river might have descended. They report that the river grows in its upper part by the reception of numerous small streams heading in swamps, none of which are gold-bearing. An important feature of the river is the constant recurrence along it of high gravel terraces, most of which are more or less auriferous, and occasionally yield as high as a cent a pan, and could probably be worked profitably on a large scale. It is possible that the gold found on the bars in the river is concentrated from these.

Yield of gold.

High gravel terraces.

From the mouth of the Stewart the Pelly-Yukon trends in a south-westerly direction for ten miles to its junction with White River. In this reach it averages a mile in width, and is filled with islands. The banks of the valley are steep and rocky, and were estimated at from

800 to 1000 feet in height. Garnetiferous mica-schist was noticed a short distance above the Stewart, and dark hard mica-schists and light-reddish well foliated gneisses are exposed all along. An extensive system of quartz veins is developed along here, and gold-bearing quartz is reported to have been found.

White River.

White River, like the Stewart, has not been explored, and has only been ascended by miners for a distance of sixty miles from its mouth. A view up it from the opposite bank of the Pelly-Yukon showed a wide valley filled with countless bars and islands between which the divided stream threaded its tortuous course. Its current is swift, and it precipitates itself into the Yukon with a force sufficient to drive its muddy water half way across, but scarcely to force it up on the opposite bank in the manner described by Schwatka, and the two streams flow side by side for several miles before their waters become completely fused. The turbid character of the White River is famous, and sufficient sediment is brought down to change the colour of the whole Pelly-Yukon flood from a pale green to a milky white. White River is reported to head in glaciers descending from high mountains, but nothing very definite is known concerning it. "Colours" of gold have been obtained from it, but no paying bars have so far been discovered.

White River to the Pelly.

From White River to the Pelly the distance is ninety miles. The direction is at first south-westerly, but the river soon bends round to the east and follows an E.S. E. bearing the greater part of the way. The width of the river is somewhat reduced, and varies from a quarter to half a mile, while the current averages about five miles an hour. Islands occur at intervals, but are less numerous than in the reaches below. The valley preserves its usual depth of from 800 to 1000 feet, but for some distance above White River the banks are more wooded and show rocky bluffs above supported on steep slopes below. Farther up it is again bordered by steep gneissic and basaltic cliffs. Gravel terraces occur occasionally and appeared to increase in height as we ascended.

Character of rocks.

The prevalent rock for many miles above White River is a hard, granular and often moderately coarse-grained, Archæan looking mica-gneiss of somewhat varied mineralogical composition. This occasionally passes into mica-, chlorite- and hornblende-schists. The minerals most commonly present are quartz, plagioclase, orthoclase, biotite, muscovite, chlorite, hornblende, epidote, calcite, magnetite and ilmenite. In some cases the rock is greatly crushed and altered, and the micas and hornblendes are replaced almost entirely by chlorite. Plagioclase is always present and often in greater abundance than orthoclase. Quartz veins occur less frequently as we ascend, and are replaced by veins of coarse pegmatite. Igneous rocks are almost absent in the lower part of this reach, but coarse granites and diorites were met with about twenty-five miles below the mouth of the Pelly. Three miles above this point the older rocks are covered with vesicular lavas of Tertiary age. The lavas are exposed for a short distance and then recede from the river at a bend which the latter makes around a high terrace built of coarse gravels. Resting on this terrace is a small bed of white volcanic ash, frequent occurrences of which were noticed on the Pelly by Dr. Dawson, [see p. 40.] Above the gravel terrace the lavas resume, and are present all the way to the Pelly. They are underlain by gneisses similar to those described before, and by granites and diorites. A specimen of diabase-porphyry composed of crystals of augite and plagioclase porphyritically distributed through a micro-crystalline chloritic base, was obtained from the cliffs west of the flat on which Fort Selkirk was situated.

Tertiary lavas.

After reaching the site of Old Fort Selkirk, at the confluence of the Pelly and Lewes rivers, my journey was continued up the last-named stream and over the Chilkoot Pass to the sea, which was reached on the 15th September, 1888. This part of my route, therefore, coincides with that followed and examined in 1887 by Dr. Dawson, and is described by him [in previous pages.]

NOTES ON THE GENERAL GEOLOGY OF PART OF THE YUKON DISTRICT.

[The subjoined notes extracted from Mr. McConnell's report are those bearing upon parts of the Yukon District described in the foregoing pages.]

* * * * * * *

In the Rocky Mountains themselves no pre-Cambrian rocks were observed.

Crystalline schists along the Yukon.

West of the Rocky Mountains crystalline schists are largely developed along the valley of the Pelly-Yukon. They were first met with, in ascending the river, near the International Boundary, and were then traced southwards by numerous exposures as far as Fort Selkirk, at the junction of the Lewes and Pelly, and they continue on up the Lewes about thirty miles farther. The belt of crystalline rocks has a width of something over a hundred miles and strikes in a south-easterly direction from the International Boundary, or long. 141° W. diagonally across the Pelly-Yukon and up the Pelly to near its head, and then continues on across the Frances River. The extension of the belt beyond the Frances River is not known. It does not reach the Liard, however, as no crystalline schists were noticed on that stream. South of the latitude of the Liard the crystalline rocks, like the Rocky Mountains themselves, do not continue southwards along their old strikes, but along parallel strikes a couple of degrees farther west. The break in the continuity of the Rocky Mountains, which is referred to on another page, has its counterpart in a break in the continuity of the belt of crystalline rocks which usually accompanies them on the west.

Dip of rocks.

The dips of the crystalline rocks along the Pelly-Yukon are usually westerly and at high angles.

Character of crystalline rocks.

Along the eastern edge of the crystalline belt, the rocks are characterized by a general greenish colour and consist largely of altered volcanic rocks. The most important variety is a sheared and altered greenish quartzose schist. With this are associated greenish chlorite-bearing schists, lustrous mica-schists, diabases and serpentines. The schists are interbedded with occasional bands of slates and crystalline limestones, and are broken through in many places by igneous intrusions.

The green schists are underlain, in ascending the river, by a great thickness of well foliated mica-gneisses alternating with mica and hornblende-schists, which are distinctly Archæan in appearance and lithological characters. They bear a strong general resemblance to the Archæan rocks, recently described by Dr. Dawson from the western part of the Selkirks. Granite intrusions occur in the gneissic area, but less frequently than in the green schist belt.

* * * * * * *

A hundred and twenty miles below the Ramparts, the Mackenzie enters a third Cretaceous area, and the largest one on the river. Cretaceous beds appear in the banks a short distance below old Fort Good Hope and extend down the Mackenzie to the head of its delta, and westwards across the Rocky Mountains and down the Porcupine to about long. 139° W. They consist on the Mackenzie of coarse shales interstratified with some sandstones and fine-grained conglomerates; in the mountains of several thousand feet of barren sandstones and quartzites underlain by dark shales, and on the Porcupine of the same two series underlain by a great thickness of alternating shales, sandstones and conglomerates, holding *Aucella Mosquensis* var. *concentrica.* The intermediate dark shales are probably of Benton age, while the lower division so far as the fossil evidence goes, represents the Queen Charlotte Island formation and the Dakota.

---

* [See preceding pages.]

Cretaceous rocks on the Yukon.

Cretaceous shales holding *Aucella* and passing upwards into fine-grained conglomerates, occur on the Yukon for many miles above and below the mouth of the Tatonduc and were traced by Ogilvie up the latter stream for some distance. They have been greatly disturbed and are folded up in broad bands with the underlying Palæozoic limestones.

It is highly probable that the various Cretaceous areas scattered along the Liard, Mackenzie, Porcupine and Pelly-Yukon, were originally connected and have been separated by denudation. This is shown by the structure of the region, by the fossil evidence so far as it goes, and by the lithological and stratigraphical resemblances which prevail throughout.

* * * * * * *

TERTIARY.

Tertiary west of mountains.

West of the mountains soft incoherent beds resembling those at the mouth of Great Bear River and probably of about the same age, are exposed along the Porcupine River in the vicinity of the Old Crow Mountains. They were first seen about half a mile above Fishing River and were traced as far as the head of the Ramparts, a distance in a direct line of forty-two miles. Opposite the Old Crow Mountains and at another point farther up the river they are interrupted by uplifts of the underlying Cretaceous shales. Like the Great Bear River beds they rest unconformably on the rocks beneath. They consist essentially of light-coloured sands, sandy clays, clays and conglomerates, with occasional nodular beds of ironstone, and in one section hold a small lignite seam. No fossils of any kind were obtained from them. They are horizontal, or nearly so, and have a minimum thickness of 300 feet. Similar beds were noticed in the interval between the Upper and Lower Ramparts, and also occur for a short distance along the river below the Lower Ramparts.

The Tertiary beds occupy basins in the older rock, and evidence an elevation of the land at the end of the Cretaceous period followed by prolonged denudation, and a subsequent depression, accompanied by the formation of the lakes in which they were laid down.

* * * * * * *

SUPERFICIAL DEPOSITS AND GLACIAL ACTION.

Terraces.

In crossing the mountains by the Peel River Portage few glacial features were noticed. A couple of terraces, the higher of which has an elevation of about 550 feet above the sea, flank the range on the east, and a sub-angular gneissic erratic was found at a height of 1500 feet, but this was probably water-borne. On the western side of the mountains a terrace, with fragments of a higher one resting on it in places, was crossed at an elevation of about 1500 feet above the sea. Proceeding down Rat River to the Porcupine, and down the latter through the Ramparts, sands, gravels and silts, are found resting on the underlying rocks, but no boulder-clay, perched boulders or other evidence of glaciation were anywhere seen. Along the upper part of the Ramparts river-gravels, often very coarse in character, were noticed at various points up to elevations of 400 or 500 feet above the surface of the river. Some miles below the Ramparts, the banks of the valley diverge on either side and inclose a great plain through which the Porcupine serpentines all the way to the Yukon, a distance measured in a straight line of about seventy-five miles. This plain has a width in its widest part of fully ninety miles.. Sections are cut through it in different directions both by the Porcupine and Pelly-Yukon, and show it to be underlain throughout by stratified sands and silts, often showing false bedding and with occasional layers of gravel. The latter appeared to become finer-grained and of less relative importance towards the centre of the area. The size of the plain, its uniformity and the character of the beds which underlie it suggest a delta origin, and correlate it with the lowlands at present in course of formation at the mouth of Slave River in Great Slave Lake. It is probable that a lake-basin or great dilatation in the channels of the Porcupine and Yukon once existed here and has been obliterated by the deposition of the detritus brought down by the two streams, or, as suggested by Russell,* the facts may be explained by a damming back of the Yukon by recent orographic movements.

Great plain.

The Yukon, above its junction with the Porcupine, winds through the alluvial or lacustral plain which has just been described for a distance of seventy miles. Above this the valley becomes more contracted, and is floored with the older rocks or the ordinary river wash. Opposite the International Boundary a terrace was noticed by Russell at a height of 734 feet above the level of the river. Above the boundary fragments of similar high terraces, usually somewhat indistinct, occur at several points, and rolled gravels were found at varying heights opposite all our camps. Thirty miles below the mouth of the Pelly rolled gravels, evidently derived from broken down terraces, were found in some abundance up to a height of 800 feet. From the Stewart River upwards, terraces of a more recent date, ranging up to a

Terrace opposite Boundary.

---

*Bull. Geol. Soc. Am., vol. I, p. 114.

hundred feet in height, border the river at intervals and increase in elevation as we ascend, but no boulder-clay or other evidences of glaciation were seen until a point about seven miles below the Rink Rapid was reached. Above this signs of glacier action, as previously pointed out by Dr. Dawson, are unmistakeable. The plateau bordering the Pelly-Yukon was not examined, but, judging simply from the records of the Ice age which the valley itself affords, it would appear that the glacier which undoubtedly filled the upper part of the valley of the Lewes and moved northwards did not descend much below lat. 62° 24′ N. Below this the deposits indicate a flooded valley, but nothing else.

Limits of glacier.

A feature of some interest in connection with glacial phenomena, and which may have some bearing on the non-glaciated condition of part of Alaska and the adjacent portion of the North-west Territory of Canada, is the fact that glaciers are unknown in the Rocky Mountains north of the head-waters of the Athabasca, or about lat. 54° N. North of this occasional patches of snow survive the summer in sheltered nooks, but even these decrease in frequency with increasing latitude, and on the Peel River portage, in lat. 67° 20′ N., the snow had entirely disappeared before the middle of July. Also, in descending the Porcupine and ascending the Yukon, no snow was seen until far up the Lewes, and no glaciers until the head waters of this stream were reached. It follows from this that climatic changes which would extend the present glaciers of the Bow and Saskatchewan far down their valleys might have little or no effect in imposing glacial conditions on this more northern region.

Absence of glaciers in mountains.

* * * * * * *

ECONOMIC MINERALS.

GOLD.—As a full account of the discovery of gold and the progress and present condition of gold mining in the Upper Liard, Cassiar and Yukon districts is given by Dr. Dawson [in preceding pages,] it will be unnecessary to go into the subject in detail here. "Colours" of gold occur in the bars of the Liard all the way to its mouth, but no deposits of economic value have been found below the Devil's Portage. A number of bars were worked, between the Devil's Portage and the mouth of Dease River, for several years after the discovery of gold on the Liard by Messrs. McCulloch and Thibert in the year 1872, but these are now all abandoned and the records of them lost. At the present time no miners are employed on the Liard below the mouth of Dease River.

Gold on the Liard.

Gold in paying quantities has not been found on either the Mackenzie or the Porcupine, and the rock formations bordering these rivers do not appear to be gold bearing.

Gold on the Yukon.

On the Pelly-Yukon above the Boundary, and as far as the mouth of the Pelly, the limit of my examination, gold in varying quantities is of almost universal occurrence, but up to the present time [1888] active operations have been confined almost entirely to two of the tributaries. Of these Forty-mile Creek enters the Pelly-Yukon from the west, about forty miles above the boundary and has its course mostly in Alaska, while Stewart River comes in from the east and flows through Canadian territory all the way. Gold was discovered on the Stewart in 1885, and in that and the following year the estimated yield of the various bars amounted to over $100,000, but in 1887 it was almost deserted owing to the discovery of coarse gold on Forty-mile Creek, and the consequent "stampede" of the miners to that stream. The gold on the Stewart is reported to be "fine," and the bars are often exhausted under present conditions in a single season's work, but as they are abandoned when the yield falls much below $10 a day per man, it is highly probable that work on many of them will be resumed when improved methods of mining are introduced, and the present exhorbitant prices for labour and provisions are reduced. Extensive gravel benches of a more or less auriferous character border the Stewart in many places, and promise remunerative returns if worked on a large scale.

Stewart River.

Forty-mile Creek.

Forty-mile Creek proved a veritable bonanza to most of the miners who reached it early in 1887, but in 1888 the returns, owing to the continued high water, were disappointing. In the former year the yield has been estimated all the way from $75,000 to $150,000 and was probably in the neighbourhood of $100,000. In 1888 the yield, in consequence of the enforced idleness of the miners, declined to less than $20,000, most of which was obtained from the upper or Alaskan part of the stream. The number of miners employed on the stream during the two seasons varied from about 100 to 350. The gold on Forty-mile Creek is coarser than that obtained from the Stewart, but the auriferous bars are usually of little depth and are soon skimmed over. Some attention was paid during the season of 1888 to prospecting the gulches and gravel terraces bordering the stream, but these have not been worked as yet to any notable extent.

Quartz veins.

The country rocks bordering the Pelly-Yukon, all the way from the boundary to White River and beyond, consist of schists broken through by eruptive granites and diorites, geological conditions peculiarly favorable to the existence of metalliferous deposits. They are traversed in many places along the river by promising quartz veins and ledges, but these have been very little prospected as yet, the miners contenting themselves up to the present with the development of the more easily worked placer deposits.

Argentiferous galena.

SILVER.—A small lode of argentiferous galena crosses Forty-mile Creek a couple of miles above its mouth. A specimen of this brought back by Mr. Ogilvie and analysed by Mr. Hoffmann yielded over 38 oz. of silver to the ton.

Copper-pyrites.

COPPER.—Copper-pyrites, in small quantities, was noticed at several points between Forty-mile Creek and Fort Reliance. It does not occur in veins, but appears to impregnate individual layers of the schist itself. Traces of copper were also observed in the Castle Mountain dolomites at the base of the Nahanni Butte section.

Asbestus.

FIBROUS SERPENTINE.—Some of the serpentines in the vicinity of Forty-mile Creek occasionally assume a fibrous structure and pass into a picrolite or coarse asbestus. A small specimen of good serpentine asbestus has also been brought from the Stewart River, [p. 24.]

* * * * * * *

Coal.

COAL.—West of the mountains a small seam of lignite was observed on the Porcupine, a few miles above the mouth of Old Crow River, and seams of coal are reported to occur in a small stream which enters the Pelly-Yukon from the east below Forty-mile Creek. The latter is probably of Cretaceous age.

Bay Journal
[illegible]

Branner Earth Sciences Library

557.1
D272

557.1 .D272 C.1
... Report of an exploration i
Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 032 173 838

Verify 3 sheet (s)
present 5-12-95

DATE DUE

NOV 1 6 1986 STANFORD LIBRARIES			
NOV 2 1 1986			
I. L. L.			

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004

Branner Earth Sciences Library
557.1
D272

277

YUKON DISTRICT AND BRITISH COLUMBIA

Sheet 3. (Edition of January, 1898)

3 sheets ✓ 10/16/86